



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



37.

115.

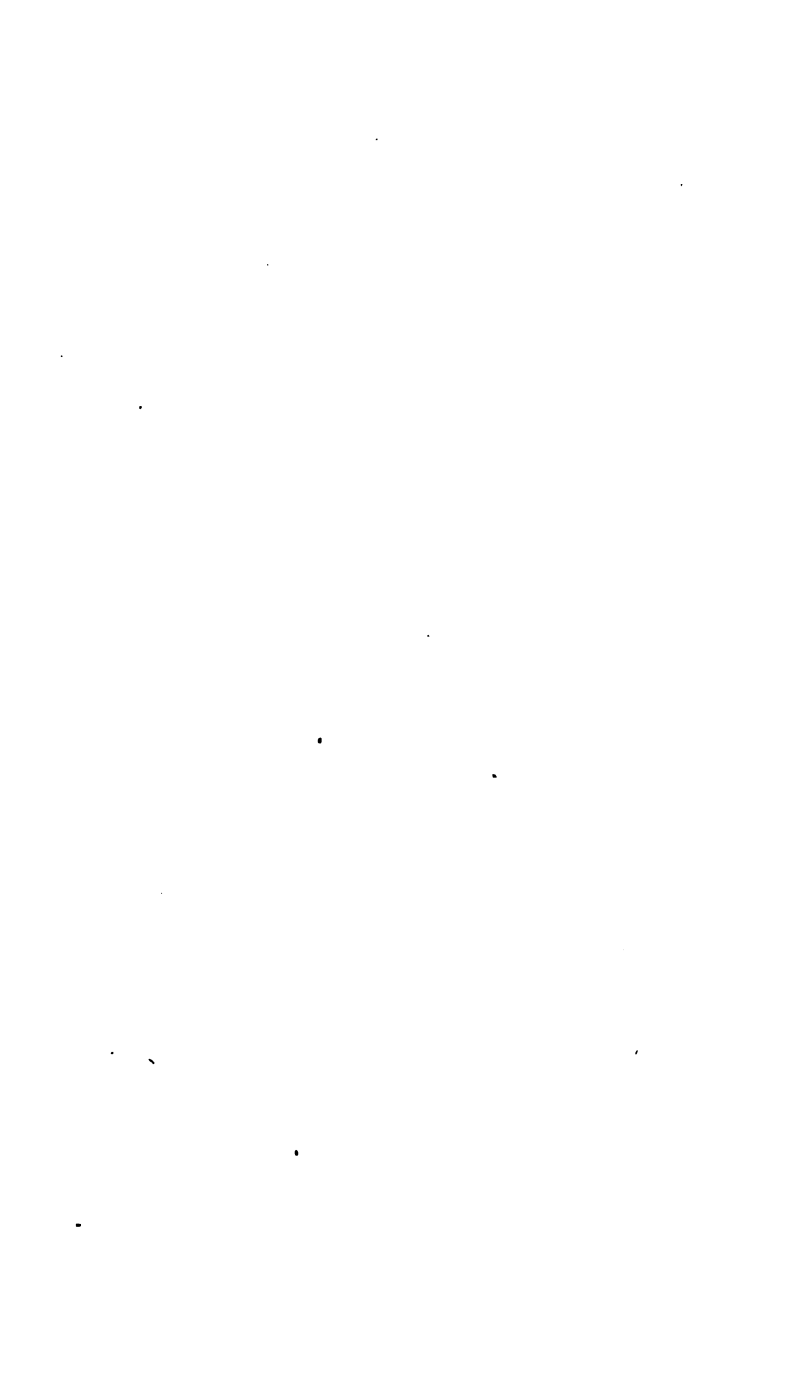




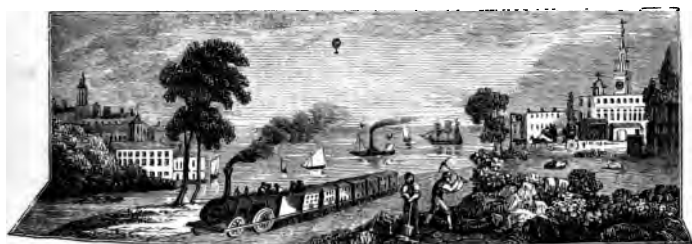












*Mankind in various Stages of Civilization.*

PETER PARLEY'S  
UNIVERSAL HISTORY,  
ON THE BASIS OF  
GEOGRAPHY.



LONDON:  
JOHN W. PARKER, WEST STRAND.

M.DCCC XXXVII.

115



## PETER PARLEY

### TO PARENTS AND TEACHERS.

---

THE idea of embracing within the compass of a single volume anything like a tolerable outline of Universal History, would doubtless excite a smile on the lip of a learned professor, should such an one ever condescend to peep beyond our humble title-page. But let my object be clearly understood, and I hope the attempt I have here made may not be deemed either ridiculous or presuming.

A work which would give in detail the history of mankind, must necessarily be most voluminous, and it would consequently exceed the utmost stretch of the youthful intellect to compass its contents; the young reader would shrink back in despair at the idea of undertaking the task of its perusal. He looks upon a formidable row of volumes, in which such a wilderness of lore is collected, as a maze in which he is sure to get lost, and therefore prudently resolves to keep clear of it.

Abridgments of general history have been usually liable to still greater objections; they are too often little more than dry lists of dates, presenting no pictures to the imagination, exciting no sympathies in the heart, and imparting few ideas to the understanding. If, by dint of labour, a meagre chronological table is extracted by the reader, and fixed in the memory, it is of no practical use; it is but a *skeleton, without flesh, sinews, or soul*; a mass of words, to which the mind can assign no clear definitions.



And yet it is very desirable that every person should, at an early period of life, have imprinted on his mind, in bright and unfading colours, a clear outline of the story of mankind, from its beginning in the plain of Shinar, down to the present hour. The advantages of this are obvious. It makes all subsequent reading and reflection on the subject of history both useful and interesting; it becomes a stimulus to research; it is ever after a thread to guide the inquirer through the labyrinths of historical lore.

The task of preparing a work which may accomplish this desirable object in respect to the young, is doubtless difficult. To steer clear of bewildering diffuseness on the one hand, and repulsive chronological brevity on the other—the Scylla and Charybdis which beset the adventurer in this attempt—and at the same time to weave into a few pages, a clear, vivid, and continuous tale of the great human family—one that may be both comprehensible and entertaining to the young reader—demands a nicer understanding of the youthful heart and intellect, and more art in the adaptation of language to simple minds, than can often be at the command of any man. But though the undertaking be discouraging, it is perhaps worth the trial; if I fail, I do but follow the fortunes of others; if I have not the power to command success, I will at least endeavour to deserve it.

So I have written my book, and the world may take it for what it is worth. I have based History upon Geography, illustrating both by pictures, the greater portion of which are representations of real objects; to those that *are necessarily imaginative*, the license usually allowed to *historical compositions* will of course be extended. I have *written for the Young*, and, I hope, my book will be per-

mitted to enter the family circle, and take its chance to make its way. If it is placed, not as a task-book, but rather as a story-teller, on the table, perhaps the children may patronize it; perchance the parents may deign to look into it. The chapters are short, and questions are added at the end of each; I do not ask any one to read these questions, but if parents, brothers, or sisters wish to hear the young beginner recite the chapters, they have the easy means of doing so. I have dealt pretty largely in anecdotes and sketches, hoping thereby to reconcile the reader to the dryer parts of the work. Having spiced my chapters with tales and legends, I venture to wind up with an occasional chronological table, and ask the reader to look at it. I have sprinkled in many engravings, for I would gain the attention of my pupil by every available art. I wish him to read, and as he reads, to think and feel. If he does this, he will gain a knowledge of events, and extract useful lessons from them, and thus the end I have desired will be attained.

The brief sketch of Sacred History, which necessarily forms a portion of the work, will, it is hoped, be found both clear and interesting, and calculated to assist the young reader in the study of his Bible. The object has been to combine such portions of the truths recorded in holy writ, as relate to the Israelites, into the same concise narrative form as the histories of other nations, and thus to illustrate, as far as the scope of the work permits, the beautiful records of the inspired historian, by the traditions, histories, and monuments of antiquity.

*There is one feature of the work upon which I wish to add a few remarks. Before giving the history of any country, I tell the reader where it is; I give him a sketch*

of its present condition ; I direct his attention to its place on the map of the world, and ask him to observe its position in relation to other places. Having thus given the country a " local habitation and a name " in the mind of the reader, I proceed to relate its story. Thus it will be seen that I have made Geography the basis of History ; a point of much importance, as I think, in teaching this subject to children. In a larger work, it is less necessary, for it may be presumed that older readers are acquainted with geography, before they enter upon the study of history.

There is one point of great delicacy in unfolding the events of history to the young mind ; namely, that a large portion of the actions of men, as related by the historian, are evil. As you lift the curtain of the past, mankind seem from age to age engaged in constant strife, battle, and bloodshed ; the master-spirits generally stand forth as guided only by ambition, and superior to other men in wickedness as in power. To reveal these dark pictures to youth, and yet prevent the bright and sunny landscape of the heart from being permanently sullied or shadowed by the acquisition of such knowledge, demands great care, and I hope I have not been insensible of the responsibility of my task in this respect. It is necessary that history should be known, that we may learn the character and capacity of man ; but in telling of the vices and crimes that soil the pages of the past, I have taken advantage of very convenient occasion, to excite hatred of injustice, violence, and falsehood, and promote a love of truth, piety, and benevolence.

# CONTENTS.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

Chap.		Page
1.	About travelling in a Balloon, and what curious things one may meet with . . . . .	1
2.	About History and Geography, and other matters . . . . .	5
3.	How the World is divided into Land and Water . . . . .	7
4.	About the Inhabitants of Asia, Africa, and other Countries . . . . .	
5.	About the different kinds of People in the World . . . . .	10

## ASIA.

6.	About the Climate, Productions, Mountains, People, and Animals of Asia . . . . .	12
7.	About the Creation. The Deluge . . . . .	16
8.	How Noah and his Family came out of the Ark. How the People settled in the Land of Shinar. About Babel . . . . .	19
9.	About the great Assyrian Empire, and Reign of Queen Semiramis . . . . .	21
10.	About Ninias. Reign of Sardanapalus, and end of the Assyrian Empire . . . . .	26
11.	About the Hebrews, or Jews. Origin of the Hebrews. The removal of Jacob and his Children to Egypt . . . . .	27
12.	The Bondage in Egypt. Flight of the Hebrews, and Destruction of Pharaoh and his Host . . . . .	31
13.	About the Wanderings of the Israelites in the Wilderness . . . . .	34
14.	Overthrow of the Midianites. Samson, Judge of Israel . . . . .	37
15.	Beginning of the reign of Saul . . . . .	39
16.	The reign of David. Wisdom of Solomon . . . . .	41
17.	Building of the Temple. Visit of the Queen of Sheba . . . . .	44
18.	The Decline of the Jewish nation . . . . .	47

Chap.	Page
19. The Hebrew Prophets . . . . .	51
20. Crucifixion of our Lord. Destruction of Jerusalem . .	54
21. Cyrus conquers Babylon. His Death . . . . .	58
22. Reign of Cambyses . . . . .	60
23. Expedition of Xerxes into Greece . . . . .	62
24. Affairs of Persia till the Saracen Conquest . .	65
25. Modern History of Persia . . . . .	66
26. Early History of China . . . . .	70
27. Anecdotes of the Chinese Emperors . . . . .	73
28. Cities of China. Manners of the Chinese . .	75
29. Origin of the Arabs. Rise of Mohammed . . . .	79
30. Sequel of the History of the Saracens . . . . .	83
31. About Syria, Phœnicia, and Asia Minor . . . .	85
32. A brief view of several Nations . . . . .	90
33. Review of the History of Asia . . . . .	92
34. Chronology of Asia . . . . .	97

## AFRICA.

35. About the Geography of Africa. The Inhabitants .	100
36. Early Sovereigns of Egypt . . . . .	103
37. Egyptian Architecture and Sculpture . . . . .	108
38. The Ptolemies and Queen Cleopatra . . . . .	112
39. Sequel of the Egyptian History . . . . .	114
40. Summary of Æthiopian Affairs . . . . .	116
41. Origin of the Barbary States, and their Piracies on the Christians . . . . .	117
42. Fables and Facts about Africa . . . . .	120
43. The Slave Trade . . . . .	122
44. Chronology of Africa . . . . .	123

## EUROPE.

45. Introductory Remarks on its Geography and other matters	124
46. <i>About Greece; where it is situated; appearance of the Country; Climate</i> . . . . .	128
47. <i>The extent of Greece. First Settlement of the Country</i>	131

# CONTENTS.

xi

Chap.	Page
48. The Grecian Lawgivers . . . . .	133
49. War with Persia . . . . .	135
50. Affairs of Athens . . . . .	137
51. Beginning of the Theban War . . . . .	140
52. Sequel of the Theban War . . . . .	142
53. Grecian Mythology, or Religion . . . . .	144
54. The Grecian Philosophers . . . . .	148
55. Something more about Philosophers. About the Greek Poets . . . . .	152
56. About the Mode of Life among the ancient Greeks . .	154
57. Philip of Macedon conquers Greece . . . . .	159
58. Conquests of Alexander the Great . . . . .	161
59. Sequel of Alexander's career . . . . .	163
60. Greece invaded by the Gauls . . . . .	165
61. End of Grecian Independence . . . . .	167
62. Modern History of Greece . . . . .	170
63. Chronology of Greece . . . . .	172
64. About Italy as it now is . . . . .	173
65. Founding of Rome by Romulus. Its early State . .	177
66. Battle of the Horatii and Curiatii . . . . .	180
67. From the reign of Ancus Martius till the expulsion of the Kings . . . . .	182
68. The Story of Coriolanus . . . . .	185
69. Rome invaded by the Gauls. The first Punic War . .	187
70. Second and third Punic Wars . . . . .	189
71. A Roman Triumph . . . . .	192
72. Sylla and Marius . . . . .	194
73. Cneius Pompey and Julius Cæsar . . . . .	196
74. Cæsar usurps the Supreme Power . . . . .	198
75. Assassination of Julius Cæsar . . . . .	199
76. Consequences of Cæsar's Death . . . . .	201
77. About the great power and extent of the Roman Empire in the time of Augustus . . . . .	203
78. <i>The means by which Rome acquired its power</i> . . .	206
79. <i>Rome under the Emperors</i> . . . . .	208
80. <i>Fall of the Western Empire of the Romans</i> . . . .	211

Chap.	Page
81. Progress of the Decline of Rome . . . . .	213
82. Manners and Customs of the ancient Romans . . . . .	215
83. About Religion. Deities. Temples. Marriage . . . . .	218
84. About Funeral Rites and Ceremonies . . . . .	220
85. Roman Farms ; mode of Ploughing ; Farm-houses ; Grain ; Cattle ; Superstitions of the Farmers ; Gar- dens ; Vines . . . . .	223
86. Country houses. Description of Pliny's Villa. Aque- ducts . . . . .	225
87. Military Affairs of the Romans. The Imperial Eagle. Music. Arms. Dress. Military Rewards. Naval Affairs. Galleys. Merchant-ships. Wild Beasts in the Amphitheatre. Gladiators . . . . .	228
88. Sports ; Chariot Races ; the Circus ; Carriages ; private Entertainments ; Supper Rooms ; Convivial Parties ; Luxuries . . . . .	235
89. About Theatres. The Sundial. The Fine Arts. Books and Writing. Costume . . . . .	238
90. Rome under the Popes . . . . .	240
91. About several other Italian States . . . . .	244
92. Chronology of Rome . . . . .	246
93. About the Ottoman Empire. Turkey in Europe. Turkey in Asia. About the Climate, People, and other things . . . . .	248
94. About the Saracens. How the Turks overturned the Saracen Empire. How the Ottoman Turks founded the Ottoman Empire. About Bajazet and Timour. Fall of Constantinople . . . . .	251
95. Sequel of the Turkish History . . . . .	253
96. Early History of Spain. The Moorish Conquest . . . . .	255
97. Wars between the Moors and the Spaniards . . . . .	259
98. The Spanish Inquisition . . . . .	262
99. The Invincible Armada. Singular death of a Spanish king. Recent affairs of Spain . . . . .	264
100. A short Story about Portugal . . . . .	267
101. Chronology of Turkey, Spain, and Portugal . . . . .	270
102. Description of France. Its Climate. Cities. Manufac- tures. Manners and Customs of the People . . . . .	271

# CONTENTS.

xiii

Chap.	Page
103. About the Gauls and other tribes of Barbarians. How the southern parts of Europe were first settled, and how the northern parts were settled afterwards . . .	275
104. The Gauls. Origin of the French nation . . .	279
105. About Clovis and little King Pepin . . .	280
106. The Reign of Charlemagne . . .	282
107. About the Crusades, or Holy Wars . . .	285
108. About the Feudal System . . .	288
109. About Chivalry, or Knight Errantry . . .	292
110. King Philip and Pope Boniface. Wars of the French and English . . .	298
111. The Reigns of several French Kings . . .	301
112. The French Revolution . . .	305
113. Napoleon Buonaparte . . .	308
114. Recent affairs of France . . .	311
115. Chronology of France . . .	312
116. About Germany . . .	314
117. About the ancient Tribes of Germany, Charlemagne, &c. . .	317
118. Affairs of Switzerland . . .	321
119. Sequel of German History . . .	324
120. About the Austrian Empire . . .	326
121. About Hungary, Bohemia, the Tyrol, &c. . .	329
122. About Prussia . . .	331
123. History of Prussia . . .	334
124. Chronology of Germany, Austria, Hungary, and Prussia . . .	336
125. Description of Russia . . .	337
126. The Reign of Peter the Great . . .	344
127. The Successors of Peter the Great . . .	347
128. About Sweden . . .	349
129. Charles the Twelfth and his Successors . . .	351
130. About Lapland, Norway, and Denmark . . .	354
131. Brief Notices of several Kingdoms and States . . .	359
132. Chronology of Russia, Sweden, Lapland, Norway, Denmark, Holland, Belgium, &c. . .	362
133. Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland . . .	364
134. Origin of the British Nation. The Druids . . .	371



Chap	Page
135. Saxon and Danish Kings of England . . . . .	375
136. From William the Conqueror to King John . . . . .	378
137. Reigns of Edward I., II., and III., and Richard II.	382
138. House of Lancaster . . . . .	385
139. Wars of the Roses . . . . .	388
140. The House of Tudor . . . . .	391
141. The Reign of Elizabeth . . . . .	394
142. The House of Stuart . . . . .	396
143. The Commonwealth . . . . .	400
144. The Restoration, and the Revolution of 1688 . . . . .	403
145. The House of Hanover . . . . .	406
146. The Story of Wales . . . . .	409
147. The Story of Scotland . . . . .	412
148. About Ireland . . . . .	415
149. Various Matters . . . . .	418
150. Chronology of Great Britain . . . . .	420
151. Review. The Dark Ages. Important Inventions, &c.	422

## AMERICA.

152. About America . . . . .	428
153. The first Inhabitants of America . . . . .	432
154. Discovery of America by Columbus . . . . .	434
155. Greenland. Settlements of the French in America . . . . .	437
156. Conquest of Canada . . . . .	440
157. Description of the United States . . . . .	442
158. The American War . . . . .	444
159. Affairs of the United States since the Revolution . . . . .	446
160. About South America. El Dorado, and the Fountain of Youth . . . . .	448
161. History of Mexico . . . . .	449
162. Account of Peru . . . . .	453
163. Account of Brazil . . . . .	455
164. The West Indies . . . . .	457
165. Conquest of the West Indies; their present State . . . . .	460
166. Hayti. The Buccaneers . . . . .	464
167. Chronology of America . . . . .	467

# CONTENTS.

XV

## OCEANIA.

Chap.		Page
168.	About Oceania. The Malaysian Islands . . .	468
169.	Australasia . . . . .	470
170.	Polynesia . . . . .	472
171.	The Mutiny of the Bounty . . . . .	475
172.	Chronology of Oceania . . . . .	481

## REVIEW.

173.	Duration of the Empires of Asia and Europe . . .	482
174.	Duration of the Empires of Europe . . . . .	485
175.	Ancient Names of Countries . . . . .	490

## GENERAL VIEWS.

176.	The Origin and Progress of Government . . .	492
177.	Architecture. Agriculture. Gardening . . . . .	494
178.	Commerce . . . . .	497
179.	Painting, Sculpture, and Music . . . . .	502
180.	Origin and Progress of various Arts . . . . .	506
181.	Dates of Discoveries and Inventions . . . . .	509







# Map

## of the

### WESTERN HEMISPHERE



Printed from Stones by

# Map

## of the

### EASTERN HEMISPHERE





# UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

---

## CHAPTER I. INTRODUCTION.—*About travelling in a Balloon, and what curious things one may meet with.*

1. IF you could get into a balloon, rise into the air, and sail along over the country, how many interesting things you would see! At one moment you would be passing over a city, at another you would look down upon a valley, or a river, or a hill, or a mountain!

2. What a pleasant method this would be of studying what is called geography! for geography is a description of cities, rivers, valleys, hills, mountains, and other things that a traveller meets with.

3. How much more delightful this would be than merely to look over maps, which only give you a sort of picture, showing where towns are placed, how rivers run, and where mountains lie. But as very few of us can travel about in balloons, we must be content with maps, and learn geography from them as well as we can.

4. Suppose that in travelling in some distant country, we should meet with a building different from any we had ever seen; suppose that it was built of stone, covered with moss, and marked with great age, as if it had been erected five hundred years ago, or more.

5. Suppose that on entering this building, we should find strange, dark rooms, of vast size, such as represented in the picture on the next page; suppose that we should



find in this building the graves of persons who died two or three hundred years ago, with their names carved upon the stones beneath which their bones repose.



The Chapel of St. John, in the Tower of London.

6. Now what do you imagine we should think of all this? Should we not be curious to know why this building was erected—when, and by whom, it was built? Should we not be anxious to know something of the people who constructed such a wonderful building? Should we not

desire to go back five hundred years, and learn the story of that distant time?

7. And if we could meet with some old man who had lived so long, should we not wish to sit down by his side, and hear him tell how this edifice had been built? Should we not ask him a thousand questions about the people who built it, and those who had been buried in it?

8. Now if you were to travel in foreign countries, you would meet with a great many such buildings as I have described. You would indeed find many that are more than five hundred years old.

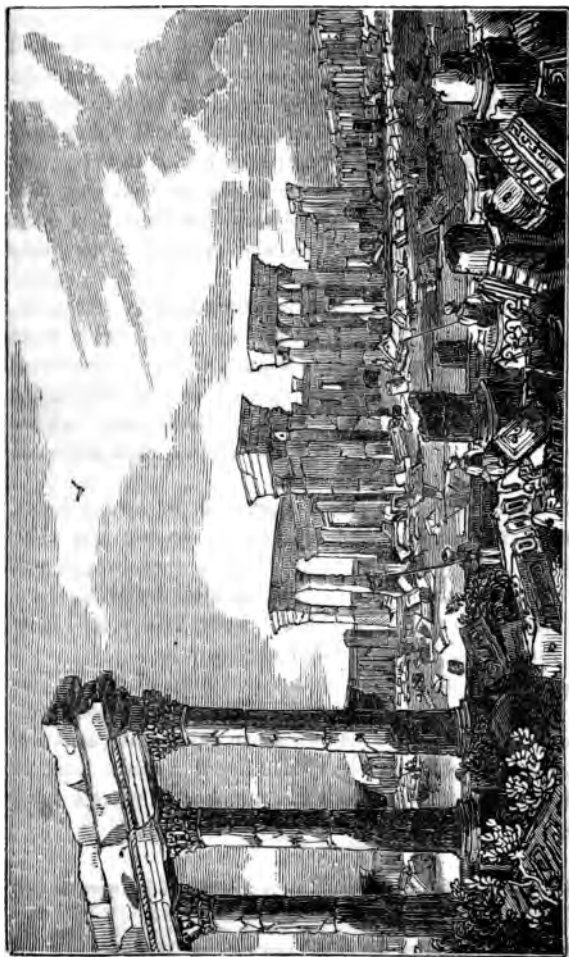
9. If you were to extend your travels to Italy, or Greece, or Egypt, or some parts of Asia, you would often meet with the ruins of temples, palaces, and cities, which existed two or three thousand years ago, such as you see in the picture on the next page. Some of these would excite your wonder on account of their beauty, and some on account of their grandeur.

10. Such things you would meet with in foreign lands, but no man could be found old enough to tell you their story from his own observation. What then would you do? Perhaps you would be content, after returning from your travels, to sit down with old Peter Parley, and hear from him the history of these ancient times.

11. Well then, I will suppose that most of my readers may have either heard or read about distant countries. Perhaps, too, they may be curious to hear an old man tell of the olden time. If the reader is not already tired of my stories, I beg him to sit down and hear what I have to say.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What would a person see if he were to sail along over the country in a balloon?—2. What is geography?—3. What are maps?—4. Suppose we should meet with some old building, what should we desire to know?—5. What would a traveller meet with in foreign lands?—6. What would he meet with in Italy, Greece, Egypt, or Asia?—7. What would these ancient ruins teach?



The Ruins of Palmyra, a City of the ancient Assyrian Empire.

**CHAPTER II. INTRODUCTION continued.**—*About History and Geography, and other matters.*

1. I SUPPOSE you have often met with the words History and Geography. History is the story of mankind since the world was created, and may be compared to an old man who has lived nearly six thousand years, and who has seen cities built and fall into decay; who has seen nations rise, flourish, and disappear; and who, with a memory full of wonderful things, sits down to tell you of all that has happened during so many ages.

2. Geography, as I have before said, is a description of towns, rivers, mountains, and countries,—the things which a traveller sees in going from one place to another. Geography, then, may be compared to a man who has been all over the world, in ships, stage-coaches, and steam-boats; and who has come back to give us an account of all he has seen.

3. You will see, then, that History is a record of events that have happened, and that Geography tells you of the places where they happened. In order to understand the former, you must know something of the latter. In this little book I shall therefore sometimes put on the old grey-beard of history, who has lived for thousands of years, and tell you of what has come to pass; and sometimes I shall take you, as it were, in a balloon or ship, and carry you to the places where the events I relate have occurred.

4. I shall, in the progress of my story, tell you how the first man and woman were made, how they had a large family, how these increased and spread themselves throughout different countries. I shall tell you of great nations that have existed, of great battles that have been fought, and of the deeds of celebrated persons.

5. But, before I proceed, I must remind you that the world is round, and that men and animals live upon the

surface ; that the face of the earth is divided into land and water ; that on the land, trees, grass, herbs, and flowers, grow ; that on the land, men and animals dwell ; that on the land, towns, cities, and villages are built.

6. A high piece of land, you know, is called a mountain or hill ; a low piece of land is called a valley. You often see water running in a stream through a valley, which is called a river ; and you sometimes see a still piece of water, surrounded by hills, which is called a lake.

7. About one-third of the face of the earth is land, and two-thirds are water. The land is divided into two great continents : the eastern continent consists of Europe, Africa, and Asia ; the western of North and South America.

QUESTIONS. 1. What is history ? To what may it be compared ?  
—2. What is geography ?—3. To what may it be compared ?  
—4. What is the shape of the earth ? Where do men and animals live ?—5. How is the face of the land divided ? What grow upon the land ? What live upon the land ? What are built upon the land ?  
—6. What is a mountain or hill ? A valley ? A river ? Lake ?  
—7. What portion of the world is land ? What water ? How is the land divided ? What of the eastern continent ? The western ?



Falls of the Passaic, in America.

CHAPTER III. INTRODUCTION continued.—*How the World is divided into Land and Water.*

1. I HAVE said that about two-thirds of the face of the earth are covered with water. This water is one vast salt sea, and to different parts of it are given different names.

2. That part which lies between Europe and America is called the Atlantic Ocean, and is about three thousand miles wide; that part which lies between Asia and America is called the Pacific Ocean, and is about ten thousand miles wide. There are many other names given to other parts of the great salt sea.

3. Ships sail from one country to another upon the water, and in this way a great deal of trade, or commerce, is carried on. But as mankind live on the land, my stories will chiefly relate to what has happened on the land.

4. I suppose you have heard people speak of the four quarters of the world. By this they mean Europe, Asia, Africa, and America. Besides these, there are a great many pieces of land encircled by water, called islands.

5. In the Pacific Ocean there are many of these, the inhabitants of which are very numerous. These islands are considered as a fifth division of the world, which division is called Oceania.

6. Now what I am going to tell you has happened in these different parts of the world. In order to understand my stories, it is necessary you should look over the Maps which are given in this book. These will show you where the different countries are, about which I am going to speak.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the great mass of water that covers two-thirds of the earth?—2. What of the Atlantic Ocean? The Pacific?—3. What of ships? What of the land?—4. What are the four quarters of the world? What is an island?—5. What of Oceania?

CHAPTER IV. INTRODUCTION continued.—*About the Inhabitants of Asia, Africa, and other Countries.*



Kraals, or Huts, of African Savages.

1. BEFORE I proceed further, I must tell you that Asia is a vast country with a multitude of cities, occupied by a great many different nations, or tribes of people.

2. The principal of these tribes are the Tartars, who wander from place to place, and dwell chiefly in tents; the Arabs, who have large flocks of camels and fine horses, with which they roam over the desert; the Hindoos, or inhabitants of India, who travel about on elephants, and worship idols; the Persians, who are very fond of poetry, and have splendid palaces; the Chinese, from whom we get tea; and the Turks, who sit on cushions instead of chairs.

3. The whole population of Asia is about four hundred millions, which is about one-half the number of the inhabitants of the whole globe.

4. Africa, you know, is the native land of the negroes. It has a few large cities, but the whole number of people is but sixty millions.

5. Europe is divided into several nations, such as the English, French, Italians, Spaniards, Germans, Russians, and others. It has many fine cities, and about three hundred millions of inhabitants.

6. America has some large cities, and many pleasant towns and villages, but more than half of the country is uninhabited. The whole population is about forty millions.

7. Oceania, as I have before said, consists of many islands in the Pacific Ocean. Several of these, as Java, Sumatra, Borneo, and New Holland, are very large, the latter being the largest island on the globe. From some of these countries pepper, cloves, coffee, and other nice things, are obtained. The whole population of Oceania is about twenty millions.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of Asia?—2. What are the principal nations of Asia?—3. Population of Asia?—4. What of Africa? Population?—5. What of Europe? Population?—6. What of America? Population?—7. What of Oceania? In what direction are the Oceanic islands from London? What things are obtained from Oceania? Population? Where are the Oceanic islands?



Huts of uncivilized Asiatics.



CHAPTER V. INTRODUCTION continued.—*About the different kinds of People in the World.*

1. Thus you see that the whole number of the inhabitants upon the globe is about eight hundred millions. All these are descended from Adam and Eve, who, the Bible tells us, lived in the garden of Eden !

2. What an immense family to have proceeded from one pair ! You may well believe that it has taken many years for the human family to increase to this extent.

3. If you were to travel in different countries, you would observe that the inhabitants differ very much in their colour, dress, and mode of living.

4. Some have dark skins, like the colour of a dead leaf, as the American Indians ; some are of a yellowish or olive colour, like the Chinese ; some of a deep, sooty brown, like the Hindoos ; some black, like the negroes ; and some are white, like the English and the people of the United States of America.

5. In some countries the people live in huts built of mud or sticks, and subsist by hunting with the bow and arrow. These are said to be in the savage state. The American Indians, some of the negroes of Africa, some of the inhabitants of Asia, and most of the Oceanians, are savages.

6. In some countries the people live in houses partly of stone and mud. They have few books, no churches or chapels, and worship idols. Such are most of the negroes of Africa, and many tribes in Asia. These are said to be in the barbarous state, and are often called barbarians. Many of their customs are very cruel.

7. In some countries the inhabitants live in tolerably good houses, and the rich have fine palaces. The people have many ingenious arts, but the schools are poor, and but a small portion are taught to read and write. The Chinese,

the Hindoos, the Turks, and some other nations of Asia, with some of the inhabitants of Africa and Europe, are in this condition, which may be called a civilized state.

8. In most parts of Europe, and in the United States of America, the people live in good houses, they have good furniture, books, schools, churches, chapels, public buildings, bridges, steam-boats, and rail-roads. These are in the highest state of civilization.

9. Thus you observe that mankind may be divided into four classes; namely, those who are in the savage state, those who are in the barbarous state, those who are merely civilized, and those who are in the highest state of civilization.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What is the whole population of the globe?—2. Where did Adam and Eve live?—3. What would you observe in travelling through different countries?—5. What of people in the savage state?—6. What of people in the barbarous state?—7. What of people in the civilized state?—8. What of people in the highest state of civilization?—9. Into what four classes may mankind be divided?



Huts of American Indians.

**CHAPTER VI. ASIA.**—*About the Climate, Productions, Mountains, People, and Animals of Asia.*

1. I HAVE already said that Asia is a vast country, containing many cities, and a multitude of inhabitants. It lies on the opposite side of Europe from us who live in Great Britain, and you may go to it by crossing Europe, or by sailing round the south end of Africa.

2. In the southern portion of Asia the climate is very warm. These parts are chiefly inhabited by the Chinese, Hindoos, Persians, Arabians, and Turks. In many places the country is fertile, and in the valleys beautiful flowers, spicy shrubs, and fragrant trees are found.

3. Wild birds of the most brilliant colours are often seen in the forests. Peacocks, pheasants, and our domestic fowls, are natives of these sunny regions. Oranges grow wild in some parts, and many of our most splendid garden-flowers are to be found growing on the hills and in the valleys of Southern Asia.

4. In the centre of Asia, there are some mountains whose tops are covered with everlasting snow. These are the loftiest peaks in the world, and are nearly six miles in height. To the north of these is a cold region, where there are vast plains, with scattered tribes of Tartars roaming over them for the scanty pastures they afford for their camels and horses.

5. In these gloomy tracts, there are few towns or cities. The inhabitants are for the most part wanderers, who build no houses, but dwell in tents, and live upon the milk and flesh of their flocks. They also hunt the wild deer, antelopes, and other animals, that are found in these regions.

6. The native animals of Asia are many of them very remarkable. The elephant is found in the thickets, the rhinoceros along the banks of rivers, the lion in the plains,

the royal tiger in the forests, monkeys, and apes of many kinds, abound in the hot parts; and serpents thirty feet in length are sometimes met with.

The Elephant, and its Young.

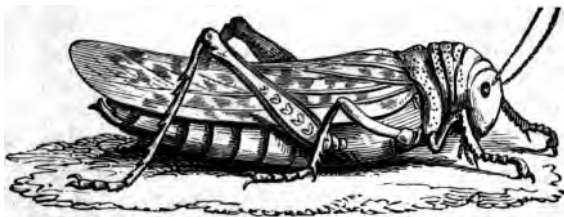


7. In the southern portions of Asia, hurricanes are common, and these are sometimes so violent as to overturn



Serpent.

houses, rend the forests, and scatter ruin and desolation over the land. The country is often parched with drought, and destructive famine follows. Sometimes millions of locusts come upon the wind, and devour every green thing, so that nothing is left for man or beast. Pestilence often visits the people, and sweeps away thousands upon thousands.



The Locust.

8. Such is Asia, a land of wonders, both in its geography and history. It is the largest of the four quarters of the globe; it contains the loftiest mountains, it affords the greatest variety of animal and vegetable productions, and the seasons here display at once their most beautiful and their most fearful works.

9. Asia, too, is the most populous quarter of the globe; it contained the first human inhabitants, and from this quarter all the rest of the globe has been peopled. Here,



A Sand-storm in the Desert.

too, the most remarkable events took place that belong to the history of man. Here the most wonderful personages were born that have ever trod this earth; and here, too, the mighty miracles of Jehovah were wrought.

**QUESTIONS.**—How is Asia bounded on the north? East? South? West? Which way is Asia from Europe? In what part of Asia is Persia? In which direction from Persia is Arabia? Hindostan? China? Tartary? Siberia? Red Sea? Egypt? Mediterranean Sea? In what part of Asia is the river Euphrates?—1. What of Asia! Where is Asia? How can you go to it? Point your finger toward Asia.—2. Climate of Southern Asia? What nations live in Southern Asia? Productions?—3. Birds? Fruits? Flowers?—4. Mountains? What of Northern Asia?—5. Inhabitants?—6. Animals of Asia?—7. Southern parts of Asia?—8. For what is Asia very remarkable as to its geography?—9. For what is Asia very remarkable as to its history?



The Rhinoceros.

---

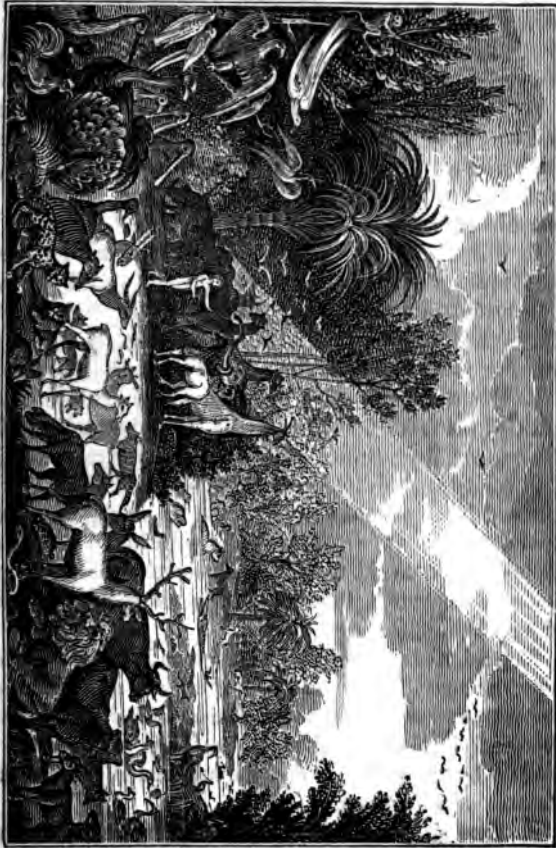
## CHAPTER VII. ASIA continued.—*About the Creation. The Deluge.*

1. THE first portion of the world inhabited by mankind was Asia; the next was Africa; the next was Europe, and the last was America. How long it is since this latter country was first peopled by the Indians, we do not know;

but the first white people went there not quite three hundred and fifty years since.

2. Let us now go back to the creation of the world.

Adam gave Names to the Fowls of the Air, and to every Beast of the Field.



This wonderful event took place about six thousand years ago. The story of it is beautifully told in the first chapter of Genesis.



3. Adam and Eve were created in Asia, and were placed in the garden of Eden, not far from the river Euphrates. This river is in the western part of Asia.

4. Adam and Eve were for a time the only human beings on this vast globe; yet they did not feel alone, for God was with them. At length they had children, and in the course of years their descendants were very numerous.

5. These dwelt in the neighbourhood of the Euphrates, and here they built cities and villages: but they became very wicked. The thoughts of their hearts were evil, the land was filled with violence, and they neglected the worship of God.

6. The Almighty therefore determined to destroy the whole race of wicked people who then inhabited the earth. This awful judgment acted not only as a punishment of the wicked people who were then living, but also as a warning to all future nations, that evil must follow sin.

7. But there was one good man in those days, whom, with all his family, it pleased the Almighty to save from the general destruction. His name was Noah, and him God condescended to apprise of his intentions. He also directed Noah to make a large ark, or house, that would float upon the waters, and to take with him into this ark, all his family, together with pairs of the various animals and creeping things, in order that they might be the means of replenishing the earth.

8. And Noah did as he was commanded of God. And when he and all that were with him were safe in the ark, the windows of heaven were opened, and the fountains of the great deep were broken up, and the whole earth was covered by the waters. But the ark floated in safety upon the face of the waters.

9. Thus all the nations were cut off, and the world once more had but a single human family upon it. This awful event occurred sixteen hundred and fifty-six years after the creation.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Which quarter of the globe was first inhabited? Which quarter was next inhabited? Which next? Which quarter was inhabited last?—2. How long is it since the world was created? Tell the story of the creation, as related in the first chapter of Genesis.—3. Where did Adam and Eve live? Where is the river Euphrates?—5. Where did the descendants of Adam and Eve dwell? What did they do?—6. What did God determine to do? Why did God determine to destroy mankind?—7. What of Noah? 8. Describe the deluge.—9. What was the effect of the deluge? When did the deluge take place?

**CHAPTER VIII.** ASIA continued.—*How Noah and his Family came out of the Ark. How the People settled in the Land of Shinar. About Babel.*

1. THE people who lived before the Flood are called antediluvians, and the only history of them is that in the Bible. It is probable that they extended over but a small part of Asia, and that no human beings dwelt either in Africa, Europe, or America, before the Flood.

2. The Deluge is supposed to have commenced in November, and the rain is thought to have ceased in March. After a while the waters subsided, and Noah's ark rested upon the top of a tall mountain in Armenia, called Ararat, which is still to be seen.

3. Noah's family and the animals now came forth out of the ark, and from them the world was again peopled and replenished. The animals spread themselves abroad, and in due time they were extended into various countries.

4. Noah had three sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. These, with their families, proceeded to the country of Shinar, which lies to the south of Mount Ararat. Here they settled themselves on the borders of the river Euphrates, probably the same country that had been inhabited by the antediluvians. It is in this region that the first nations were formed.

5. The people increased rapidly, and at the end of a hundred years from the Deluge were very numerous.

Most of Noah's family were at this time alive, and they told their descendants how the world had been overflowed with water, which destroyed all living creatures, except those that were in the ark.

6. All who remembered the Deluge, or had heard of it, were afraid that the wickedness of mankind might again be punished in a similar way. They therefore madly resolved to build a lofty tower, so high, that, by mounting upon it, they could get beyond the reach of rising waters, and thereby save themselves from a similar destruction.

7. Accordingly they laid the foundation of a huge edifice, on the eastern bank of the river Euphrates. In the vanity of their hearts they even talked of rearing the tower so high that its top should reach up to heaven itself.

8. Their building materials were bricks baked in the sun, and instead of mortar, they cemented the bricks together with slime. They laboured diligently, and piled one layer of bricks upon another, till the earth was at a considerable distance beneath them. But the blue sky, and the sun, and the stars, were as far off as when they first began.

9. Now this presumptuous work was displeasing to God, and he would not permit it to proceed. He resolved, therefore, to introduce a confusion of tongues among them, and to make the people speak various languages. Up to that time there had been but one language spoken by all the people of the earth.

10. One day, therefore, while these foolish people were at their labour, a very wonderful thing took place. They were talking together as usual, but, all of a sudden, they found it impossible to understand what each other said. This caused such confusion that they could not go on building the tower. They therefore gave up the idea of climbing to heaven, and resolved to wander to different parts of the earth.

11. It is likely that they formed themselves into several

parties, consisting of such as could talk intelligibly together. They set forth on their journey in various directions, and as each company departed, they probably threw a sad glance behind them at the tower of Babel. The sun was, perhaps, shining on its lofty summit, as it seemed to rise up into the very sky; and we may believe that the event was long remembered by these exiles.

12. The descendants of Shem are supposed to have distributed themselves over the country near to the Euphrates. The descendants of Ham took a westerly direction, and proceeded to Africa; they settled in Egypt, and laid the foundation of a great nation there. The descendants of Japheth proceeded to Greece, and thus laid the foundation of several European nations.

13. Some travellers, in modern times, have discovered on the shore of the Euphrates a large hillock, composed of sun-burnt bricks cemented together. This hillock is supposed to be the ruins of the tower of Babel, which was built more than four thousand years ago.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of those who lived before the flood?—2. When did the deluge begin and end? What of Mount Ararat?—3. What of the people and animals that came out of the ark?—4. What did the descendants of Noah do?—5. Where was the land of Shinar?—6. What of the people?—7. Why did they resolve to build the tower of Babel?—8. Describe the building of the tower.—10. The confusion of languages.—11. What was the consequence of this confusion of languages?—12. What of the descendants of Shem? Of Ham? Of Japheth?—13. What traces of Babel have travellers discovered?

---

## CHAPTER IX. ASIA continued.—*About the great Assyrian Empire, and Reign of Queen Semiramis.*

1. WHEN the rest of mankind were scattered into different parts of the earth, there were a number of people who still remained near the tower of Babel. These continued to

inhabit the land of Shinar, which was a warm country, and very fertile. In course of time they extended over a much larger tract of country, and built towns and cities.

2. This region received the name of Assyria, and it was the first of the great nations of the earth. Its boundaries varied at different times, but its place on the map may be seen in the vicinity of the two rivers, Tigris and Euphrates, northward of the Persian Gulf.

3. Ashur, the grandson of Noah, was the first ruler of Assyria. In the year 2229 before Christ he built the city of Nineveh, and surrounded it with walls a hundred feet high. It was likewise defended by fifteen hundred towers, each two hundred feet in height. The city was so large, that, merely in walking round it, a person must travel a hundred miles.

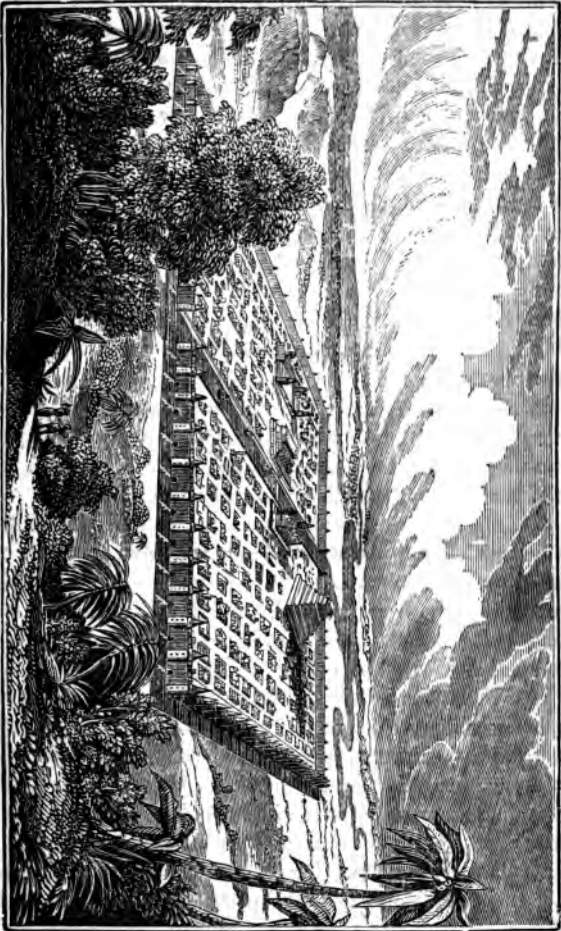
4. But the city of Babylon, which was built a short time afterwards, was superior to Nineveh both in size and beauty. It was situated on the river Euphrates. The walls were so very thick that six chariots drawn by horses could be driven abreast upon the top, without danger of falling off on either side. In ancient times walls were necessary to protect the people from their enemies.

5. In this city there were magnificent gardens, belonging to the royal palace, constructed in such a manner that they appeared to be hanging in the air without resting on the earth. They contained large trees, and numerous kinds of fruits and flowers. There was also a splendid temple dedicated to Belus, or Baal, the chief idol of the Assyrians. This temple was six hundred and sixty feet high, and it contained a golden image of Belus forty feet in height.

6. The city of Babylon, which I have been describing, was first built by Nimrod, that mighty hunter of whom the Bible tells us. But the person who made all the beautiful gardens and palaces, and who set up the golden *image of Belus*, was a woman named Semiramis. She had

been the wife of Ninus, king of Assyria; but when king

The City of Babylon, according to the description of the ancient historian, Herodotus.



Ninus died, queen Semiramis became sole ruler of the empire. *She was an ambitious woman, and could not content*

herself to live quietly in Babylon, although she had taken so much pains to make it a beautiful city.

7. She was tormented with a wicked desire to conquer all the nations of the earth. So she collected an immense army, and marched against the rich and powerful king of the Indies, who lived in what we now call Hindostan, a country lying to the south-east of Assyria.

8. When the king of the Indies, who was very rich and powerful, heard that queen Semiramis was coming to invade his dominions, he mustered a vast number of men to defend them. Besides his soldiers, he had a great many elephants, each of which was more formidable than many soldiers. They were taught to rush into the battle, and toss the enemy about with their trunks, and trample them down with their huge feet.

9. Now queen Semiramis had no elephants, and therefore she was afraid that the king of the Indies would overcome her; she therefore endeavoured to prevent this misfortune by a very curious contrivance.

10. She ordered three thousand brown oxen to be killed, and their hides to be stripped off, and sewed together in the shape of elephants. These were placed upon camels, and when the camels were drawn up in battle array, they looked pretty much like a troop of great brown elephants.

11. When the battle was to be fought, the king of the Indies with his real elephants marched forward on one side, and queen Semiramis, with her camels and ox-hides, came boldly against him on the other. But when the Indian army had marched close to the host of the Assyrians, the former perceived that there was no such thing as an elephant among them. They therefore laid aside all fear, and rushed furiously upon queen Semiramis and her soldiers.

12. The real elephants put the camels to flight; and *then ran about in great rage, tossing the Assyrians into*

the air, and trampling them down by hundreds. Thus the Assyrian army was routed, and the king of the Indies gained a complete victory. Queen Semiramis was sorely wounded; but she got into a chariot, and drove away at full speed from the battle-field. She finally escaped to her own kingdom, but in a very sad condition.

13. She then took up her residence in the palace at Babylon; but she did not long enjoy herself in the beautiful gardens which she had suspended in the air. It is said that her own son, whose name was Ninias, put his mother to death, that he might get possession of the throne, and reign over the people.

14. Such was the melancholy end of the mighty queen Semiramis. How foolish and wicked it was for her to spend her life in trying to conquer other nations, instead of making her own people happy. But she had not learned that Gospel rule, "Do to another as you would have another do to you."

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Did all the people leave the land of Shinar after the confusion of languages? Did the people of the land of Shinar increase? What did they do?—2. What name did the country around Shinar receive? What was the first empire or great nation of the earth?—3. Who was the first ruler of Assyria? What city did he build? Describe the city of Nineveh.—4. Where was the city of Babylon? Describe this wonderful city. Why did the ancients surround their cities with walls?—5. What of the hanging gardens? The temple of Belus?—6. Who built Babylon?—8. What of Semiramis? Was she contented with Babylon? What did she do? Where did the king of the Indies live?—8. What did the king of the Indies do when he heard that Semiramis was going to make war upon his kingdom? What sort of an army had he? What of the elephants?—9. By what contrivance did Semiramis endeavour to match the elephants of the king of India?—11. Describe the battle.—12. What was the result of the battle?—14. Was the conduct of Semiramis good or wise? Do you think any person can be happy who does not try to make others so?



**CHAPTER X. ASIA continued.**—*About Ninias. Reign of Sardanapalus, and Ruin of the Assyrian Empire.*

1. AFTER Ninias had wickedly murdered his mother, he became king of Assyria. His reign began about the year 2000 before Christ, or about three hundred and fifty years after the Deluge.

2. Ninias was not only a very wicked man, but a very slothful one. He did not set out to conquer kingdoms, like his mother, but he shut himself up in his palace, and thought of nothing but how to enjoy himself. He knew that his people hated him; and therefore he kept guards in his palace; but he was afraid to trust even his guards. Whether he was murdered at last, or whether he died quietly in his bed, history does not inform us.

3. After the reign of Ninias, there was an interval of eight hundred years, during which it is impossible to say what happened in the kingdom of Assyria. Probably most of the kings, like Ninias, wasted their time in idle pleasures, and did nothing worthy of remembrance.

4. When Pul was king of Assyria, he conquered the Israelites, and forced them to pay him tribute. He is supposed to have been the king of Nineveh to whom the prophet Jonah was sent to preach repentance, about eight hundred and sixty years before Christ.

5. Some years afterwards, there was a king upon the throne of Assyria whose name was Sardanapalus. He is said to have been a beautiful young man; but he was slothful, and took no care of his kingdom, and made no attempt to promote the welfare of his people. He seldom went out of his palace, but lived chiefly among the women. In order to make himself more fit for their company, he painted his face, and sometimes put on a woman's dress, and in this ridiculous guise used to sit with the women, *and help them to spin.*

6. But while Sardanapalus was feasting and dancing, and helping the women to spin, a terrible destruction was impending over his head. Arbaces, governor of the Medes, made war against this unworthy monarch, and besieged him in the city of Babylon. Sardanapalus saw that he could not escape, and that if he lived any longer, he should probably become a slave.

7. So, rather than be a slave, he resolved to die. He therefore collected his treasures, and heaped them into one great pile in a splendid hall of his palace, and then set fire to the pile. The palace was speedily in a blaze, and Sardanapalus, with his favourite officers, and a multitude of beautiful women, were burnt to death in the flames. Thus ended the great Assyrian monarchy, the country being conquered by Arbaces.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of Ninias? When did his reign begin? —2. What was his character?—3. What of Assyria for eight hundred years after Ninias?—4. What of Pul? About what time did Jonah go to preach repentance to the Ninevites?—5. What of Sardanapalus? How did he live?—6. What of Arbaces?—7. What did Sardanapalus do? What was the end of the Assyrian empire?

---

CHAPTER XI. ASIA continued.—*About the Hebrews, or Jews. Origin of the Hebrews. The removal of Jacob and his children to Egypt.*

1. THE founder of the Hebrew nation was Abraham, the son of Terah. He was born about two hundred years after the Deluge. The country of his birth was Chaldea, which formed the southern part of the Assyrian empire.

2. The rest of the inhabitants of Chaldea were idolaters, and worshipped the sun, moon, and stars; but Abraham worshipped the true God whom we worship. In the early part of his life he was a shepherd on the Chaldean

plains. When his father was dead, God commanded him to leave his native country, and travel westward to the land of Canaan.

3. This region was afterwards called Palestine. It lies north of Arabia, and is on the eastern border of the Mediterranean Sea. It was a rich and fertile country, and God promised Abraham that his descendants should dwell there.

4. Many years of Abraham's life were spent in wandering to and fro. His wife Sarah went with him, and they were followed by a large number of male and female servants, and by numerous flocks and herds. They dwelt in tents, and had no settled home.

5. Abraham and Sarah had one son, named Isaac. His father loved him fondly; but so great was Abraham's faith, that, when God commanded him to sacrifice this child, he prepared to obey. But God sent an angel from heaven, to bid him stay his hand.

6. The life of Abraham was full of interesting events, but you must read and study them well in your Bible. He lived to be a hundred and seventy-five years old, and then died at Hebron, in Canaan, but was buried in a cave at Machpelah, where Sarah his wife had been buried many years before.

7. The Jews and the Arabians are descended from this ancient patriarch. They have always called him Father Abraham. It is said that to this day they show the place where Abraham and Sarah lie buried; they consider it a holy spot, and travellers at the present day go to see it.

8. Isaac, the son of Abraham, left two children, Esau and Jacob. In those days the eldest son enjoyed many privileges, and these Jacob persuaded his brother Esau to sell to him for a mess of pottage, whereby Jacob became the head of his people. He likewise obtained a blessing, *which his father intended to bestow on Esau.*

9. Jacob had twelve sons, whose names were Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Dan, Judah, Naphthali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph, and Benjamin. The posterity of each of these twelve afterwards became a separate tribe among the Hebrews.

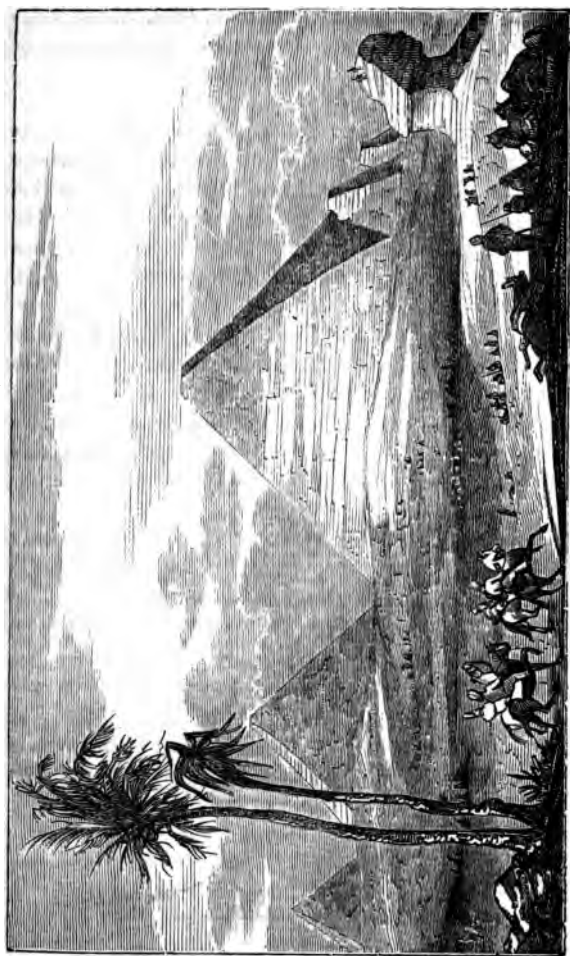
10. My young reader must look into the Bible for the beautiful story of Joseph and his brethren. I can merely tell him that Joseph was sold into captivity, and carried into the land of Egypt, where he became ruler over the whole country, and was there the means of preserving his aged father and all his brothers from death by famine. He died 1635 years before Christ.

11. Jacob and his twelve children, with all their descendants, their flocks, and their herds, removed to Egypt, and took up their residence there. It was in that country that the Hebrews first began to be a nation; so that their history may be said to commence from this period. Jacob died 1689 years before Christ.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of Abraham? When was he born? How long ago? **ANS.** Nearly four thousand years. What was the native country of Abraham?—2. What of the worship of the Chaldeans? Of Abraham? What of the early life of Abraham? What did God command Abraham to do? Which way was Canaan from Chaldea? How far was Chaldea from Canaan? **ANS.** About five hundred miles.—3. Where is the land of Canaan? What is it now called?—4. What of the life of Abraham? Who went with him from Chaldea to Canaan?—5. What of Isaac?—6. What else of Abraham?—7. What of the Jews?—8. What of Isaac? What did Esau do? What is meant by birthright?—9. Who were the twelve sons of Jacob? What of the descendants of these twelve sons of Jacob?—11. Where did Jacob go with his family?

---



The Pyramids of Egypt.

CHAPTER XII. ASIA continued.—*The bondage in Egypt. Flight of the Hebrews, and destruction of Pharaoh and his host.*

1. EGYPT is in Africa. It was formerly a great, powerful, and learned nation, abounding in splendid cities, and vast temples and palaces, the ruins of which exist in great perfection to the present day. The famous river Nile runs through the country. But this land is far less populous now than it was in the time of Joseph. It was then full of people, and they were the most learned and civilized of all the nations of the earth; it is now occupied chiefly by the Turks and Arabs, and is sunk in ignorance and barbarism.

2. But I must tell you of the Hebrews. Pharaoh, the good king of Egypt, died, and Joseph likewise. Another king ascended the throne, who hated the Hebrews, and did all in his power to oppress them.

3. The Egyptians treated the Hebrews like slaves, and made them perform all the hardest labour. It is thought by some writers that the stupendous Pyramids were built by them. These vast edifices are still standing on the banks of the Nile.

4. The last cruel king of Egypt, who so greatly persecuted the Hebrews, was also named Pharaoh, for that was a general name or title of the Egyptian kings. One of the most wicked injuries that he inflicted on the Hebrews was the following:—

5. He commanded that every male child should be thrown into the river Nile as soon as he was born. The reason of this horrible cruelty was, that the Hebrews might not become more numerous than the Egyptians, and conquer the whole country.

6. One of the Hebrew women, however, could not make up her *mind* to throw her son into the Nile. If

she had openly disobeyed the king's order, she would have been put to death, but she privately made a little ark, or boat, placed the child in it, and laid it among the flags that grew by the river's side.



Moses was found by the King's Daughter.

7. The king's daughter went down to the river to bathe, and perceiving the little ark, she sent her maidens to fetch it. When they looked into it, and found a little Hebrew boy there, the heart of the princess was moved with compassion, and she resolved to save his life; so she hired a nurse for him, who proved to be his own mother. She gave him the name of Moses, and when old enough, she caused him to be instructed in all the learning of the Egyptians, at that period the most learned people on earth.

8. But though he himself was so well treated, Moses did not forget the sufferings of the other Hebrews. He remembered that they were his brethren, and he resolved to rescue them from their oppressors.

9. He and his brother Aaron received power from God *to perform many wonderful things*, in order to induce

Pharaoh to let the Hebrews depart out of Egypt. Ten great plagues were inflicted on the Egyptians, and these were so terrible that at last Pharaoh gave the Hebrews leave to go.

10. But scarcely were they gone, when the king was sorry that he had not still kept them in Egypt, that he might oppress them, and compel them to labour for him as before. He therefore mustered his warriors, and rode swiftly after the fugitives.

11. When he came in sight of them, they were encamped by the Red Sea, which lies between Egypt and Arabia. Then the Lord caused the waters to roll back, and form a wall on each side. Thus there was a path of glistening sand for the Hebrews through the depths of the sea.

12. Pharaoh and his army rode onward, and by the time that the fugitives had reached the opposite shore, the Egyptians were in the midst of this wonderful passage. As the Hebrews fled, they looked behind them. There was the proud array of the Egyptian king, with his chariots and horsemen, and all his innumerable army, and Pharaoh himself riding haughtily in the midst.

13. The affrighted Hebrews looked behind them again, and, lo! the two walls of water had rolled together. They were dashing against the chariots, and sweeping the soldiers off their feet. The waves were crested with foam, and came roaring against the proud and wicked king. In a little time the sea rolled over Pharaoh and his host, and thus they all perished, leaving the Jews to proceed on their journey.

14. This was a terrible event, but Pharaoh had been very cruel; he therefore deserved his fate. This story may teach us, that not only wicked rulers, but those who follow them, have reason to fear the judgments of heaven.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of Egypt? Which way does it lie from you? Which way does the Nile flow? In which of the four



quarters of the globe is Egypt? In which part of Africa is Egypt? What of Egypt in the time of Joseph?—2. How were the Hebrews treated after the death of Joseph? What of the pyramids? How high is the tallest of the Egyptian pyramids? **ANS.** About five hundred feet.—4. What cruelty did Pharaoh inflict upon the Hebrews?—6. What did one of the Hebrew women do?—7. What of Pharaoh's daughter?—8. What of Moses?—9. What did he resolve to do?—10. What of Moses and Aaron? To what did Pharaoh consent?—11. Did he change his mind? What did he do? What way was the Red Sea from Egypt?—12. What miracle did God perform? How did the Hebrews cross the Red Sea?—15. What became of Pharaoh and his army?

**CHAPTER XIII.** ASIA continued.—*About the Wanderings of the Israelites in the Wilderness.*



The Israelites gathered Manna in the Wilderness.

1. It was now two hundred and fifteen years since Jacob had come to settle in Egypt. His descendants had multiplied so rapidly, that, at the time of their departure, the Hebrew nation are supposed to have amounted to at least two millions of people. Moses, their leader, was eighty years old, but his step was steady: and, though of meek

and humble manners, he was a man of great wisdom and firmness of character.

2. The Hebrews intended to go directly from Egypt to the land of Canaan, the country now called Palestine. Before reaching it the children of Israel were to pass through a part of Arabia.

3. In order that they might not go astray, God ordained that a vast pillar of cloud should move before them all day long; and at night the pillar of cloud was changed to a pillar of fire, which threw a radiance over the regions through which they journeyed.

4. The country was desolate and barren, and often destitute of water, but the Lord fed the people with manna and with quails; and when they were thirsty, Moses, at his command, smote upon a rock, and the water gushed out abundantly. This was a great relief, for the climate there was exceedingly hot. Beside all this, the Hebrews received divine assistance against the Amalekites, and were enabled to conquer them in battle.

5. But, notwithstanding various mercies, the Israelites were an ungrateful and rebellious people. They often turned from the worship of the true God, and became idolaters.

6. At the very time when the Lord was revealing himself to Moses on the summit of Mount Sinai, the people compelled Aaron to make a golden calf. They worshipped this poor image instead of Jehovah, who had brought them out of Egypt.

7. The worship of animals was a species of idolatry which the Israelites had learned in Egypt, where it greatly prevailed. Among the many representations upon the ancient monuments of Egypt, which are to be seen at the present day, is one of the sacred calf, which they worshipped, and of which that made by Aaron at the instance of the rebellious Israelites was in all probability an imitation.



The Sacred Calf of the Egyptians.

8. On account of their numerous sins the Lord often inflicted severe punishments upon them. Many were slain by pestilence, and some were swallowed up in the earth. The remainder were compelled to wander about for forty years in the deserts of Arabia, though the whole distance in a direct line from Egypt to Canaan was but two hundred and fifty miles.

9. Before they came to the land of Canaan, the whole, except two, of those who came out of Egypt were dead. Their children inherited the promised land, but they themselves were buried in the sands of the desert. Even Moses was permitted merely to gaze at the land of Canaan from the top of Mount Pisgah. Here he died, at the age of one hundred and twenty years.

10. After the death of Moses, Joshua, the son of Nun, became leader of the Israelites. Under his guidance they entered the promised land, and subdued the people who inhabited it. The territory of Canaan was then divided among the twelve tribes of Israel. The Levites, being priests, had towns assigned them among the other tribes.

QUESTIONS. 1. How long was it from the time Jacob settled in Egypt to the departure of the Israelites? What was the number of the Israelites at this time? How old was Moses? What was his character?—2. In which direction is Canaan from Egypt? What country lies between Canaan and Egypt? In what country did the Hebrews wander?—3. How were the Hebrews guided?—4. What sort of country did they travel through? How were they fed? How were they supplied with water? What other divine assistance was rendered to the Hebrews?—5. Were the Hebrews grateful for all the mercies bestowed upon them?—6. What did they do when Moses was on Mount Sinai?—7. What evil resulted from the disobedience of the Hebrews? Do you not know that evil always follows disobedience? How long did the Hebrews wander? What is the distance in a straight line from Egypt to Canaan?—8. Did most of the Hebrews who left Egypt reach Canaan? What of Moses? Where is Mount Pisgah?—9. Who became leader after the death of Moses? How was the land of Canaan divided?

---

#### CHAPTER XIV. ASIA continued.—*Overthrow of the Midianites. Samson, judge of Israel.*

1. AFTER their settlement in Canaan the Israelites lived under the authority of Judges. These were their rulers in time of peace, and their generals in war. Some of them were very remarkable personages, and did many things worthy of remembrance.

2. The name of one of the judges was Gideon. While he ruled Israel, an army of Midianites invaded the country, and violently oppressed the people during seven years. But the Lord instructed Gideon how to rescue the Israelites from their powerful enemies.

3. Gideon chose three hundred men, and caused each of them to take an earthen pitcher, and put a lamp within it. With this small band he entered the camp of the Midianites by night, while the army was sleeping in their tents. Gideon gave a signal, and his three hundred men broke their pitchers, at the same time blowing a loud blast upon trumpets which they had brought. This terrible clamour startled the Midianites from their sleep.

4. Amid the clangor of the trumpets they heard the Israelites shouting, "The sword of the Lord and of Gideon." A great panic seized upon the Midianites, who imagined that all the Hebrew army had broken into their camp. Each man mistook his neighbour for an enemy; so that more of the Midianites were slain by their own swords, than by the swords of the men of Israel. Thus God wrought a great deliverance for his people.

5. Another famous judge in Israel was Samson, in whose days the Philistines had conquered and greatly oppressed the Israelites. It had pleased God to endue Samson with most extraordinary strength of body, whereby he was enabled to assail and greatly harass the oppressors of his nation.

6. The Philistines were greatly enraged against him, but so long as he continued blameless in his own conduct, they had no power over him. But he suffered himself, through his own misconduct, to fall into an evil snare that was laid for him, and he became a prisoner in the hands of his enemies, who put out his eyes, and bound him in chains, and carried him into one of their temples, in order to make sport at a great festival of their idols.

7. When Samson had done many wonderful feats of strength, he asked leave to rest himself against the two main pillars of the temple. The floor and galleries were all crowded with Philistines, who gazed upon this man of mighty strength, and triumphed and rejoiced, because they imagined he could do them no more harm.

8. But while they gazed, the strong man threw his arms round the two pillars of the temple, and the edifice trembled as with an earthquake. Then Samson bowed himself with all his might, and down came the temple, with a crash like thunder, overwhelming the whole multitude of the Philistines in its ruins.

9. Samson was likewise crushed, but in his death it

appears that he triumphed over his enemies, and lay buried beneath the dead bodies of lords and mighty men.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. How were the Hebrews governed after their settlement in Canaan? What of the judges?—2. What of Gideon?—3. Tell how Gideon contrived to overcome the Midianites.—5. What of Samson? What of the Philistines?—6. What did the Philistines do to Samson?—8. How did Samson destroy the Philistine temple?

---

#### CHAPTER XV. ASIA continued.—*Beginning of the Reign of Saul.*

1. MANY other judges ruled over Israel, in the space of about four hundred years from the time that Moses led the Hebrews out of Egypt. But at length they became dissatisfied with this mode of government, and demanded that a king should be placed over them.

2. Samuel was then the judge of Israel. He was an old man, and a wise one; and besides the wisdom that he had collected in the course of a long life, he possessed wisdom from on high.

3. When the people demanded a king, Samuel endeavoured to convince them that they were much better without one. But they would not hearken to this wise and good old man, and still wished for a king. They imagined that none but a king would govern them well in time of peace, or fight successfully against their enemies in war.

4. Samuel, therefore, consulted the Lord, and was directed to find out a king for the Israelites. The person who was fixed upon was a young man named Saul, the son of Kish. He possessed great beauty of person, and was a head taller than any other man among the Israelites. Samuel anointed his head with oil, and gave him to the Israelites as their king.

5. For a considerable time king Saul behaved like a wise and righteous monarch. But at length he began to disobey the Lord, and seldom took the advice of Samuel, although that good old priest would have been willing to direct him in every action of his life.

6. In the course of Saul's reign, the Israelites were often at war with the neighbouring nations. At one time, when the Philistines had invaded the country, there was a great giant in their host, whose name was Goliath, of Gath. He was ten or twelve feet high, and was clothed from head to foot in brazen armour. He carried an enormous spear, the iron head of which weighed many pounds.

7. Every day did this frightful giant stride forth from the camp of the Philistines, and defy the Israelites to produce a champion who would stand against him in single combat. But, instead of doing this, the whole host of Israel stood aloof from him, as a flock of sheep from a lion.

8. At last a young shepherd, by the name of David, happened to come to the camp of the Israelites, and heard the terrible voice of Goliath as he thundered forth his challenge. Young as he was, David had already slain a lion and a bear; and, with the help of the Lord, he thought himself able to slay this gigantic Philistine. He therefore obtained leave of king Saul to accept the challenge.

9. But, instead of wearing the king's armour, which Saul would willingly have lent him, David went to the battle in his shepherd's garb. He did not even buckle on a sword. When the two combatants came into the field, there was the youthful David on the side of the Israelites, with a staff in one hand, and a sling in the other, carrying five smooth stones in a shepherd's scrip or pouch.

10. On the side of the Philistines, forth strode the mighty Goliath, in his brazen armour, brandishing his great iron-headed spear. He looked scornfully at David, and *hardly thought it worth his while to lift his spear against*

him. "Come hither," said the giant, "and I will feed the fowls with your flesh!" But little David was not at all afraid, and told Goliath that he would cut off his head, and give his carcass to the beasts of the field. This threat so enraged the giant, that he put himself in motion to slay David.

11. The young man ran forward to meet Goliath, and as he ran, he took a smooth stone from his scrip, and placed it in his sling. When at the proper distance, he whirled the sling, and let fly the stone, which hit Goliath in the centre of the forehead. The stone sunk into the brain, the giant fell at full length upon the field, and David then cut off Goliath's head with his own sword. The Philistines were affrighted at their champion's overthrow, and fled.

12. The men of Israel pursued them, and made a prodigious slaughter. David returned from the battle, carrying the head of Goliath by the hair. The Hebrew women came forth to meet him, danced around him, and sang triumphant anthems in his praise.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. For how long a time were the Hebrews governed by judges?—2. What of Samuel?—3. What did he do when the people demanded a king?—4. What of Saul?—5. What of Goliath?—6. Who was David?—7. Tell the story of David and Goliath.—8. What effect had the death of Goliath upon the Philistines?—9. What honours were paid to David?

---

## CHAPTER XVI. ASIA continued.—*The Reign of David.* *Wisdom of Solomon.*

1. DAVID had won so much renown by his victory over Goliath, that Saul became envious of him, and often endeavoured to kill him. But Jonathan, the son of Saul, loved David better than a brother.

2. During the life-time of Saul, David was forced to live in exile. But, after a reign of about twenty-four



years, king Saul was slain on the mountains of Gilboa, in a disastrous battle with the Philistines, and Jonathan was likewise killed.

3. When David heard of these sad events, he expressed his sorrow by weeping, and rending his garments. Yet he gained a kingdom by the death of Saul and Jonathan, for the men of Judah first elected him to reign over them, and afterwards the whole people of Israel chose him for their king.

4. A great part of David's life was spent in war. He gained many victories, and enjoyed high renown as a gallant leader. He conquered many of the surrounding nations, and raised his kingdom to a higher pitch of power than it ever enjoyed before or afterwards. But he also won a peaceful kind of fame, which will last while the world endures, and be remembered through eternity.

5. He won it by his heavenly poesy, for king David was the sweet Psalmist of Israel; and, in all the ages since he lived, his psalms have been sung to the praise of the Lord. It is now about three thousand years since David died, yet to this hour every pious heart loves to commune with God in the beautiful words of this inspired man.

6. In the latter part of his life David was much grieved by the rebellious conduct of his son Absalom. But it grieved him more when Absalom was slain by Joab, who found him hanging by his long hair on the branches of an oak, and pierced his body with three darts.

7. When David had reigned forty years, and was grown a very old man, he died in his palace at Jerusalem, and the kingdom was inherited by his son Solomon. This prince was very young when he ascended the throne, but he was wiser in his youth than in his riper years.

8. Not long after he became king, two women came into his presence, bringing two children, one living and *one dead*. Each of the women claimed the living child

as her own, and they quarrelled violently, as if they would have torn the poor babe asunder.

9. "Bring hither a sword," said king Solomon; and immediately one of the attendants brought a sharp sword. "Now," continued Solomon, "that I may not wrong either of these women, the thing in dispute shall be equally divided between them. Cut the child in twain, and let each take half."

10. But when the real mother saw the keen sword glittering over her poor babe, she gave a scream of agony. "Do not slay the child!" she cried. "Give it to this wicked woman. Only let it live, and she may be its mother!"

11. But the other woman showed no pity for the child. "I ask no more than my just rights," she said. "Cut the child in two! I will be content with half." Now Solomon had watched the conduct of the two women, and he knew the true mother by her tenderness for the poor babe. "Give the child alive to her who would not have it slain," he said. "She is its mother."



Solomon gave judgment between the two Mothers.

QUESTIONS. Why was Saul envious of David? What did Saul do? What of Jonathan?—2. How was David obliged to live? What of Saul? Jonathan?—3. What effect had these things upon David? Who became king of Israel after the death of Saul?—4. How was a great part of David's life spent? To what condition did he bring the Hebrew nation? What better fame did he acquire than that of a conqueror?—5. Who was the author of the Psalms? What can you say of the Psalms? How long since David lived?—6. What of Absalom?—7. How long did David reign? Who succeeded him? What of Solomon?—8. Tell the story of the child.

---

CHAPTER XVII. ASIA continued.—*Building of the Temple. Visit of the Queen of Sheba.*

1. KING David, as I before told you, had increased the power and wealth of the Hebrew nation, so that it was now a great kingdom. Silver and gold were very abundant in the country, and king David had made preparation for the building of a splendid temple, to be dedicated to the worship of the true God.

2. The chief event of Solomon's life was the building of this temple. This was done by the special command of the Lord. It was now four hundred and eighty years since the Israelites had come out of Egypt; and in all that time there had been no edifice erected to the worship of God.

3. Solomon made an agreement with Hiram, king of Tyre, that he would give him a yearly supply of wheat and oil, in exchange for cedar and fir. Tyre was a great commercial city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, to the northward of Jerusalem. It belonged to Phœnicia, a country which has the credit of having first engaged in commerce.

4. With the timber which he procured from Tyre, and with a large quantity of hewn stone, Solomon began to build the temple. The front of this building was one *hundred and twenty* feet long, thirty-five feet broad, and

forty-five feet high, with a porch or entrance of much greater height. It extended around a large square, and, with the various buildings attached to it, covered twenty acres of ground.

5. But no pen can describe the richness and admirable splendour of this sacred edifice. The interior was constructed of the most costly kinds of wood ; and the walls were carved with figures of cherubim, and other beautiful devices. The walls and floors were partly overlaid with gold.

6. The temple was furnished with altars, and tables, and candlesticks, and innumerable other articles, all of the purest gold. The whole edifice must have glistened as if it had been built entirely of that precious metal.

7. Seven years were employed in building this temple. It was just about three thousand years from the creation that it was finished, and one thousand years before the birth of Christ. When it was finished, Solomon assembled all the chiefs, and elders, and great men of Israel, in order to dedicate it. The priests brought the ark, containing the two tables of stone which God had given to Moses more than four centuries before.

8. The ark was now placed in the holiest part of the temple. It rested beneath the broad wings of two cherubim that were overlaid with gold. No sooner was the ark set in its place than a cloud issued forth and filled the temple. This was a token that the Lord was there.

9. After the building of the temple, Solomon became so renowned for his wisdom and magnificence, that the queen of Sheba came from her own dominions to visit him. Her country is supposed to have been in Africa, to the southward of Egypt.

10. She travelled with a great multitude of attendants ; and she had likewise a train of camels, laden with gold, precious stones, and spices. The sweet perfume of the spices *scented the deserts* through which she passed.

11. When she came to Jerusalem, she beheld Solomon seated on a throne of ivory overlaid with pure gold, his feet resting on a golden footstool. There were lions of gold about the throne. The king had a majestic look, and the queen of Sheba was astonished at his grandeur; but when they had talked together she admired his wisdom even more than his magnificence. She acknowledged that the half of his greatness had not been told her.

12. If the queen of Sheba could have seen Solomon a few years afterwards, she would have beheld a lamentable change. He turned from the true God, and became an idolater. This wise and righteous king, who had built the sacred temple, grew so wicked that he built high places for the worship of heathen deities.

13. For this reason God determined to take away the chief part of the kingdom from his descendants. Accordingly, when Solomon was dead, ten of the tribes of Israel revolted against his son Rehoboam.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What had David done? What of silver and gold among the Hebrews?—2. What was the chief event of Solomon's reign? By whose command was the temple built?—3. What agreement did Solomon make with Hiram, king of Tyre? What of Phœnicia? In what part of Canaan was Jerusalem? How far from the Mediterranean Sea? **ANS.** About forty-five miles. Where was Tyre? In which direction from Jerusalem? What of Tyre? In which direction is Jerusalem from Babylon? From Egypt?—4. With what did Solomon begin to build the temple? Where was the temple of Solomon built? **ANS.** On a hill in Jerusalem, called Mount Moriah. Describe the extent of the temple.—5. Describe the interior of the temple.—6. With what was the temple furnished?—7. How long were they in building the temple? How long after the creation was the temple finished? How long before Christ? How long ago? Describe the dedication of the temple.—8. What of the queen of Sheba? Where is it supposed she came from?—9. Describe her visit to Solomon.—10. What change took place in Solomon?—11. What evil followed the idolatry of Solomon?

---

CHAPTER XVIII. ASIA continued.—*The Decline of the Jewish Nation.*

1. IN consequence of the revolt of the ten tribes, Rehoboam reigned only over the two tribes of Judah and Benjamin, these being called the kingdom of Judah. Beside the loss of so large a part of his kingdom, he suffered other misfortunes. Shishak, king of Egypt, made war against him, and took Jerusalem. He carried away the treasures of the temple and of the palace.

2. Shishak, the king of Egypt, commemorated his conquest over the Israelites, by having a representation of King Rehoboam sculptured on the walls of one of his palaces. The ruins of this palace were discovered a few years ago, and are still in existence; and we are thus enabled, at the distance of two thousand eight hundred years, to contemplate the records of this event. The annexed engraving is a copy of the sculpture, and the hieroglyphic figures on the shield signify IOUDAH MALEK, which means *King of Judah*.

3. The other ten tribes of Israel, which had revolted from Rehoboam, were thenceforward governed by kings of their own, the country being called the kingdom of Israel. Most of these kings were wicked men, and idolaters. Their palace and seat of government was in the city of Samaria.

4. When the kingdom of Israel had been separated from that of Judah about two hundred and fifty years, it was conquered by Salmaneser, king of Assyria. He made slaves of the Israelites, and carried them to his own country, and most of them never returned to the land of Canaan.

5. The people of the two tribes of Judah and Benjamin continued to reside in Canaan. They were now called Jews. The royal palace and seat of government was at

Jerusalem. Some of the Jewish kings were pious men, but many of them offended God by their sinfulness and idolatry.



Sculptured Effigy in the Palace of Shishak, King of Egypt, representing Rehoboam, King of Judah, as a Captive.

**6.** The whole nation of the Jews were perverse, and *underwent many severe* inflictions from the wrath of God.

In the year 606 before Christ, Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, took Jerusalem. He destroyed the temple, and carried the principal people captive to Babylon.

7. Afterwards, when Zedekiah was king, Jerusalem was again besieged and taken by Nebuzaradan, a general under Nebuchadnezzar. He broke down the walls of the city, and left nothing standing that could be destroyed. The Jews remained captive in Babylon seventy years.

8. When Babylon was taken by Cyrus, king of Persia, the Jews were permitted to return to their own country. They rebuilt the temple, and resumed their ancient manner of worship. Till the time of Alexander the Great, about 330 years before Christ, the nation was dependent on the kings of Persia.

9. It is said that Alexander the Great intended to take Jerusalem. But, as he advanced with his army, the high priest came forth to meet him, in his robes of office, at the head of a long train of Levites and people. Alexander was so struck with their appearance that he agreed to spare the city.

10. In the course of the two next centuries the Egyptians invaded the Jewish kingdom, and afterwards the Syrians reduced the inhabitants to bondage. They suffered great calamities from the tyranny of these conquerors.

11. But, in the year 166 before the Christian era, Judas Maccabæus, a valiant Jewish leader, drove the Syrians out of the country. When the king of Syria heard of it, he took an oath that he would destroy the whole Jewish nation. But, as he was hastening to Jerusalem, he was killed by a fall from his chariot.

12. The descendants of Judas Maccabæus afterwards assumed royal authority, and became kings of the Jews. In less than a century, however, the country was subdued by Pompey, a celebrated Roman general. He conferred the government on Antipater, a native of Edom.

13. *In the year 37 before the Christian era, the Roman*



senate decreed that Herod, the son of Antipater, should be king of the Jews. It was this Herod who commanded that all the young children of Bethlehem should be slain, in order that the infant Jesus might not survive. The period of that blessed Infant's birth was now at hand.

---

QUESTIONS. Who was Rehoboam? Into what two kingdoms was the Hebrew nation divided during his reign? What name was given to the ten tribes which revolted? What name was given to the two tribes? What of Shishak?—2. How was the kingdom of Israel governed? In what part of Canaan were the ten tribes? In which part was the kingdom of Judah? What of the kings of Israel? Where did these kings dwell? Where was Samaria? How far from Jerusalem? Ans. Forty miles.—3. What of Salmaneser?—4. What were the people of Judah now called? Where was the seat of government? What of the kings of Judah?—5. What of the Jewish nation? What of Nebuchadnezzar?—6. What of Nebuzaradan? How long did the Jews remain captive in Babylon?—7. What of Cyrus? What did the Jews do on their return from captivity? How long was the nation dependent upon Persia?—8. What of Alexander the Great?—9. What happened after the time of Alexander?—10. What of Judas Maccabæus? What of the king of Syria? In which direction was Syria from Canaan?—11. What of the descendants of Judas Maccabæus? What of Pompey? Whom did he appoint to govern Judæa?—12. When did the Roman senate appoint Herod king of the Jews? What of Herod?

---

CHAPTER XIX. ASIA continued.—*The Hebrew Prophets.*



The Prophet Elijah raised a Widow's Son to life.

1. I MUST now glance backward, and say a few words respecting a class of men who had appeared at various times among the Hebrews ; these men were called Prophets. They held intercourse with God, and he gave them the knowledge of things that were to happen in future years.

2. One of the most remarkable of the prophets was named Elijah, of whom many wonderful things are recorded in the Bible. While dwelling in a solitary place, the ravens brought him food, and, on another occasion, he restored the son of a poor widow from death to life.

3. He denounced God's vengeance against the wicked king Ahab, and foretold that the dogs should eat the painted Jezebel, his queen. And all this happened. He caused fire to come down from heaven, and consume three captains, with their soldiers, and he divided the river Jordan by smiting it with his mantle, and passed over on dry ground.

4. At last, when his mission on earth was ended, there

came a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and carried Elijah by a whirlwind up to heaven. Elijah's mantle fell from the fiery chariot, and it was caught up by Elisha, and he likewise became a very celebrated prophet.

5. Jonah was another prophet. A great fish swallowed him, and kept him three days in the depths of ocean, and then vomited him safely on dry land. Isaiah was also a prophet, who foretold many terrible calamities that were to befall Israel and Judah, and the surrounding nations. Jeremiah, another of the prophets, bewailed in plaintive accents the sins and misfortunes of God's people.

6. The prophet Daniel foretold the downfall of Belshazzar, king of Babylon. He was afterwards cast into a den of lions in Babylon, at the command of king Darius, but the next morning the king looked down into the den, and there was Daniel, alive and well. King Darius then ordered Daniel to be drawn out of the den, and his false accusers to be thrown into it. The moment that these wicked persons touched the bottom, the lions sprang forward and tore them limb from limb.

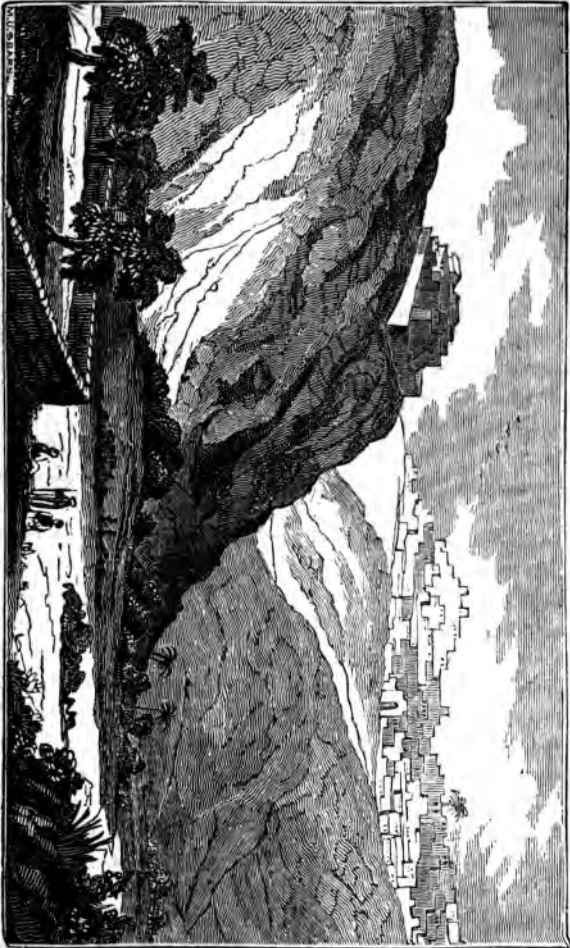
7. Numerous other prophets appeared at various times, and most of them performed such wonderful works that there could be no doubt of their possessing power from on high. Now it was remarked that all these prophets, or nearly all, spoke of a King, or Ruler, or other illustrious Personage, who was to appear among the Jews.

8. Although they foretold the most dreadful calamities to the people, still there was this one thing to comfort them. A descendant of king David was to renew the glory of the Jewish race, and establish his sway over the whole world.

9. This great event was expected to happen in about fifteen hundred years after Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt. And it did then happen. When the appointed period had elapsed, there appeared a star in a certain *quarter of the heavens*.

10. Some wise men from the east beheld the star, and were guided by it to a stable in the little village of Beth-

The Village of Bethlehem.



lehem, about five miles from Jerusalem. There, in a manger, lay the infant Jesus!

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of the prophets?—2. What is told of Elijah?—5. What of Elisha?—7. What of Jonah? Isaiah? Jeremiah?—6. What of Daniel?—7. What can you say of the prophets? Of what did the prophets all speak?—8. What cheering prospect did the prophets hold out to the Jews?—9. About how long after Moses did Christ appear? What of a star in the east?—10. What of Bethlehem? Whom did the wise men find in a stable?



The Prophet Daniel was cast into a Den of Lions.

---

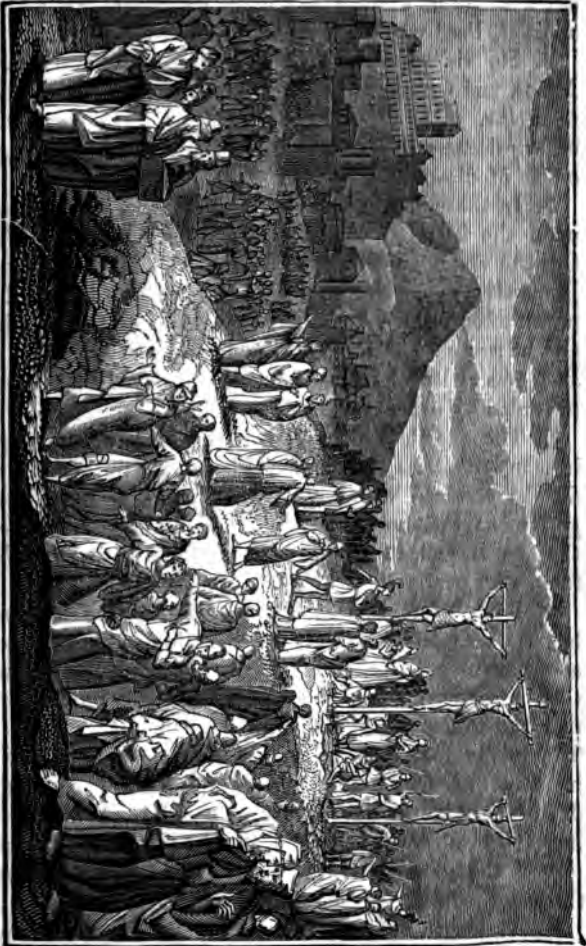
**CHAPTER XX.** ASIA continued.—*Crucifixion of our Lord. Destruction of Jerusalem.*

1. THE greatest event, not only in the history of the Jews, but in the history of the world, had now taken place; this was the coming of the Saviour. But my readers must not expect me to relate the whole story of this divine Personage in the little book which I am now writing.

2. The Jews rejected him. They had been looking for an earthly potentate; and when they beheld the meek and lowly Jesus, they despised and hated him. From the time that he proclaimed himself the **Messiah**, they sought to take his life. They brought him before the judgment-seat of Pontius Pilate, who was then the Roman governor

of Judea ; Pilate sentenced him to death, and the Saviour of the world was crucified between two thieves. He,

Jesus Christ was crucified between two Thieves on Mount Calvary.



however, rose from the dead, after being buried three days, and ascended into heaven !

3. Such is the brief story of Jesus Christ. After his death, his apostles proceeded to preach his gospel throughout the land of Canaan and other countries. Of all the apostles, Paul was the most active and successful.

4. He visited various parts of Palestine, Syria, Asia Minor, and Greece, and at length he was sent as a prisoner to Rome, to be tried by the emperor. He went with other prisoners in a small vessel, nearly the whole length of the Mediterranean Sea.

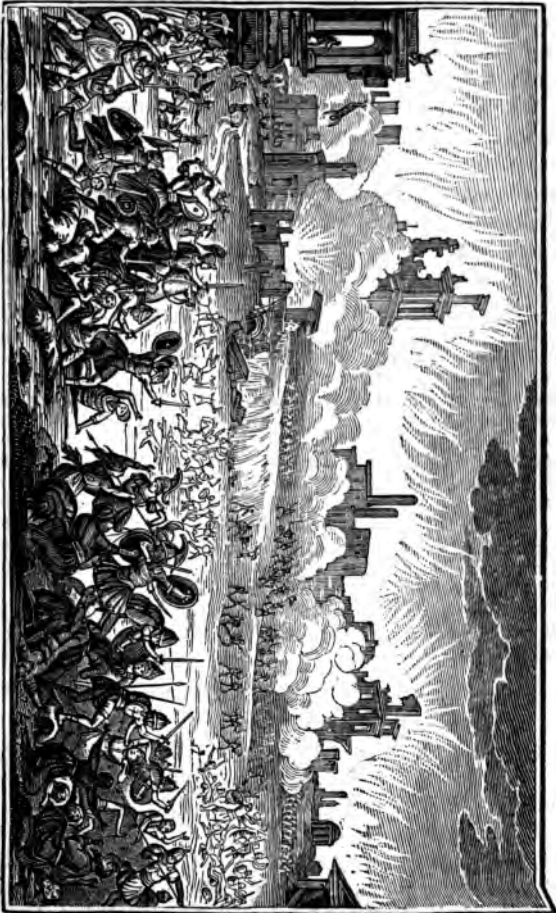
5. In the course of the voyage, the vessel was wrecked upon the island of Malta during a terrible gale. After this the vessel proceeded on its voyage, and Paul reached Rome sixty-one years after Christ. Here he remained in prison a long time; but many persons came to visit him, and he preached to them all the doctrines of Christianity. Paul was at length released, but it is believed that he was beheaded by order of the emperor Nero.

6. The apostle had now sown the seeds of the gospel in many countries, and the fruits began to appear. Nearly all the civilized world were worshippers of the Roman gods; but this heathen faith gradually gave way before the gospel, and, in process of time, Christianity was diffused over nearly the whole of Europe.

7. Long before the crucifixion of Christ, the Jews had become completely subject to the Roman power, but, about forty years after his death, they rebelled against their masters. Titus, the Roman general, immediately marched to besiege Jerusalem, and a dreadful war ensued. The inhabitants, shut up in the city, were soon greatly in want of food, and hunger impelled one of the Jewish women to devour her own child. When Titus heard of it, he was so shocked, that he vowed the destruction of the whole Jewish race, and more than a hundred thousand persons perished during this frightful siege!

8. At length the city was taken in the night-time, *and set on fire.* The flames caught the temple; the

hills on which Jerusalem is situated, were all blazing like so many volcanoes; and the blood of the slaughtered inhabitants hissed upon the burning brands.



The Destruction of Jerusalem by Titus.



9. Ninety-seven thousand Jews were taken prisoners; some were sold as slaves, and the conquerors exposed others to be torn in pieces by wild beasts. A few people remained in Jerusalem, and partly rebuilt the city; but it was again destroyed by a Roman emperor named Adrian, who levelled the walls and houses with the earth, and sowed the ground with salt.

10. The Jews were scattered all over the world; a catastrophe which had long been prophesied. There are now between three and four millions of them in different parts of the earth. They still keep their religion, and many of their old customs. Jerusalem has been partially restored, but it is now very different from what it was in the time of our Saviour.

---

QUESTIONS. What is the greatest event that has occurred on the globe? How long since Christ was born? How long after the creation did Christ appear? ANS. Four thousand and four years. How long after the flood?—2. How did the Jews receive Christ? What of Pilate? The crucifixion?—3. What did Christ's apostles do after his death? What of Paul?—4. What countries did Paul visit? Where was he at length sent?—5. Where was Paul's vessel wrecked? When did he arrive at Rome? To whom did he preach Christianity? What is supposed to have been his fate?—6. What had the apostles done? What of the worship of heathen deities? What of Christianity?—7. To whom had the Jews been long subject? What occurred forty years after the death of Christ? What of Titus? Describe the siege of Jerusalem?—9. What of Adrian?—10. What became of the Jews? What event had been foretold by the prophets? What of Jerusalem?

---

## CHAPTER XXI. ASIA continued.—*Cyrus conquers Babylon. His death.*

1. In a former part of this book I have told the story of Assyria, the first great empire of ancient times; it was situated, as you remember, on the borders of the rivers *Tigris and Euphrates*. In this region the climate is warm,

and the soil exceedingly fruitful, and here the human race seemed to multiply in the most wonderful manner.

2. Thus many nations soon sprung up and increased, till the whole surrounding country was filled with multitudes of people. Assyria, at one time, extended its dominion over most of these nations; but at length Persia became a powerful monarchy, and not only Assyria, but a great many other nations, became subject to it.

3. The first inhabitants of Persia were descended from Elam, the eldest son of Shem; they were therefore called Elamites. Very little is known of their history till about eighteen centuries after the deluge. Cyrus, a great conqueror, then ascended the throne of Persia.

4. Cyrus continued to extend his empire in all directions. Media, Parthia, Mesopotamia, Armenia, Syria, Canaan, and parts of Arabia, were subdued, and made portions of his kingdom. One of his chief exploits was the taking of the city of Babylon, the capital of Assyria. The walls of this great city were so thick and high, that it would have been impossible for an enemy either to break them down, or to climb over them. It was therefore a very difficult matter to take this strong place.

5. Now the channel of the river Euphrates ran directly through the centre of Babylon. Cyrus caused deep ditches to be dug around the city, so that he could draw off all the water of the river, and leave the channel dry. When the ditches were completed, he waited for a proper time to draw off the river.

6. On a certain night, Belshazzar, king of Babylon, made a great festival; his guards, and nearly all the inhabitants, were eating and drinking, thoughtless of the enemy on the outside of their walls. The Persians seized this opportunity to throw open the dams of the ditches.

7. The whole water of the Euphrates immediately flowed into them. Cyrus put himself at the head of the *Persian army*; and where the mighty river had so lately

rushed along, there were now the trampling footsteps of an innumerable host. Thus the Persian troops entered the city.

8. The guards of the royal palace were surprised and slain. Belshazzar heard the clash of arms, and the shrieks of dying men, as he sat with his nobles in the banquet-hall; but it was too late to escape. They were all slaughtered, and their blood was mingled with the wine of the festival. Thus Babylon was taken, and Assyria became a part of Persia.

9. Cyrus afterwards marched against the Scythians, a brave nation who dwelt to the north-east of the Caspian Sea, but Tomyris, their queen, collected an army, and fought a bloody battle with the Persians. Cyrus was defeated, and taken prisoner, and the son of the Scythian queen having been killed in the battle, she resolved to avenge his death, so she ordered her attendants to kill Cyrus, which was done in a horrible manner.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What was the first great empire of the world? Where was Assyria situated? Climate of this region? Soil? The human race?—2. Increase of mankind? What of Assyria? Persia? Which way was Persia from Canaan? Arabia? Caspian Sea? What gulf lies south of Persia?—3. What of the first inhabitants of Persia? At what time did Cyrus ascend the throne of Persia? What of Persia before the time of Cyrus?—4. What were some of the countries conquered by Cyrus? In which direction from Persia was Media? Parthia? Mesopotamia? Armenia? Syria? Canaan? Arabia? Describe the taking of Babylon?—8. What event terminated the Assyrian empire?—9. Where did the Scythians live? Their character? What of Cyrus?

---

## CHAPTER XXII. ASIA continued.—*Reign of Cambyses.*

1. CAMBYSES, the son of Cyrus, seems to have been a worse man than his father; he was addicted to drinking wine; and Prexaspes, a favourite courtier, hinted to him *that he injured his health and faculties by this practice.*

When Prexaspes had done speaking, Cambyzes called for goblets of wine, and drank them off. "Now we shall see," said he, "whether the wine has dimmed my sight, or rendered my hand unsteady!"

2. He then called for a bow and arrow, and ordered the son of Prexaspes to stand at the further end of the hall. The boy did so; and while his father looked on, the cruel Cambyzes took aim at the poor child, and shot an arrow directly through his heart.

3. I am very sorry, my dear young reader, to tell you such horrible stories as these. I would not tell them but that they are true, and they may teach us good and useful lessons; they may show us how wicked and miserable even kings may be, where there is an absence of Christian principles.

4. They may also make us rejoice that we live in an age when such things do not happen, for you must recollect that I am telling you of what took place many ages since. The people were then thought to be merely the playthings of their kings, and only made to serve them. Since that time, Christ has come and told us that it is the will of God that each man should do to another as he would be done by.

5. It is true that in many countries, particularly in Asia, the divine laws of Christ are not known; but in most places the kings are better than they were in the time of Cambyzes.

6. But I must go on with my story. Cambyzes made war against the Egyptians, and at the siege of one of their cities, he contrived a very cunning method to take the place. The Egyptians believed that cats and dogs were sacred, and they worshipped them as gods. This foolish superstition induced Cambyzes to collect all the cats and dogs in the country, and place them in front of his army.

7. The Egyptians were afraid to discharge their arrows, lest they *should kill some of these divine animals.* The

Persians therefore marched onward, with the dogs barking and the cats mewing before them, and the city was taken without the slightest resistance.

8. The chief deity of the Egyptians was a great bull, to whom they had given the name of Apis. Cambyses killed this holy bull, and bestowed the flesh on some of his soldiers for dinner. Soon afterwards, to the great joy of the Egyptians, he killed himself accidentally with his own sword.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of Cambyses? What story can you tell of him?—3. What lessons may we learn from these painful tales of ancient kings?—4. What was thought of the people in these ancient times? What has Christ since told us?—5. Where are the laws of Christ not known?—6. How did Cambyses capture an Egyptian city?—8. What of the Egyptian god Apis? How was Cambyses slain?

---

### CHAPTER XXIII. ASIA continued.—*Expedition of Xerxes into Greece.*

1. ANOTHER king of the Persians was named Darius. He was likewise a cruel tyrant. When he was going on an expedition against the Scythians, he compelled an old man's three sons to join his army. These were all the children the old man had, and he came into the king's presence, and earnestly entreated that one of his sons might be left at home.

2. "I am very poor and infirm," said the old man; "I am unable to work; if you take away all my three children, I shall starve to death." "Indeed!" answered king Darius in a very compassionate tone, "then they shall all three remain with you!" Immediately he ordered the three young men to be slain, and gave their dead bodies to their poor old father.

3. While Darius was preparing to make war on Greece, *he fell sick and died.* His successor was his son Xerxes.

This monarch invaded Greece with nearly two millions of men on land, and more than half a million on board his fleet.

4. You may well believe that a king who could collect so large an army, had great wealth and power. At this time the Persian empire was of vast extent, but still Xerxes wished to conquer other nations. His capital was Persepolis, one of the most splendid cities that ever existed.

5. Here Xerxes had magnificent palaces; he had gold and silver in abundance, he had precious stones more than he could count, he was indeed surrounded with pomp and magnificence; but all these could not bring contentment. He was still desirous of conquering other nations; and for this purpose he collected the greatest army of which history gives us any account.

6. When Xerxes arrived in Greece, it so happened that a great mountain, called Mount Athos, stood directly in the way that he wished his ships to sail. He therefore wrote a letter to the mountain, commanding it to get out of his way; but Mount Athos would not stir one step.

7. In order to bring his land-forces from Asia into Greece, Xerxes built a bridge of boats across a part of the sea called the Hellespont. But the waves broke the bridge to pieces, and Xerxes commanded the sea to be whipt for its disrespectful conduct.

8. The greater part of the cities of Greece submitted to Xerxes; but Sparta and Athens made a stubborn resistance. Though they could muster but few soldiers, these were far more valiant than the Persians.

9. At Thermopylæ, Xerxes wished to lead his army through a narrow passage between a mountain and the sea. Leonidas, king of Sparta, opposed him with six thousand men, and seventy thousand Persians were slain in the attempt to break through the pass.

10. At last, *Leonidas* found that the Persians would

not be kept back any longer; he therefore sent away all but three hundred men, and with these he remained at the pass of Thermopylæ. The immense host of the Persians came onward like a flood; and only one soldier of the three hundred escaped to Sparta to tell that the rest were slain.

11. But Xerxes did not long continue to triumph in Greece. His fleet was defeated at Salamis, and his army at Plataea. In escaping, he was forced to cross the Hellespont in a little fishing-vessel; for the sea, in spite of its being whipped, had again broken his bridge of boats.

12. Not long after his return to Persia, the proud Xerxes was murdered in his bed. This event happened about the year 465 before Christ. His son, Artaxerxes, made peace with the Greeks.

13. The story of Xerxes may teach us the folly of ambition. Had he been content with staying at home and governing his people so as to make them happy, he might have been happy himself. But, having too much, he still strove to acquire more, and thus brought misery upon himself and millions of his fellow-men.

14. Let us be content in more humble situations, for we see that happiness is not always associated with wealth and power. Let us remember, too, that pride and vanity made even Xerxes ridiculous with all his magnificence.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of Darius? Tell a story of his cruelty. —3. Who was the successor of Darius? How large was the army of Xerxes when he invaded Greece? Where is Greece? *ANS.* In Europe. How far from Persia? *ANS.* About fifteen hundred miles. In which direction from Persia? *ANS.* North-west. —4. What of the Persian empire in the time of Xerxes? What of Persepolis? In which direction was it from Babylon? Jerusalem? —5. What of the wealth and magnificence of Xerxes? What was the greatest army ever known? —6. What of Mount Athos? —7. What of the Hellespont? —8. What of Greece? —9. What of Thermopylæ? —10. What of Leonidas? —11. What of Salamis? Plataea? How did Xerxes return? —12. Death of Xerxes? When did this event happen? Who succeeded Xerxes? —13. What may the story of Xerxes teach us? How might he have *been happy*? How did he bring misery upon himself and others? —14. *Why should we be content?* What should we remember?

CHAPTER XXIV. ASIA continued.—*Affairs of Persia till the Saracen Conquest.*

1. BETWEEN one and two centuries after the death of Xerxes, that is, about 330 years before Christ, Persia was invaded by Alexander the Great, king of Macedon. Darius the Third was then king of Persia. Being defeated by Alexander, two of his own subjects bound him with golden chains, and put him in a covered cart.

2. They intended to murder Darius, and get possession of the kingdom, but Alexander came suddenly upon the conspirators, and forced them to take flight. As they rode away, they discharged their darts at Darius, and slew him.

3. After this time, Persia became subject to the Parthians, whose country had formerly been a province of the Persian empire, and it continued under the government of the Parthian kings nearly five hundred years. About the year 230 after the Christian era, a Persian, named Artaxares, excited a rebellion and made himself king.

4. His descendants occupied the throne for many generations. One of the most distinguished was Chosroes the Great, who lived about six hundred years after Christ. He made war against the Romans, and ravaged their provinces in Asia.

5. One of his successors was likewise named Chosroes. This hateful monster caused his own father to be beaten to death, but Heaven punished him by the wickedness of his eldest son, whose name was Siroes. He dethroned his father, and murdered all his brothers in his presence.

6. Siroes then ordered his father to be thrown into a dungeon. Here, instead of killing the old king at once, he tormented him for a long time by pricking him with the points of arrows! Chosroes died at last, in great agony.



7. These things may seem too shocking to tell, but it is perhaps necessary that my young readers should know how very cruel men may become when given up to the influence of passion. Let us be thankful that the religion of Christ has taught us to look with horror upon such crimes as were often practised by the Persian kings.

8. Isdigertes, who ascended the throne in the year 630 of the Christian era, was the last of this dynasty of Persian kings. During his reign, the Saracens, a warlike people of Arabia, invaded Persia, and conquered it. Isdigertes was killed in battle.

9. Persia then became a part of the Saracen empire. It was ruled by the caliphs, or successors of Mohammed, who resided at Bagdad, a splendid city which they built on the river Tigris.

10. This celebrated place was founded in 672, and once contained two millions of inhabitants. It was then filled with costly buildings, but it is now in ruins. The modern city is poorly built, and comparatively insignificant.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. When was Persia invaded by Alexander the Great? Who was then king of Persia? What happened to Darius? —2. How was he killed?—3. To whom did Persia become subject after the death of Darius? How long did it continue under the government of Parthia? Which way is Parthia from Persia? When did Artaxares make himself king?—4. What of his descendants? Chosroes the Great? When did he live? What did he do?—5. What of the successor of Chosroes the Great? What wickedness did Siroes commit?—7. How may men become very cruel? For what should we be thankful?—8. When did Isdigertes ascend the throne? What of him? What did the Saracens do during his reign? How was Isdigertes killed?—9. Of what empire did Persia become a part? How was it ruled? Where did the caliphs live?—10. What of Bagdad?

---

## CHAPTER XXV. ASIA continued.—*Modern History of Persia.*

1. IN the year 1258 of the Christian era, the empire of the Saracens was subverted by the Tartars. Persia was

governed by them for a considerable time, and was afterwards ruled by monarchs called Sophis, or Shahs. The

A Persian Dervise, Prince, and Attendants



first of these was named Ismael, a man of Saracen descent. He took possession of the throne by violence, and reigned twenty-three years.

2. The greatest of these monarchs was named Shah Abbas, who ascended the throne in 1589. Abbas fought against the Turks, and gained many splendid victories. He also deprived the Portuguese of the Isle of Ormuz, in the Persian Gulf.

3. But the best of all the kings of this family was Shah Husseyn; and he was also the last, and the most unfortunate. He began to reign in the year 1694. Husseyn and his subjects met with many disasters; and he was, at length, compelled to surrender his throne to a rival.

4. But before he took off the crown from his head, Husseyn went on foot through the principal streets of Ispahan, which was then the capital, and the people thronged around him with tears and lamentations. The excellent and kind-hearted monarch endeavoured to comfort them.

5. He told them that the new king, whose name was Mahmoud, would not love them better than he himself did, but that he would know better how to govern them, and how to conquer their enemies. So the good Husseyn took off his crown, which had been only a trouble to him, and bade his people farewell.

6. In 1739, Kouli Khan took possession of the throne of Persia, and called himself Nadir Shah. He was a famous conqueror and tyrant, and was assassinated in his tent after a reign of about seventeen years.

7. Since his death, there has been much bloodshed in Persia. Ambitious men have often aspired to the throne, and involved the country in civil war.

8. The king generally resides in the city of Teheran, but he has a beautiful palace at Ispahan, called the Palace of Forty Pillars. Each of the forty pillars is supported by four lions of white marble. The whole edifice looks as if it were built of pearl, and silver, and gold, and precious stones.

9. I have now done with the story of Persia. Like *that of most other eastern countries*, it abounds in tales of *cruelty, battle, and bloodshed*. In ancient times, the peo-

ple worshipped the sun, and bowed down to idols. But, for more than a thousand years, they have been believers in a false prophet, called Mohammed, or Mahomet.

10. They have never received the religion of Jesus Christ, which teaches us to be gentle and forgiving; and thus cruelty has ever been common among them.

11. The climate of Persia is mild, and the country abounds in beautiful and fragrant trees, shrubs, and flowers. The people are less warlike than in former times. The rich live in splendid palaces, and the poor in mud huts. The kingdom is small, compared with the vast empire of Xerxes. Persepolis, the ancient capital, is now a heap of ruins; Teheran and Ispahan, the two principal cities, are of comparatively modern date.

12. From what I have told you, you will not like the Persian character; yet it is not altogether bad. The people are very fond of reading, and telling instructive stories; many of these were written ages since, and are exceedingly beautiful. The people also have a taste for poetry, and they appear to be fond of the beauties of nature, and to have a love of virtue.



A Persian Story-teller.

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the empire of the Saracens in the year 1258? How was Persia governed? What of Ismael?—2. Who was Shah Abbas? When did he ascend the throne? What did he do?—3. What of Shah Husseyn?—4. Describe the manner in which he surrendered his crown.—6. When did Kouli Khan come to the throne? What other name had he? What of him?—7. What of Persia since the death of Kouli Khan?—8. Where does the king reside? Describe the palace of the emperor.—9. What of the story of Persia? What was the worship of the ancient Persians? What is now the religion of the people?—10. What has always been common among them?—11. What of the climate of Persia? The soil? People? How does the extent of the country compare with what it was in the time of Xerxes? What of Persepolis? Teheran? Ispahan?—12. What of the Persian character?

---

## CHAPTER XXVI. ASIA continued.—*Early History of China.*

1. THE territory of the Chinese empire is nearly the same at the present day that it has been from the earliest records. It is bounded on the north by Asiatic Russia, on the east by the Pacific Ocean, and on the south by the Chinese Sea and Further India. On the west, there are mountains and sandy deserts, which divide it from Thibet and Tartary.

2. This empire is very ancient, and has continued longer than any other that has ever existed. Its history goes back four thousand years from the present time. The name of its founder was Fohi, whom some writers suppose to be the same as Noah.

3. There have been twenty-two dynasties, or separate families of emperors, who have successively ruled over China. If their history were to be particularly related, it would fill at least twenty-two great books. Yet few of the emperors did anything that was worthy of remembrance.

4. Before the time of Fohi, the Chinese believe that *men lived pretty much like brutes*; that they had no set-

tled homes, but wandered 'up and down in the forests, seeking for food; and when they caught any animals or birds, that they drank the blood, and devoured even the hair and feathers.

5. We find nothing very remarkable about the Chinese emperors till the reign of Chaus, who lived about a thousand years before the Christian era. He was extremely fond of hunting, and used to gallop into the midst of the rice-fields in pursuit of game. In this manner he did so much mischief, that his subjects resolved to destroy him.

6. There was a large river, which the emperor was often in the habit of crossing. On the shore of this river the people placed a boat, as if for the accommodation of Chaus. The next time that the emperor returned from hunting, he and his attendants got on board the boat, and set sail for the opposite coast.

7. But the boat had been contrived on purpose for his destruction. In the middle of the river it fell to pieces, and all on board were drowned, to the great joy of his oppressed subjects, for the emperor Chaus never again came hunting in the rice-fields.

8. The emperor Ching, who reigned about two thousand years ago, built a great wall, in order to protect his dominions from the Tartars. It was forty-five feet high, and eighteen feet thick, and it extended over mountains and valleys, a distance of fifteen hundred miles. This wall still remains.

9. When Ching had completed the wall, he thought himself so very great an emperor, that none of his predecessors were worth remembering. He therefore ordered all the historical writings and public records to be burnt. he also caused four hundred learned men, who were addicted to writing histories, to be buried alive.

10. If old Peter Parley had lived in those days, the emperor Ching would certainly have caught and buried

him likewise, with his four hundred learned brethren ; and so the world would have lost this History.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the Chinese empire? Boundaries? What divides it from Thibet and Tartary? Which way is China from Persia? Hindostan? Siberia? The Birman empire?—2. What of the antiquity and duration of the Chinese empire? How far back does its history extend? Who was its founder? What do some writers suppose?—3. What of the dynasties or families that have ruled over China?—4. What do the Chinese suppose was the state of China before the time of Fohi?—5. When did Chaus live? What of him?—6. Relate the manner in which the people destroyed him.—8. When did the emperor Ching live? Describe the great wall. Does it still remain?—9. What orders did he give respecting historical books, records, and learned men?



The Great Wall of China.

---

CHAPTER XXVII. ASIA continued.—*Anecdotes of the Chinese Emperors.*



View of a Town in China.

1. THE emperor Vati lived about the time of the Christian era ; and was desirous of reigning till the world should come to an end, and perhaps longer. He therefore spent his time in endeavouring to brew a liquor that would make him immortal, but, unfortunately, before the liquor was fit to drink, the emperor died.

2. Another emperor, instead of attending to the affairs of the nation, applied himself wholly to study. His prime minister took advantage of his negligence, and raised a rebellion against him. When the emperor heard the shouts of the rebels, he shut his book, and put on his armour, but, on ascending the ramparts of the city, he saw that it was too late to resist. He then returned to his library, which contained one hundred and forty thousand volumes.

3. The emperor knew that these books had been the means of his losing the vast empire of China, by with-



drawing his attention from the government; he, therefore, set fire to them with his own hands, and the whole library was consumed. The rebels afterwards put him to death.

4. The emperor Si-giveu began to reign in the year 617 after the Christian era. He dwelt in a magnificent palace. After the emperor's death, his son came to the palace, and was astonished at its splendour and beauty. "Such a residence is good for nothing but to corrupt a monarch, and render him proud," exclaimed he; accordingly he commanded this great and costly edifice to be burnt to the ground.

5. Chwang-tsong, who had been a brave soldier, was made emperor about eight hundred years ago. He was a person of very frugal habits, and it was one of his singularities, that he never slept in a bed, but always on the bare ground, with a bell fastened to his neck. If he turned over in his sleep, the ringing of the bell would awaken him, and he then considered it time to get up.

6. In the year 1209, Genghis Khan invaded China with an immense army of Tartars. He and his descendants conquered the whole empire, and governed it during many years.

7. The emperor Ching-tsa ascended the throne three or four centuries ago. A mine was discovered during his reign, and precious stones of great value were dug out of it; some of them were brought to the emperor, but he looked scornfully at them.

8. "Do you call these precious stones?" cried he; "What are they good for? They can neither clothe the people, nor satisfy their hunger." So saying, he ordered the mine to be closed up, and the miners to be employed in some more useful kind of labour.

9. About a hundred years ago, in the reign of Yong-tching, there was the most terrible earthquake that had *ever been known*. It shook down nearly all the houses in

the city of Peking, and buried one hundred thousand people. A still greater number perished in the surrounding country.

10. Nothing very remarkable has lately happened in the history of China. The name of the present emperor is Tara-kwang. He succeeded to the throne in the year 1820.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the emperor Vati? How did he spend his time?—2. Tell the story of a very learned emperor.—4. When did Si-giveu begin to reign? Where did he dwell? What did his son do?—5. What of Chwang-tsong? What curious fact is related of him?—6. When did Genghis Khan invade China? What of him and his descendants?—7. What of the emperor Ching-tsa? Relate the story of the mine. What happened in the reign of Yong-tching?—10. What is the name of the present emperor? When did he come to the throne?

---

## CHAPTER XXVIII. ASIA continued.—*Cities of China.* *Manners of the Chinese.*

1. I MUST now give you a short account of the cities and people of China as they are at this day. Nankin was formerly the capital of China. Peking, which contains two millions of inhabitants, is now the capital. The emperor's palace stands in a part of Peking called the Tartar city.

2. The walls of Peking are built of brick, and are nearly one hundred feet high, so that they hide the whole city. They are so thick that sentinels on horseback ride round the city on the top of the wall. There are nine gates, which have marble arches, and are prodigiously high.

3. The people of China have an olive complexion, with black hair, and small black eyes. The chief part of their dress is a long loose robe, which is fastened round the body with a girdle. In this girdle they carry a knife, and two sticks for eating, instead of a knife and fork.

4. The Chinese are great fibbers, and are very much addicted to cheating, and there are some horrible customs among them. For instance, if parents have a greater number of children than they can conveniently support, they are permitted to throw them into a river!

5. The people are not nice about what they eat; dogs and cats are publicly sold in the streets for food, while rats and mice are frequently eaten. The nests of a species of swallow are made into a jelly, and considered by the Chinese epicures, a great delicacy.

6. The Chinese ladies are chiefly remarkable for their little feet. A grown woman in China is able to wear smaller shoes than a young child in England. But they are purposely crippled merely for show, and their feet are almost good for nothing to walk with.

7. Religion among the Chinese is in a very sad condition; the people are given up to gross heathenism. Almost all religions are tolerated, although but little reverence is paid to any. There are more temples than can be easily numbered.

8. When a Chinese wishes to be married, he buys a wife of her parents, but he is not permitted to see her till she is sent home. The young lady is brought to her husband's door in a palankeen; he puts aside the curtains of the palankeen, and peeps in at his new wife, and if he does not like her looks, he sends her back again.

9. In China there are some very singular punishments. Sometimes a wooden frame, weighing two hundred pounds, is put round a man's neck. He is compelled to carry it about with him wherever he goes; and, so long as he wears it, he can neither feed himself, nor lie down.

10. One of the most curious customs of China is that of excluding all foreigners from the country. A few European and American merchants are allowed to reside at Canton, but they are obliged to leave their wives at Macao. *No other strangers* are permitted in the kingdom. The

people think that their manners and customs are the best in the world, and they do not wish foreigners to come and introduce new notions. They are the oldest nation that exists, and they appear to wish nothing more than to continue as they have been.

11. China has a great many large cities, and these are filled with countless numbers of inhabitants. They have many ingenious arts and manufactures, they till the earth with great skill, and their gardens are managed with special care.

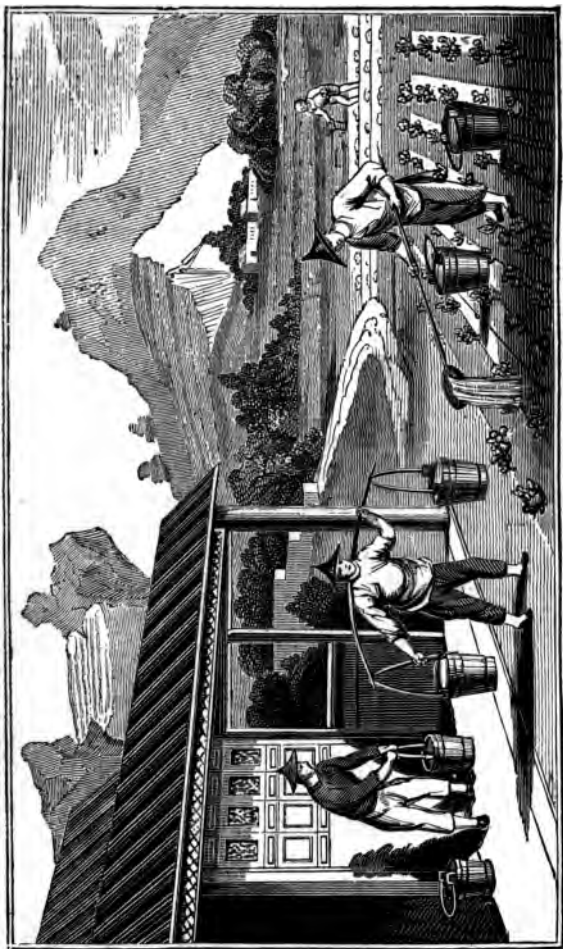
12. Tea is brought to us from this country, with a great variety of other articles. You will not be surprised that we get so many things from China, when you know that the country contains two hundred millions of people.



A Pagoda, at Nankin.

---

**QUESTIONS.**—1. Name the former capital of China? The present one? How many inhabitants does Peking contain?—2. What of the walls of Peking? The gates?—3. The people? Their dress?—4. Their character? Their customs?—5. What of food?—6. What of the Chinese ladies?—7. What of religion in China? Temples?—8. What is done when a man wishes to be married?



Chinese employed in the Cultivation of the Tea Plant.

9. What of punishments in China?—10. What custom is there respecting foreigners? Where do the wives of merchants reside? Why do not the Chinese wish foreigners to come among them? Which is the oldest empire in the world?—11. What of the cities of China? Manufactures? Do the people understand agriculture?—12. Where do we get our tea? What is the population of China?

CHAPTER XXIX. ASIA continued.—*Origin of the Arabs. Rise of Mohammed.*



Arabs resting.

1. THE Arabs are descended from Ishmael, a son of Abraham. It was foretold of him, that “his hand should be against every man, and every man’s hand against him.” In all ages this prophecy has been fulfilled among his posterity; for they appear always to have been enemies to the rest of mankind, and mankind enemies to them.

2. Arabia consists of several separate states, or nations. The whole country is bounded on the north, by Palestine, Mesopotamia, &c.; on the east, by the Persian Gulf and

the Gulf of Ormuz ; on the south, by the Indian Ocean ; and on the west, by the Red Sea.

3. The Arabs have always been wandering tribes, and have dwelt in tents, amid the trackless deserts which cover a large portion of their country. Their early history is very imperfectly known. The first event that is worth recording, was the birth of Mohammed. This took place at Mecca, a city on the borders of the Red Sea, in the year 570 of the Christian era.



The Mohammedan Temple at Mecca.

4. Till the age of twenty-five, Mohammed was a camel-driver in the desert. He afterwards spent much of his time in solitude. His dwelling was a lonesome cave, where he pretended to be employed in prayer and meditation. When he was forty years old, he set up for a prophet.

5. He publicly proclaimed that God had sent him to convert the world to a new religion. The people of Mecca would not at first believe Mohammed. He was born among them, and they knew that he had been a camel-driver, and was no holier than themselves. Beside, he pretended that he had ridden up to heaven on an ass, in company with the angel Gabriel; and many of his stories were as ridiculous as this.

6. So the men of Mecca threatened to slay Mohammed, and he was therefore forced to fly to Medina, another city of Arabia, on July 16, 622. This flight is called *Hegira* by the Mohammedans, and from it they date events, as Christians do from the birth of Christ. There, in the course of two or three years, he made a great number of converts. He told his disciples that they must compel others to adopt his religion by force, if they refused to do so from conviction.

7. This conduct brought on a war between the disciples of Mohammed and all the other Arabians. Mohammed won many victories, and soon made himself master of the whole country.

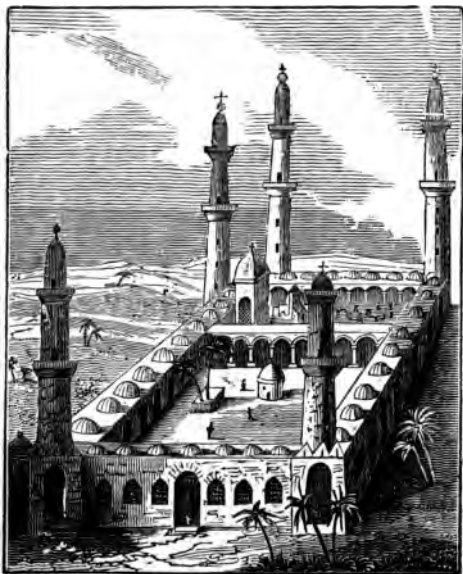
8. Mohammed was now not only a pretended prophet, but a real king. He was a very terrible man, even to his own followers; for, whenever he was angry, a vein between his eyebrows used to swell, and turn black. This gave him a grim and frightful aspect.

9. His power continued to increase; but he died suddenly, at the age of sixty-three. He was buried at Medina, where his tomb may still be seen. Many pilgrims go every year to visit the place.

10. The religion of Mohammed was speedily diffused over nearly all Asia and Africa, and is still believed by many millions of people. Its precepts are contained in a book called the Koran. Mohammed affirmed that the angel Gabriel brought him the doctrines contained in this book from heaven.



**QUESTIONS.** From whom are the Arabs descended? What was prophesied of Ishmael? Has the prophecy been fulfilled?—2. Of what does Arabia consist? How is it bounded?—3. How have the Arabs always lived? What of their early history? When and where was Mohammed born?—4. Of what profession was Mohammed? How did he live before he was forty years old?—5. What did he then do? What of the people of Mecca? What did Mohammed pretend?—6. Why did Mohammed fly to Medina? What was the flight of Mohammed called by the Arabs? What means did he take to make converts in Medina?—7. What was the effect of this conduct? What victories did Mohammed win?—8. Describe Mohammed.—9. When did he die? Where was he buried?—10. Where is the religion of Mohammed followed? What is the Koran? What did Mohammed affirm? Where is Mecca? Medina?



The Mohammedan Temple at Medina.

CHAPTER XXX. ASIA continued.—*Sequel of the History of the Saracens.*

1. THOSE of the Arabians who followed Mohammed were called Saracens. After their leader's death, they conquered the whole of Turkey in Asia, and many other countries. The capital of their empire was the city of Bagdad, on the river Tigris, which I have already mentioned.

2. One of the successors of Mohammed was Ali, his son-in-law, and he was opposed by Ayesha, Mohammed's widow. This woman was suspected of having murdered her husband.

3. She raised an army, and led them to battle against Ali, and during the conflict, Ayesha sat in a sort of cage or litter, on the back of a camel. The camel was surrounded by a strong guard, and seventy of Ali's soldiers had their hands cut off in attempting to seize its rein, in order to take her prisoner. Finally, Ali was victorious, and confirmed his sway over all the disciples of Mohammed, and over the countries which they had won.

4. The Saracen empire was thus established. The kings were called caliphs, and they reigned at Bagdad for the space of six hundred and twenty years. One of the most distinguished of them was Mahmud Gazni. He was a great conqueror, and added a part of India to his dominions.

5. A poor man once complained to Mahmud Gazni that a soldier had turned him and his family out of doors, and had kept possession of his house all night. When the caliph heard this, he suspected that the soldier was his own son. "If he ill-treats you again, let me know," said he.

6. Accordingly, a few nights afterwards, the poor man told the caliph that the same soldier had turned him out of his house *again*. The caliph took his scimitar and went

to the house ; but before entering, he caused all the lights to be extinguished, so that his heart might not be softened by the sight of the offender.

7. When all was darkness, he entered the house, and struck the soldier dead with his scimitar. "Now bring a light," cried the caliph. His attendants did so. Mahmud Gazni held a torch over the bloody corpse of the soldier, and found that his suspicions were correct. He had killed his own son !

8. The last of the caliphs was named Mostasem. He was so proud and vain-glorious, that he considered his subjects unworthy to behold his face. He therefore never appeared in public without wearing a veil of golden tissue. Whenever he rode through the streets, thousands would flock to get a glimpse of his golden veil.

9. But at length Hulaku, chief of the Tartars, took the city of Bagdad. He stripped off the golden veil of the caliph Mostasem, and put him alive into a leathern bag. The bag, with the poor caliph in it, was dragged by horses through the same streets where he had formerly ridden in triumph.

10. Thus perished the caliph Mostasem, being bruised to death on the stones. With him ended the empire of the Saracens, in the year 1258 of the Christian era.

11. But the termination of this empire did not put an end to the religion of Mohammed, which continued to flourish, and finally extended over nearly all the countries of Asia and Africa.

QUESTIONS. 1. Who were the Saracens ? What of them ? What was the capital of their empire ?—2. Who was Ali ? Who opposed him ? Who was Ayesha ?—3. Describe the conflict between Ali and Ayesha. Who was victorious ?—4. Who were the Caliphs ? Where did they reign ? What of Mahmud Gazni ?—5. Relate the story of the poor man and Mahmud Gazni.—8. Who was Mostasem ? What can you say of him ?—9. How did he die ?—10. When did the empire of the Saracens end ?—11. What of the religion of Mohammed ?

CHAPTER XXXI. ASIA continued.—*About Syria, Phœnicia, and Asia Minor.*

1. I WILL now give you a short account of Syria, which lay to the north of Palestine. It was bounded on the north by Asia Minor, on the east by the river Euphrates and Arabia, on the south by Palestine and a part of Arabia, and on the west by the Mediterranean Sea.

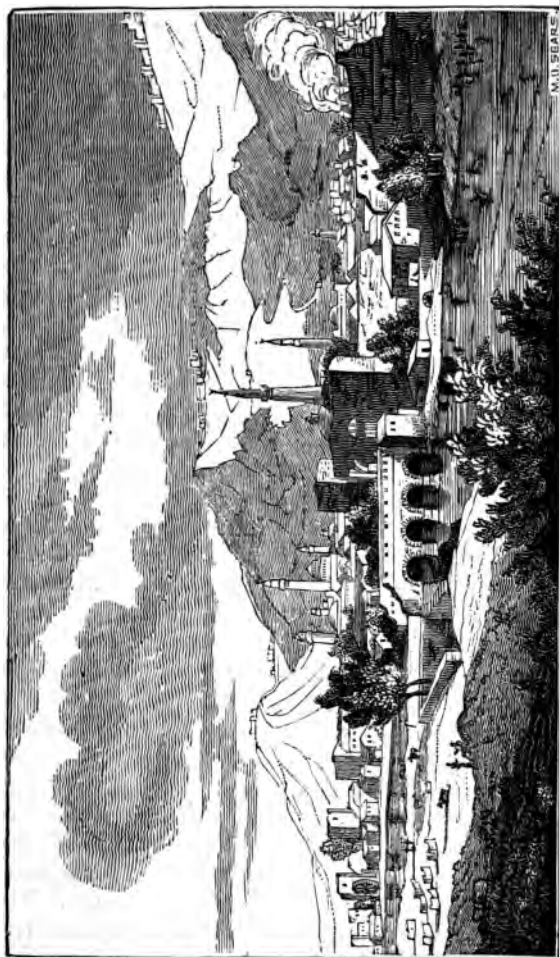
2. Syria is frequently mentioned in the Bible. The people were engaged in almost constant wars with the Jews from the time of David nearly to the time of Christ, when it became a Roman province.

3. At this period its capital was Antioch, which was one of the most splendid cities in the world. This was the native place of St. Luke, and here both St. Peter and St. Paul lived for some time. Here, too, the followers of Christ were first called Christians.

4. Damascus, another city of Syria, one hundred and thirty-six miles northward of Jerusalem, appears to have been known ever since the time of Abraham. It is frequently mentioned in the Bible, and here St. Paul was miraculously converted to the Christian faith.

5. This city was famous in later times for making the best swords, sabres, and other cutlery; but the art which the people once possessed is now lost. The inhabitants of this city were also celebrated for manufacturing beautiful silks, to which the name of damask was given, from the place where they were made.

6. Another place in Syria mentioned in the Bible was Tadmor, sometimes called "Tadmor in the desert;" this was built by Solomon for the convenience of his traders; it was ten miles in extent, but it is now in ruins. The splendid remains of this place, consisting of columns and other things beautifully sculptured in stone, show that it must have been a rich and powerful city. In later



View of Antioch.

times it was called Palmyra. You will find a view of this city at page 4.

7. At the distance of thirty-seven miles north-west of Damascus are the remains of Balbec, a very splendid city in the time of the apostles, and then called Heliopolis. It is now in ruins, and contains scarcely more than a thousand inhabitants.

8. I must not forget to mention Phœnice, or Phœnicia, which lay along the border of the Mediterranean Sea; it contained the cities of Tyre, Sidon, Ptolemais, and other celebrated places. In very early times, the Phœnicians were famous for their skill in commerce, navigation, and other arts. They were an independent nation, but in after times their country became a province of Syria.

9. Syria is at the present day governed by the Turks, and, like every other country under their sway, is stamped with an aspect of desolation and decay. The term Syria is now applied, not only to what anciently bore that name, but to Palestine also.

10. Asia Minor, or Natolia, as it is now called, lies at the north-eastern corner of the Mediterranean Sea; it is a kind of peninsula, bounded on the north by the Euxine or Black Sea; on the west by the Ægean Sea; and on the east by Syria, Mesopotamia, and Armenia.

11. It is about six hundred miles in length, from east to west, and four hundred in breadth. It is at present under the government of Turkey, and its inhabitants are mostly believers in Mohammed. The chief city now is Smyrna, to which many vessels go from this country, and bring back figs, dates, coral, sponge, and other things.

12. Asia Minor appears to have been settled in very early times. Several kingdoms have arisen and flourished here at different periods, but it has never been the seat of any great empire. The kingdom of Lydia, in Asia Minor, existed as early as eight hundred years before Christ. *Ardysus, who reigned seven hundred and ninety-seven*

years before Christ, appears to have been one of its earliest kings.

13. The last king of Lydia was Croesus, who was so famous for his great riches, that to this day we say, "As rich as Croesus." But, in spite of his wealth, he was conquered by Cyrus, king of Persia, 548 years before Christ.

14. From this period, Lydia, with a great part of Asia Minor, continued subject to the Persian empire till the time of Alexander, about 330 years before Christ, when it was conquered by that famous leader.

15. Three hundred years before Christ, Pontus, which had once been a part of Lydia, became an independent country. It continued to flourish for many years, and Mithridates VII. for a time successfully maintained a war with the Romans.

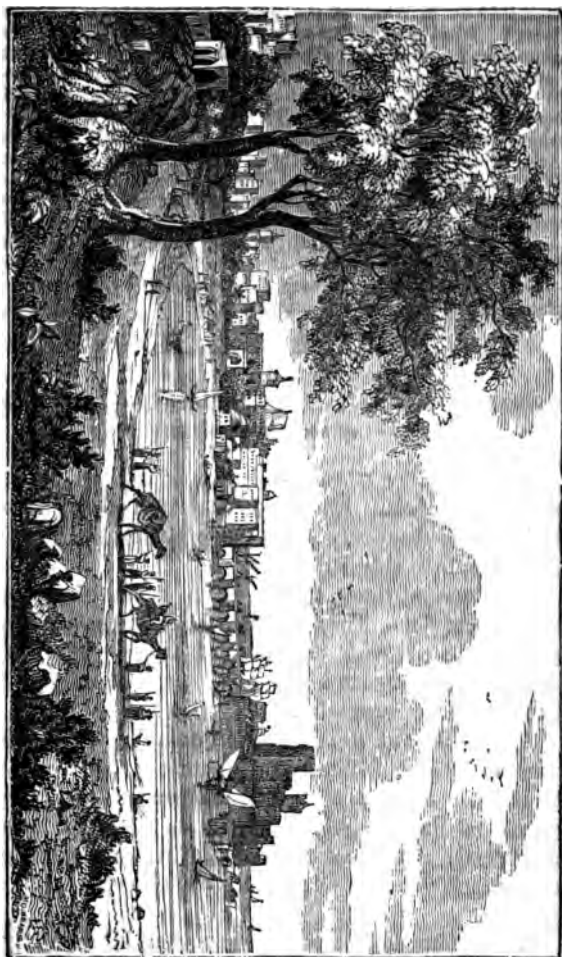
16. By his skill and courage, he long baffled their best generals. But at length, in the year 64 before Christ, he was conquered, and his kingdom, with the rest of Asia Minor, was subjected to the Roman dominion.

17. Notwithstanding the wars in Asia Minor, the country became filled with people, and superb cities rose up in various parts of it. Ephesus, situated in Lydia, was a splendid place, and it had a temple so magnificent that it was called one of the seven wonders of the world.

18. This temple was one hundred and twenty years in building; but a man named Erostratus, wishing to make himself remembered, set it on fire, and it was burnt to the ground.

19. There were also many other fine cities in Asia Minor, several of which are mentioned in the New Testament. Among these was Tarsus, the birthplace of Paul; also, Pergamos, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, and Laodicea, which are spoken of in the book of Revelations.

20. Through the labours of Paul, Barnabas, Silas, Timothy, Luke, and perhaps others, Christianity was early *planted in nearly all the divisions of Asia Minor.*



View of Sidon.



QUESTIONS. 1. Where was Syria situated? How was it bounded?—2. What of the people of Syria?—3. Capital of Syria? What great events took place at Antioch?—4. What of Damascus? What took place there?—5. What was Damascus celebrated for in ancient times?—6. What of Tadmor?—7. What of Balbec?—8. What of Phœnicia? What cities did it contain? What of the Phœnicians?—9. What of Syria? To what is this name now applied?—10. Situation and boundaries of Asia Minor?—11. Its extent? Government? Inhabitants? What of Smyrna?—12. What of Asia Minor? What of Lydia? Ardysus?—13. What can you tell of Croesus?—14. By whom was Lydia conquered?—15. What of Pontus? Mithridates VII.?—16. By whom was Mithridates conquered?—17. What of Ephesus?—18. The temple of Diana? How was it destroyed?—19. What other cities were there in Asia Minor?—20. Who planted Christianity in Asia Minor?

---

## CHAPTER XXXII. ASIA continued.—*A brief view of several Nations.*

1. I HAVE now related the history of the most celebrated countries of Asia. But there are several other territories, and some of them very extensive, of which I can say only a few words in this little book.

2. In ancient times, the Scythians inhabited the northern parts of Asia. They were a warlike and savage people, and very expert with the bow and arrow. Many of the Asiatic and European kings endeavoured to subdue them, but were never successful.

3. At different times, vast numbers of the Scythians overran the more civilized countries that lay south and west of them. A tribe of Scythians founded the powerful empire of Parthia, which afterwards extended its sway over Persia and other countries. This empire began in the year 250 before Christ, and continued five hundred years.

4. In more modern times, the regions inhabited by the Scythians have been called Tartary. The people are not *much more civilized* than they formerly were. Some

celebrated conquerors have arisen among the Tartars, as Ghengis Khan, and Timour.

5. India, which we call the East Indies, was very little known to the people who lived westward of it in ancient times. Semiramis invaded it, and likewise Alexander the Great, and several other conquerors. The Hindoos of the present day are an interesting people, but addicted to idolatry.

6. India consists of Hindostan, and of an extensive region to the eastward of it. Within the last hundred years, the English have gained great power in this part of the world.

7. The Turks, or Ottomans, are a people who had their origin in Asia. But as they have been settled in Europe during several centuries, it will be more proper and convenient to speak of them in the history of that quarter of the globe.

8. Japan is an extensive empire, consisting of several large islands to the east of China, said to contain twenty-six millions of inhabitants. The capital, called Jeddo, is situated on Nippon, the largest of the islands. The people live chiefly in large cities, and much resemble the Chinese, in their religion, manners, and customs.

9. It is uncertain whether the ancient nations knew anything of this empire, and its early history is quite unknown. It is probable it has remained with little change for thousands of years. Its existence was first ascertained by the Europeans about the year 1400; but as strangers are not permitted to travel in the country, and the natives are not allowed to go abroad, very little is known concerning it.

10. There are several other kingdoms of Asia, of which the history is little known, or quite uninteresting. Among these are Siam, Cochin China, the Birman empire, Cabul, Beloochistan, and some others. Beside these, the northern *portions of Asia* are occupied by various tribes of Tartars,

who appear to have wandered over these regions for ages, leaving no story behind them. The emperor of Russia rules over these vast dominions.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of the Scythians? Where did they live?—3. What of Parthia?—4. What is the name given to the countries formerly inhabited by the Scythians, Parthians, &c.? Do the Tartars remain nearly the same as the ancient Scythians, Parthians, &c.?—6. What of India or Hindostan? How is it bounded? Which way is it from China? From Persia? From Palestine? What of the English in Hindostan?—7. What of the Turks or Ottomans?—8. What of Japan? Direction of the Japanese isles from Hindostan? Persia? Palestine?—10. What other nations of Asia are there, of which the history is little known? What of the northern portions of Asia?



Village of Khemundine, in the Birman Empire.

---

### CHAPTER XXXIII. ASIA continued.—*Review of the History of Asia.*

1. LET us now go back and review the history of Asia. In this quarter of the globe, the most wonderful events in

the history of mankind have happened. Here Adam and Eve were created ; and on the banks of the Euphrates all the people dwelt who lived before the flood.

2. It was in Asia that the ark of Noah rested ; and here again the people first began to build cities, and establish nations. Here the first great empire arose. Here the Jewish nation had its origin ; and here nearly all the events related in the Old Testament took place.

3. It was in Asia that the Christian religion, the greatest gift of God to man, had its origin ; for here Jesus Christ appeared, to proclaim the glad tidings of salvation to a fallen race.

4. It was in Asia that Mohammed commenced and established his religion. Several other religions had their origin in Asia.

5. In Asia, some of the greatest empires have existed of which history gives us any account. The Assyrian empire, as I have before said, is the first on record. This was followed by the Persian empire, which for a while comprised all the surrounding nations. China, the most populous empire on the globe, has endured longer than any other.

6. The Saracens, who extended their dominion over many countries, had their origin in Asia. The Turks, who have reigned over Palestine, Mesopotamia, Syria, Asia Minor, a part of Europe, and a part of Africa, for nearly eight hundred years, had their origin in Asia.

7. There is one portion of Asia which is, perhaps, more full of historical interest than any other on the face of the globe. It is that which lies between the Mediterranean on the west, Armenia on the north, Persia on the east, and Arabia on the south. Here is the spot on which the first human pair dwelt ; here the place where the first nations were formed ; here the miracles recorded in the Bible took place ; here the prophets dwelt ; here our Lord lived, preached, and was crucified.

8. But although Asia was peopled before any other part of the world, and though the inhabitants have been favoured by miracles, and the presence of a Divine Teacher, they are far behind the nations of Europe and America in the knowledge of religion, and the various arts which make life comfortable and happy.

9. In all parts of Asia there are nations sunk in superstition and idolatry, and very few who worship God in sincerity and truth. Jesus Christ is hardly known among the four hundred millions of people in Asia; and though some of the rich men, kings, and princes, live in gorgeous palaces, and are decked with gold and jewels, yet the mass of the people live as they have done for ages, ignorant, poor, and degraded.

10. The most remarkable feature in the history of Asia is, that while the country has seen many revolutions and changes, the condition of the people remains nearly the same. In Europe and in America there is a constant improvement, every year bringing some new art, invention, or institution, for the benefit of society.

11. But in Asia it is not so, for whoever is king, the people are still slaves. Education makes no progress, liberty is unknown, truth is little valued, virtue is not prized, and that thing which we call comfort, and which makes our homes so dear to us, is not to be found in this vast region, so favoured by Providence, and so richly endowed by nature.

12. It would seem that the real difficulty in Asia is, that while they are destitute of the knowledge of the Gospel, they have many false religions. Mohammedanism prevails over a great part of this portion of the globe; and it is remarkable that no country, the people of which believed in this false religion, has ever been happy or well-governed.

13. The Hindoos believe in Brahminism, which teaches *them that there is one principal deity, called Brahma, and*

several other inferior deities, called Vishnu, Siva, &c. They make strange images of these, and worship them. The priests are called Brahmins, and instruct the people in many idle ceremonies and cruel superstitions.



Brahma.



Vishnu.

14. Besides the Hindoos, there are the followers of the Grand Lama, who reigns as a sovereign in Tibet, where he has a grand temple. The Chinese worship a god called Fo-hi; and other Asiatic nations believe in many other deities.

15. Thus nearly the whole of Asia is involved in darkness as to the character of God, and the destiny of man; and we see that the conduct of the people is such as might be expected where such ignorance and such error prevail.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1, 2, 3, 4. What remarkable events have occurred in Asia?—5. What is the first empire recorded in history? What of the Persian empire? What of China?—6. What of the Saracens? What of the Turks?—7. What portion of Asia is the most *interesting on the globe*? Why is this portion of country thus inte-

resting?—8. How has Asia been particularly favoured? In what respects are the inhabitants of Asia behind those of Europe and America?—9. What is the state of the people in Asia?—10. What is remarkable in the history of Asia?—11. How does Asia differ from Europe and America?—12. What is the condition of Asia? What of Mohammedanism? What is a remarkable fact?—13. In what religion do the Hindoos believe? What does Brahminism teach? What of the Brahmins?—14. Where is the temple of the Grand Lama? In what deity do the Chinese believe? What of other nations?—15. In what error is nearly the whole of Asia involved? What do we see as respects the conduct of the people?



Temple of the Grand Lama in Tibet.

# CHAPTER XXXIV. ASIA continued.—*Chronology of Asia.*

1. CHRONOLOGY is a record of the dates when historical events happened. By studying chronology, therefore, you learn the time at which the creation took place, when Abraham went from Chaldea to Canaan, when Christ was born, and other things.

2. Now in order to have a clear view of the progress of history, it is very important to place before us a table of chronology; and if we wish to remember history for a long time, it is well to fix this table in the memory.

3. I will now give you a brief view of the chronology of Asia. By this you will notice some curious things. You will see that Solomon, and Chaus of China, lived at the same time; that Solomon's temple was finished exactly three thousand years after the creation, &c.

	Before Christ.
Creation of the world	4004
Deluge	2348
Confusion of tongues	2247
Ashur founds the empire of Assyria	2229
Ninias, king of Assyria, began to reign	2000
Abraham born	1996
Abraham sets out from Chaldea to go to Canaan	1921
Joseph sold by his brethren	1728
Jacob removes with his family to Egypt	1705
Death of Jacob	1689
Death of Joseph	1635
Moses born	1571
Departure of the Israelites from Egypt	1491
Death of Moses	1451
Death of Joshua	1443
Saul anointed king of Israel	1095
King David succeeds Saul	1055
Solomon began to reign	1015
Temple of Solomon finished	1004
Chaus, emperor of China, began to reign	1000



	Before Christ.
Jonah the prophet sent to preach to the Ninevites	856
Death of Sardanapalus	820
Ardysus, first king of Lydia, in Asia Minor	797
The kingdom of Israel conquered by Shalmaneser	719
Jerusalem taken by Nebuchadnezzar, and the Jews carried to Babylon	606
Lydia conquered by Cyrus, king of Persia	548
Assyrian empire overthrown	538
Jews return from Babylon	536
Persian empire established by Cyrus the Great	536
Death of Cyrus	529
Cambyses succeeds his father Cyrus	529
Darius began to reign	522
The second temple built	516
Xerxes invades Greece	480
Death of Xerxes	465
Alexander invades Persia	334
Kingdom of Syria founded by Seleucus	312
Pontus becomes independent under Mithridates II.	300
Parthian monarchy founded	250
Judas Maccabæus drives the Syrians out of Judæa	164
Chang, emperor of China	67
Pontus, with other parts of Asia Minor, conquered by the Romans	64
Syria and Canaan conquered by the Romans	63
Herod, king of the Jews	37
Vati, emperor of China	33

*Jesus Christ was born 4004 years after the Creation : this period is called the Christian era. It is the custom in all Christian countries to date from the birth of Christ. B. C. means before Christ ; A. C. means after Christ ; A. D. stands for Anno Domini, that is, in the year of our Lord. Thus we say A. D. 1837, by which we mean in the year of our Lord, or from the birth of Christ, 1837 years.*

	A. D.
Jesus Christ born	1
Christ crucified	31
Conversion of St. Paul	31
Destruction of Jerusalem by Titus	70

	A. D.
The Parthian monarchy subverted by Artaxares -	230
Birth of Mohammed - - - - -	570
Chosroes the Great, king of Persia, takes Jerusalem -	614
Si-giveu, emperor of China, began to reign - - -	617
Mohammed obliged to fly from his enemies - - -	622

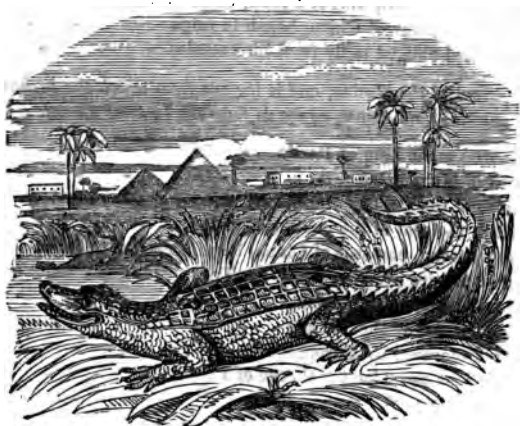
*This is called the Hegira, and is the era from which the Mohammedans date events, as we do from the birth of Christ.*

Isdigertes made king of Persia - - - - -	630
Death of Mohammed - - - - -	632
Empire of the Caliphs established - - - - -	638
Bagdad, the seat of the caliphs, founded - - -	672
Chwang-tsong, emperor of China, began to reign -	1037
Saracen empire overthrown by the Turks - - -	1050
Genghis Khan invaded China - - - - -	1209
Bagdad taken by the Tartars - - - - -	1258
Japan discovered by Europeans - - - - -	1400
Shah Abbas ascended the throne of Persia - - -	1589
Shah Husseyn " " " " - - - - -	1694
Kouli Khan becomes shah of Persia - - - - -	1730
Yong-tching came to the throne of China - - -	1737
Tara-kwang ascended the throne of China - - -	1820

QUESTIONS. 1. What is chronology? Its use?—2. What benefit can we gain by placing before us a chronological table? What is the advantage of fixing a chronological table in the memory?—3. What curious things do we learn from a chronological view of Asia?

\* \* \* *The teacher may now proceed to ask such questions as he deems proper, in regard to the several events noticed in the table; it may be well to turn to the pages where the details are given respecting the events, and interrogate the pupil upon them. Questions like the following may be useful: How long from the birth of Abraham to that of Moses? From that of Moses to that of David? From the beginning to the end of the Saracen empire? &c.*

CHAPTER XXXV. AFRICA.—*About the Geography of Africa. The Inhabitants.*



Crocodile.

1. AFRICA is one of the four quarters of the globe. It is of immense extent, and includes nearly one fourth of all the land on the earth.

2. It is divided from Europe by the Mediterranean Sea, from America by the Atlantic Ocean, and from Asia by the Red Sea; it is, however, attached by Asia by a narrow neck of land, called the Isthmus of Suez.

3. Africa is less known than any other portion of the globe, many parts of the interior having never been visited by Europeans; the greater part of the inhabitants are negroes, of which there are many tribes. Some of these are intelligent, and live tolerably well, but the greater part are either in a savage or a barbarous state.

4. The climate being warm, they need little shelter or clothing. Their houses are therefore poor mud huts, or *slight tenements* made of leaves or branches of trees. *Their dress is often but a single piece of cloth tied around*

the waist. They are, however, a cheerful race, and spend much of their time in various amusements.

5. Beside the negroes, there are several other races of Africans. The inhabitants from Egypt to Abyssinia appear to consist of the original Egyptian people, mixed with Turks, Arabs, and others. The people of the Barbary states are the descendants of the ancient Carthaginians, mingled with the Saracens who conquered the country, together with Turks and Arabs.

6. The immense desert of Sahara, with all the adjacent regions, appears to be occupied by wandering tribes, called Bedouins, who move from place to place with their horses and camels, like the people of Arabia, for pasturage and plunder.



Travelling in the Desert.

7. Africa is the least civilized portion of the earth. Those of the inhabitants who profess any religion, are mostly Mohammedans, and the others are in nearly a savage state.

8. The central parts of Africa abound in wild animals,

such as lions, panthers, leopards, elephants, rhinoceroses, zebras, and quaggas. The woods are filled with chattering monkeys, the thickets are infested with monstrous serpents, ostriches roam over the deserts, various kinds of antelopes and deer in vast herds graze upon the plains, hippopotami are seen in the lakes and rivers, and crocodiles abound in the stagnant waters. In Africa only is found the graceful giraffe, or camelopard. Wild birds of every hue meet the eye of the traveller in nearly all parts of the country.

---

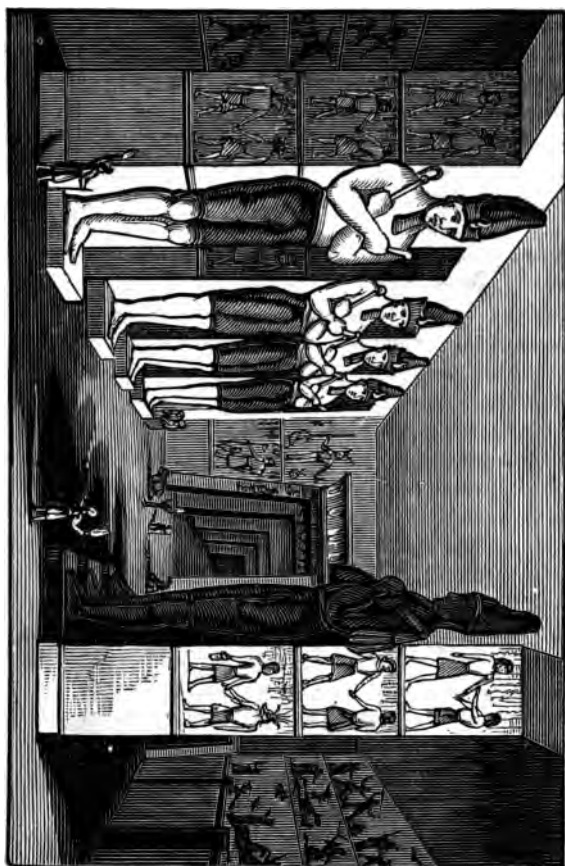
**QUESTIONS.** How is Africa bounded on the north? East? South? West? What is the most southern point? The most eastern? The most western? The most northern? In what part is Egypt? Barbary States? Desert of Sahara? Which way does the Nile run? Into what does it run?—1. What of Africa?—2. How is it divided from Europe? America? Asia? What neck of land joins it to Asia?—3. Is Africa well known? What of the inhabitants?—4. What of the climate? Houses? Dress? What of the negroes?—5. What of other races? Describe them.—7. How may Africa be considered? State of the people?—8. What of animals in Central Africa? The giraffe?



Hippopotamus.

CHAPTER XXXVI. AFRICA continued.—*Early  
Sovereigns of Egypt.*

Interior of an Egyptian Temple, dedicated to the goddess Isis.



1. THE natives of Africa are supposed to be descended from Ham, the son of Noah, who went thither and settled in Egypt after the building of the tower of Babel, this coun-

try being near the land of Shinar. The kingdom of Egypt is very ancient, and was founded by Menes, one of the children of Ham, 2188 before Christ. In the Bible, he is called **Misraim**.

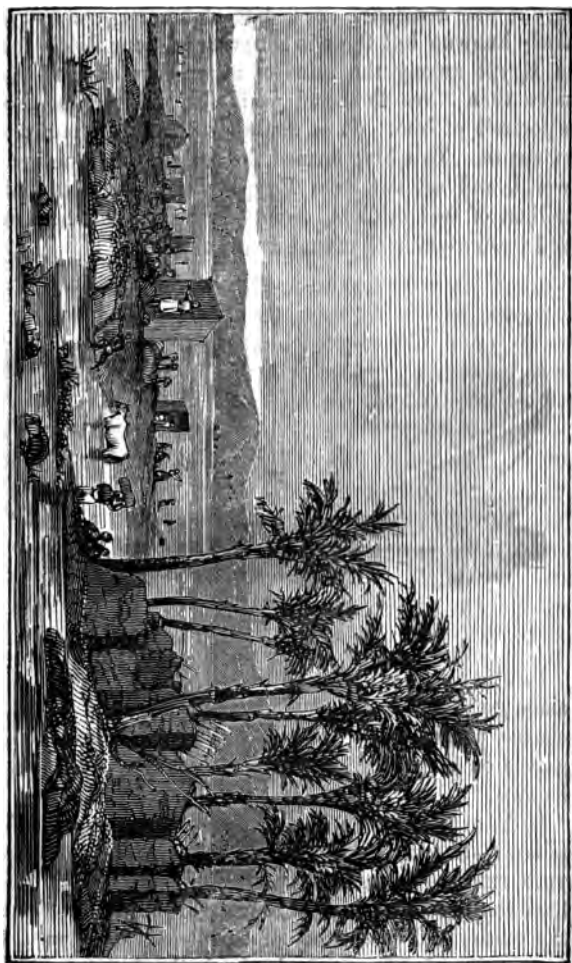
2. Egypt is bounded north by the Mediterranean Sea, east by the Red Sea, south by Nubia, and west by the desert. The Nile runs through the midst of Egypt, from the south to the north. This river overflows once a year, and thus fertilizes the country, for it very seldom rains in Egypt.

3. Menes, or Misraim, the first king of Egypt, turned aside the Nile from its original channel, and built the city of Memphis where the river had formerly flowed. He was so great a monarch, that the people worshipped him as a god after his death.

4. The history of Egypt is very obscure during a considerable time after the reign of Menes. From the year 2084 to the year 1825 before the Christian era, it was governed by a barbarous tribe from the deserts, whose rulers were called shepherd-kings. These kings were afterwards driven from Egypt, by the renowned Sesostris.

5. An Ethiopian woman, named Nitocris, became queen of this country, in the year 1678 before the Christian era. Her brother had been murdered by the Egyptians, and she resolved to avenge him. For this purpose queen Nitocris built a palace under ground, and invited the murderers of her brother to a banquet. The subterranean hall where the banquet was prepared was brilliantly illuminated. The guests were the principal men in the kingdom.

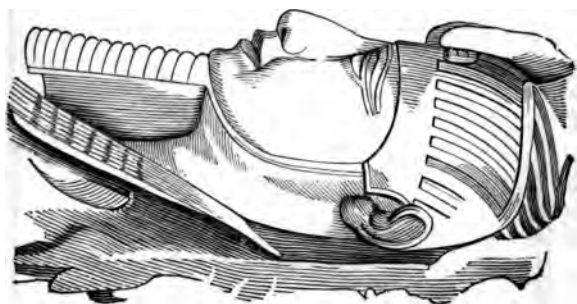
6. The scene was magnificent, as they sat at the table. But suddenly a rushing and a roaring sound was heard overhead, and a deluge of water burst into the hall. Queen Nitocris had caused a river to flow through a secret passage, and thus drowned all the company at the banquet.



The overflowing of the River Nile.



7. The most renowned monarch that ever reigned over Egypt was Sesostris. The date of his reign is not precisely known ; but there is a carving in stone, lately found in Egypt among the ruins of an ancient city, which is more than three thousand years old, and supposed to be a portrait of him. It is doubtless the oldest portrait in existence. This king formed the design of conquering the world, and set out from Egypt with more than half a million of foot soldiers, twenty-four thousand horsemen, and twenty-seven thousand armed chariots.



A supposed Monumental head of Sesostris.

8. His ambitious projects were partially successful. He made great conquests, and wherever he went he caused marble pillars to be erected, and inscriptions to be engraved on them, so that future ages might not forget his renown.

9. The following was the inscription on most of the pillars:—SESOSTRIS, KING OF KINGS, HAS CONQUERED THIS TERRITORY BY HIS ARMS. But the marble pillars have long ago crumbled into dust, or been buried under the earth ; and the history of Sesostris is so obscure, that some writers have even doubted whether he ever made any conquests at all.



Sculpture in the Temple at Ibsambal, representing Sesostris attacking a Tower.

10. But other writers assure us that he returned to Egypt after his wars, bringing with him a multitude of captives, and long trains of camels laden with treasure, and that he then built magnificent temples, and constructed canals and causeways.

11. When Sesostris went to worship in the temple, he rode in a chariot which was drawn by captive kings. They were harnessed like horses, four abreast; and their royal robes trailed in the dust as they tugged the heavy chariot along. But at length the proud Sesostris grew old and blind. He could no longer look around him, and see captive kings drawing his chariot, or kneeling at his footstool. He then became utterly miserable, and committed suicide.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. From whom are the natives of Africa descended? By whom and when was Egypt founded? What of Menes?—2. How is Egypt bounded? What of the Nile? Does it often rain in Egypt?—3. Where and by whom was Memphis built? What was thought of Menes?—4. What of the history of Egypt? What of the shepherd-kings?—5. What of Nitocris? How did she revenge her brother's death?—7. What can you tell of Sesostris? What of his army?—9. What inscription was engraved on the marble pillars raised by Sesostris? Are the pillars still standing? What do some writers doubt?—10. What do others say?—11. How was the chariot of Sesostris drawn? What was the fate of this despotic king?

---

## CHAPTER XXXVII. AFRICA continued.—*Egyptian Architecture and Sculpture.*

1. THE ancient history of Egypt is so obscure, and yet so full of wonderful tales, that we might doubt it altogether, and believe it but the marvellous invention of fanciful story-tellers, were it not for the vast ruins and stupendous monuments still to be found in different parts of the country. These show that between three and four thousand years ago, this country was filled with millions of people, and that there were cities here of the most wonderful magnificence.

2. Thebes appears to have been more magnificent than any other city, either in ancient or modern times. It was called the city of a hundred gates; and such was the immense population, that through each of these gates, in time of war, marched two hundred armed chariots, and two thousand soldiers.

3. Thebes was ruined in the time of Cambyzes, king of Persia, who lived about twenty-four hundred years ago. Yet the remains of the city are still visible, scattered over a space of twenty-seven miles on each side of the Nile. Some of the pillars of the temples are eleven feet in diameter.

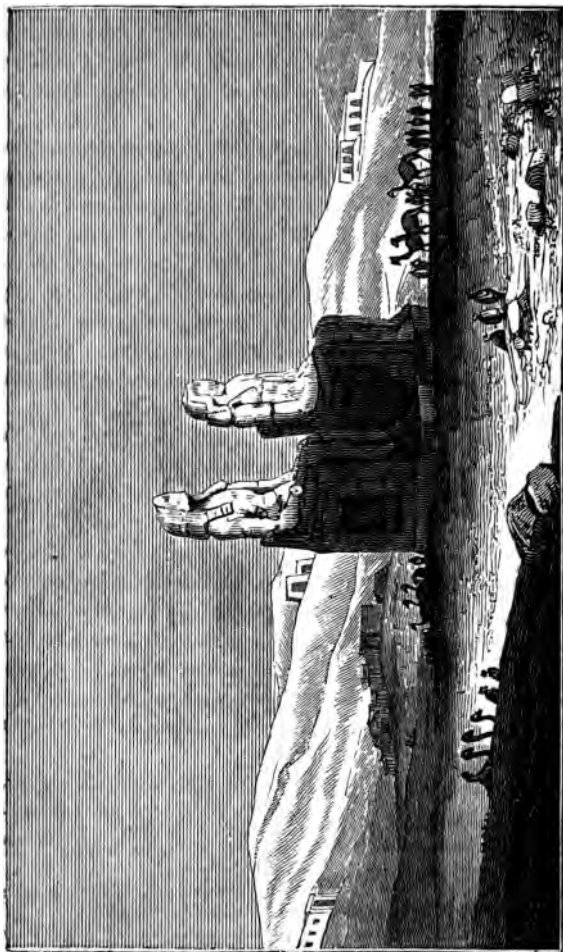
4. One of the Egyptian kings caused his subjects to dig a great lake, forty-five miles in circumference, and almost as deep as the ocean. Another king constructed a labyrinth of marble, containing three thousand chambers, fifteen hundred of which were under ground.

5. In the upper chambers of this labyrinth were kept the sacred crocodiles, and all the other animals which the Egyptians worshipped. In the subterranean chambers lay the dead kings of Egypt.

6. The catacombs are likewise very wonderful. They are galleries hewn out of the rock, and extend a great way beneath the ground. The dead bodies of persons who died thousands of years ago are found in these catacombs, and they are nearly as well preserved now as when they were first buried. These are called mummies; and many, supposed to be three thousand years old, have been brought to this country.

7. Everybody has heard of the pyramids of Egypt. These immense edifices are still standing on the banks of the Nile. The largest is five hundred feet high, and covers eleven acres of ground.

8. The pyramids are so old, that it is impossible to tell when they were erected, or by whom. It is generally supposed that the ancient kings of Egypt intended them as their sepulchres, thinking that thus they should be



The Sitting Statues in the Desert, near Thebes.

famous for ever. But though the pyramids have not decayed, the names of those kings are forgotten.

9. Near Thebes are the two colossal statues represented on the opposite page. They were raised in honour of King Amenophis, who lived 1430 years before Christ. They are seated, as it were, on chairs, and are sixty feet high.

10. The sphynx is one of the most curious among the Egyptian antiquities. It was originally the gigantic head of a woman, on the body of a lion ; but the lower part is now buried in the sand. The part which remains above ground is the head and neck. These are twenty-seven feet high, and are made of solid rock.

11. The ruins of Luxor, near ancient Thebes, are so grand as to strike the beholder with awe. The remains of one of the temples are, perhaps, the most remarkable relics of antiquity.

12. At the time when they constructed these marvellous works, the ancient Egyptians possessed more learning and science than any other people. Their superior knowledge caused them to be looked upon as magicians by the people of other countries.

13. Still the Egyptians had many absurd superstitions, as I have already told you. Their chief deities were Isis and Osiris. Of these they made strange images, and worshipped them. Isis in particular was greatly revered, and the people dedicated many splendid temples to her worship.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of the ancient history of Egypt ? What of its ruins and monuments ?—2. What of Thebes ? Population ?—3. Its remains ? Pillars ?—4. Describe the works of some of the kings.—6. Describe the catacombs. The mummies.—8. The pyramids.—9. What of statues near Thebes ?—10. Describe the sphynx.—11. What of the ruins of Luxor ?—12. How were the Egyptians looked upon by people of other countries ?—13. Mention the superstitions of the Egyptians.

CHAPTER XXXVIII. AFRICA continued.—*The Ptolemies and Queen Cleopatra.*

1. IN the history of the Jews, I have told of their bondage in Egypt, and of their miraculous deliverance. Five hundred years afterwards, the Egyptian king Shishak took Jerusalem, and plundered Solomon's temple.

2. A very famous king of Egypt was named Amenophis. He is believed to be the same with Memnon, in honour of whom a temple with a gigantic statue was erected, of which some remains are still to be seen at Thebes. This statue was said to utter a joyful sound at sunrise, and a mournful sound when the sun set. This is now known to have been a contrivance of the priests.

3. In the year 525 before the Christian era, Egypt was conquered by Cambyzes, king of Persia; he compelled Psammenitus, the king, to drink bulls' blood, which operated as a poison, and caused his death.

4. Three hundred and thirty-two years before the Christian era, Egypt was conquered by Alexander the Great, king of Macedon. Here he built a famous city, called Alexandria, which was for many centuries one of the most splendid places in the world. But the ancient city is in ruins, and modern Alexandria is far inferior to it.

5. Alexander was buried at Alexandria, in a tomb cut out of one vast stone; which may now be seen in the British Museum.

6. Ptolemy, one of the conqueror's generals, became the ruler of the country. From Ptolemy descended a race of kings, all of whom were likewise called Ptolemy. They reigned over Egypt two hundred and ninety-four years. The last of these kings was Ptolemy Dionysius, whose own wife made war against him. A battle was fought, in which Ptolemy Dionysius was defeated. He

attempted to escape, but was drowned in the Nile. His wife, Cleopatra, then became sole ruler of Egypt.

7. She was one of the most beautiful women that ever lived, and her talents and accomplishments were equal to her personal beauty; but she was very wicked. Among other horrid crimes, Cleopatra poisoned her brother, who was only eleven years old. Yet, though all the world knew what a wicked woman she was, the greatest heroes suffered themselves to be misled by her.

8. When Mark Antony, a Roman general, had defeated Brutus and Cassius at Philippi, in Greece, he summoned Cleopatra to Cilicia, on the north-eastern coast of the Mediterranean, intending to punish her for having assisted Brutus.

9. As soon as Cleopatra received the summons, she hastened to obey. She went in a splendid barge, richly adorned with gold, and the sails of which were made of the costliest silk. Instead of rough, sunburnt sailors, the crew consisted of females, who rowed with silver oars, keeping time to melodious music.

10. Queen Cleopatra reclined on the deck, beneath a silken awning, and in this manner she sailed along the river Cydnus. Her vessel was so magnificent, and she herself so lovely, that the whole spectacle appeared like a vision.

11. Mark Antony was first warned of her approach by the smell of delicious perfumes, which the wind wafted from the silken sails of the vessel. He next heard the distant strains of music, and saw the gleaming of the silver oars. But when he beheld the beauty of the Egyptian queen, he thought of nothing else. Till Mark Antony met Cleopatra, he had been an ambitious man, and a valiant warrior; but from that day he became her slave.

12. Owing to Cleopatra's misconduct and his own, Antony was defeated by Octavius, another Roman general, at Actium, in Greece; he then killed himself, by falling on his sword. Cleopatra knew that if Octavius took her



prisoner, he would carry her to Rome, and expose her to the derision of the populace.

13. She resolved not to endure this ignominy. Now in Egypt there is a venomous reptile, called an asp, the bite of which is mortal, but not painful. Cleopatra applied one of these reptiles to her bosom; in a little while her body grew benumbed, and her heart ceased to beat; and thus died the beautiful but wicked queen of Egypt. This event occurred thirty years before Christ.

14. The moral of the story of queen Cleopatra is very important. It shows that a person on whom Heaven has bestowed the richest gifts, may so abuse them as to cause mischief and misery to all around.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Mention the exploits of Shishak.—2. Describe the statue of Memnon.—3. By whom was Egypt conquered?—4. Did Alexander conquer Egypt?—6. What of Ptolemy and his descendants? How long did they reign in Egypt?—7. What of Cleopatra?—8. Who was Mark Antony? Did he wish to punish Cleopatra?—12. Who was Octavius?—13. How long was the death of Cleopatra before Christ?

---

#### CHAPTER XXXIX. AFRICA continued.—*Sequel of the Egyptian History.*

1. AFTER the death of Cleopatra, Egypt became a province of the Roman empire; and it continued to belong to a portion of it called the Eastern empire, till the year 640 after the Christian era. It was then conquered by the Saracens, and it remained under their government upwards of six centuries.

2. The Saracen sovereigns were dethroned by the Mamelukes, a body of slaves whom they had trained up as their guards. The Mamelukes ruled Egypt till the year 1517, when they were conquered by the Turks, who kept possession till the year 1798. It was then invaded by Napoleon Bonaparte, with an army of forty thousand Frenchmen.

3. The Turks, ever since their conquest of Egypt, had kept a body of Mamelukes in their service; these made a desperate resistance. A battle was fought near the pyramids, in which many of them were slain, and others were drowned in the Nile. Not long after this victory, Bonaparte returned to France, and left General Kleber in command of the French army.

4. General Kleber was a brave man, but very severe, and his severity cost him his life. He had ordered an old Mussulman, named the Sheik Sada, to be bastinadoed on the soles of his feet. Shortly afterwards, when the general was in a mosque, a fierce Arab rushed upon him, and stabbed him to the heart.

5. In 1801, the English sent Sir Ralph Abercrombie with an army to drive the French out of Egypt. General Menou was then the French commander. Sir Ralph Abercrombie defeated him at the battle of Alexandria, but was himself mortally wounded.

6. In the course of the same year, the French army sailed from Egypt back to France. The inhabitants lamented their departure, for the French generals had ruled them with more justice and moderation than their old masters, the Turks. Egypt is now governed by a ruler who bears the title of Pacha, but the country is no longer a part of the Turkish empire.

7. The present capital of Egypt is Grand Cairo. It is much inferior to what it was in former times, but still contains about three hundred thousand inhabitants. Alexandria, built by Alexander the Great, as I have before said, is now much reduced, but the ruins around it show that it was once a splendid city.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Describe the state of Egypt from Cleopatra's death to its subjugation by the Mamelukes.—2. How long did the Mamelukes govern Egypt? How long the Turks?—3. What battle was fought in 1798?—5. What took place in 1801?—6. How is Egypt now governed? Name the capital of Egypt. Its population. *What of Alexandria?*

CHAPTER XL. AFRICA continued.—*Summary of  
Æthiopian Affairs.*

1. ALL the interior parts of Africa were anciently called Æthiopia; but, properly speaking, Æthiopia comprised only the countries now called Nubia and Abyssinia. This region lies south of Egypt, and extends along the shore of the Red Sea. The first inhabitants of Æthiopia are supposed to have emigrated from Arabia the Happy. Their early history is almost unknown.

2. Æthiopia, or at least a portion of it, was formerly called Sheba, whose queen visited king Solomon. It is said that one of her descendants was king of Abyssinia about thirty years ago.

3. It used to be the custom to confine the Æthiopian princes on a high mountain, which was named Geshen. It was very high and steep, and looked like an enormous castle of stone. No person could ascend this mountain, or come down from it, unless he were raised or lowered by means of ropes.

4. The princes lived on the summit of the mountain, in miserable huts. The greater part of them never came down till their dying day. But whenever the king died, one of the princes was summoned to the throne.

5. The Æthiopians were believers in the Jewish religion till the middle of the fourth century after the Christian era. Candace, the queen of the country, was then converted to Christianity, and her subjects followed her example.

6. The inhabitants of Æthiopia, or Abyssinia, are still called Christians, but their mode of worship is mixed up with many Jewish practices. They also pray to the Virgin Mary and the saints, like the Roman Catholics.

7. The people of this part of Africa are not negroes. They are of an olive complexion, and have long hair and agreeable features. But in the north-eastern part of

Abyssinia, there is a race of negroes called Shangallas, a wild and savage people.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What was anciently called Æthiopia? In which direction is it from Egypt? Who were the first inhabitants of Æthiopia?—2. What was Æthiopia formerly called?—3. What was once the custom?—4. How did the princes live?—5. Till what time did the Æthiopians believe in the Jewish religion?—6. What of the worship of the people of Æthiopia at the present time?—7. Their personal appearance? The Shangallas?

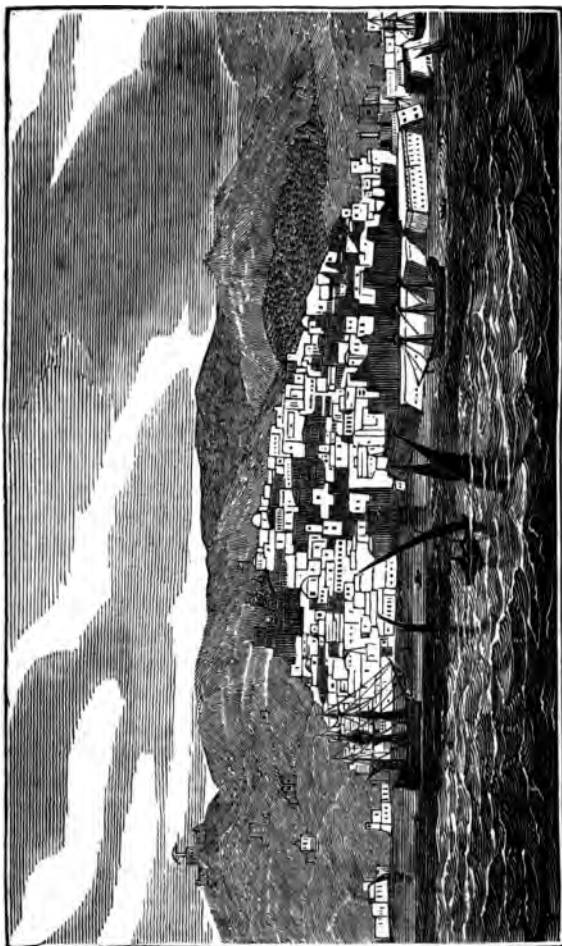
# CHAPTER XLI. AFRICA continued.—*Origin of the Barbary States, and their Piracies on the Christians.*

1. THE Barbary States are Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli. They are bounded north by the Mediterranean Sea, east and south by the desert, and west by the Atlantic Ocean. These countries were inhabited in the time of the Romans. Morocco was then called Mauritania; and Algiers, Numidia. These regions were first settled by from Phœnicia, Greece, and other countries.

2. In this region stood the celebrated city of Carthage. Its site was about ten miles north-east of the present city of Tunis. It was founded by the Phœnicians, 869 years before the Christian era. The Phœnicians, as I have already told you, were the first people who engaged in commerce, and founded colonies for the purpose of carrying on trade.

3. In the history of Rome I shall tell you how Carthage was destroyed. The Romans erected a new city where it had formerly stood. This was conquered and destroyed by the Saracens, who then built the city of Tunis. In the year 1574, Tunis was seized by the Turks.

4. The city of Algiers was built by the Saracens, in the year 944. The Turks obtained possession of it in 1518, through the efforts of two pirates, named Horuc and Hayradin. They were brothers, and both bore the name of Barbarossa, or Red-Beard.



General View of the City of Algiers, from the Sea.

5. The country now called Morocco was conquered by the Saracens, about the same time with the other Barbary states. So also was Tripoli. All these states, except Morocco, afterwards fell into the hands of the Turks.

6. During a long period, the Barbary states were in the habit of fitting out vessels to cruise against the ships of every nation. Their prisoners were sold as slaves, and never returned to their own country, unless a high ransom were paid for them.

7. The Americans were the first who made any considerable resistance to these outrages. In the year 1803, Commodore Preble sailed to the Mediterranean Sea with a small American fleet. He attacked Tripoli, and forced the bashaw to give up his prisoners.

8. In the year 1815, Commodore Decatur was sent with a fleet against Algiers. He captured their largest vessels, and compelled the Algerines, and the Tripolitans also, to agree never more to make slaves of Americans.

9. In 1816, Algiers was bombarded by an English and Dutch fleet commanded by Lord Exmouth, and eleven hundred Christian captives were restored to freedom. This was the severest chastisement that the Algerines had ever received at that period. But in 1830, the French sent a large naval and military force against Algiers, commanded by Marshal Bourmont. The fortifications were battered down, and the city was taken; and Algiers may now be considered a province of France.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What are the Barbary states? How are they bounded?—2. Where did ancient Carthage stand? Who founded it?—3. Who erected a new city? What did the Saracens do? When was Tunis seized by the Turks?—4. When and by whom was Algiers built? What happened in 1518? Who were called Barbarossa?—5. What of Morocco and Tripoli?—6. What were those states in the habit of doing?—7. What was done in 1803? What of Commodore Preble?—8. What was done in the year 1815? What agreement did the Tripolitans and Algerines make?—9. When was Algiers bombarded by Lord Exmouth? How many captives were released? What took place in 1830? How may Algiers now be considered?

**CHAPTER XLII.** AFRICA continued.—*Fables and Facts about Africa.*



A Burying-Ground, in Algiers.

1. Most of the other regions of Africa can hardly be said to have any history. The inhabitants possess no written records, and cannot tell what events have happened to their forefathers.

2. The ancients had very curious notions about Africa; for they had visited only the northern parts, and contented themselves with telling incredible stories about the remainder. They supposed that towards the eastern shore of the continent there were people without noses, and others who had three or four eyes apiece.

3. In other parts of Africa there were said to be men without heads, but who had eyes in their breasts. Old writers speak also of a nation whose king had a head like a dog. There was likewise said to be a race of giants, twice as tall as ordinary men and women.

4. But the prettiest of all these fables is the story of the Pygmies. These little people were said to be about a foot high, and were believed to dwell near the source of the river Nile. Their houses were built something like *birds' nests*, and their building materials were clay, feathers, and *egg-shells*.

5. These Pygmies used to wage terrible wars with the cranes. An immense army of them would set out on an expedition, some mounted on rams and goats, and others on foot.

6. When an army of the Pygmies encountered an army of the cranes, great valour was displayed on both sides. The cranes would rush forward to the charge, flapping their wings, and sometimes one of them would snatch up a Pygmy in his beak, and carry him away captive.

7. But the Pygmies brandished their little swords and spears, and generally succeeded in putting the enemy to flight. Whenever they had an opportunity, they would break the eggs of the cranes, and kill the unfledged young ones without mercy.

8. Until within a few years, the moderns have not known much more about the interior of Africa than the ancients did. They have now acquired considerable knowledge respecting it. Nearly the whole of the central part of Africa, through which the river Niger flows, is called Nigritia, or Negroland. It is inhabited by several different nations.

9. The principal city in Nigritia is called Timbuctoo. It is situated eight miles from the Niger. The houses are only one story high, and are built of round bricks baked in the sun. The poor people and slaves dwell in huts of straw, shaped something like bee-hives. All around the city there is an immense plain of yellowish-white sand.

10. There are English, and French, and Portuguese settlements on the western coast of Africa. The Cape of Good Hope, the southern point of Africa, was formerly a Dutch colony, but was captured by the English in 1806.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Describe the inhabitants of most parts of Africa. —2. Mention the notions of the ancients concerning Africa.— 4. Give some account of the Pygmies.—8. What knowledge have the moderns of the interior of Africa?—9. Describe Timbuctoo. —10. What of the European settlements? How long have the English had possession of the Cape of Good Hope?



CHAPTER XLIII.—*The Slave Trade.*

1. The most painful part of the history of Africa is that which belongs to the slave trade. From the earliest ages, when human society was yet in a rude state, it was the custom to make slaves of those who were taken in war. This practice was continued in after times, and thus, for centuries, slavery was established in many nations.

2. The diffusion of Christianity in time convinced men of the sinfulness of this practice, and it fell into disuse. In 1482, however, the Portuguese began the horrid traffic of the slave trade, and were soon followed by other nations. From that time, it has continued to the present day, though England has made treaties with many nations for its suppression ; but it has now nearly ceased.

3. For at least two hundred years, this traffic was carried on to a great extent. The custom was for vessels to go to the western coast of Africa, and purchase of the African princes such prisoners as they had for sale. Sometimes, however, the captains of the vessels would rob the people of their children, or they would go on shore, and carry away the inhabitants of a whole village.

4. The poor negroes thus taken from their homes, and separated for ever from all they held dear, were crowded into vessels, where they were half-starved, and suffered so much from disease, and the most barbarous treatment, that they frequently threw themselves into the sea to escape from their miseries.

5. Millions of these poor negroes have been taken from their homes, and probably more than half of those who entered the ships, from the beginning of the trade to this day, have perished before they reached the countries to which they were bound. It is by this cruel trade that slavery has been introduced into various parts of America and the West Indies.

QUESTIONS. 1. What is painful in the history of Africa? How was slavery established?—2. Had the Christian religion any effect upon slavery? When did the Portuguese engage in the slave trade? What has happened till the present time?—3. How long was the traffic carried on?—4. Describe the state of the poor negroes.—5. How has slavery been introduced into America and the West Indies?

#### CHAPTER XLIV.—*Chronology of Africa.*

1. The following table exhibits the dates of the most remarkable events in the history of Africa. It may be well to compare this with the chronology of Asia, by which you may see what was doing in that quarter, while these events were happening in Africa.

	Before Christ.
Egypt settled by Misraim - - - - -	2188
Nitocris became queen of Egypt - - - - -	1678
Departure of the Israelites from Egypt - - - - -	1491
Cambyses conquers Egypt - - - - -	525
Alexander conquers Egypt - - - - -	332
Death of Cleopatra - - - - -	30
	A. D.
Egypt conquered by the Saracens - - - - -	640
Algiers built - - - - -	944
The Mamelukes become masters of Egypt - - - - -	1250
The Portuguese begin the slave trade - - - - -	1482
Discovery of a passage to India by the Cape of Good Hope	1497
Egypt conquered by the Turks - - - - -	1517
A government founded at Algiers, called the regency of Algiers	1518
Tunis seized by the Turks - - - - -	1574
Napoleon invades Egypt - - - - -	1798
Sir Ralph Abercrombie drives the French out of Egypt	1801
Tripoli attacked by Commodore Preble - - - - -	1800
The English take the Cape of Good Hope from the Dutch	1806
Commodore Decatur batters Algiers - - - - -	1815
Lord Exmouth bombards Algiers - - - - -	1816
Algiers taken by Marshal Bourmont - - - - -	1830

*The teacher may here add such questions upon this table of chronology as he may deem proper.*

CHAPTER XLV. EUROPE.—*Introductory Remarks on its Geography and other matters.*



A Village Church in England.

1. EUROPE is considered the third quarter of the globe. It is the smallest in extent, being about one quarter as large as Asia, one-third as large as Africa, and about one-fourth the size of America. It is a part of the eastern continent, and is only separated from Asia by the Ural Mountains. It is separated from Africa by the Mediterranean Sea. At the straits of Gibraltar, the distance from Europe to Africa is but twenty-one miles.

2. But although Europe is the smallest of the four quarters of the globe, it has nearly three hundred millions of inhabitants, and is much superior to Asia, Africa, and America, in civilization. It abounds in cities, with cathedrals, churches, and palaces; good roads, houses, manufactories, and other things necessary to the comfort and happiness of mankind.

3. In all parts of Europe except Turkey, the religion of Jesus Christ prevails. If you were to travel in Asia, or Africa, you would meet with no churches, or only now and then one, where the true God is worshipped. But you would see many mosques dedicated to the false religion of Mohammed, and temples where the people bow down to idols of wood, stone, or metal.

4. But in Europe, the traveller everywhere meets with churches, and these show that the people are Christians. In Europe, also, there are many colleges, academies, and schools, which prove that the people set a high value upon education. It is a fact which I wish you to remember, that in all parts of the world where you find churches, you find the people far advanced in civilization and the arts which render mankind happy.

5. This may show to us that the Christian religion tends to make people wiser and happier; and this is rendered still more clear by the fact, that in all those countries where the Christian religion is unknown, the people are ignorant, degraded, and miserable. All false religions tend to injure mankind; the true religion tends to their improvement. How desirable is it, then, that every individual in the world should be a Christian.

6. Europe was behind Asia and Africa in being settled and civilized. Long after the Assyrian empire had risen to great power and splendour, and Babylon and Nineveh had flourished on the banks of the Euphrates and the Tigris, long after Egypt had become a mighty kingdom, and Thebes, Memphis, and other magnificent cities, had risen upon the borders of the Nile, Europe continued to be inhabited only by wandering tribes of savages.

7. Greece was the first portion of Europe that was settled, by a colony from Egypt. About the time that Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, the Greeks began to build houses, found cities, and emerge from the savage into a more civilized state. By degrees they advanced in

knowledge and refinement, and at length became the most polished people in the world.

8. Afterwards Rome, situated in Italy, became a mighty city, and the Roman people extended their empire over the greater part of Europe, and the most civilized portions of Asia and Africa. Carthage, Egypt, Greece, Asia Minor, Palestine, Syria, and other Asiatic countries, bowed to the Roman yoke.

9. Rome was the most splendid empire that the world has ever seen. It crushed other kingdoms beneath its foot, but, in turn, imperial Rome was itself trampled down by the northern nations, and Europe was for a while plunged in darkness and barbarism.

10. But the fragments of the empire grew up in due time to be separate nations, and these advanced in knowledge until they reached their present condition.

11. Europe may be divided into two parts, the northern and southern. The principal countries in the northern section are Russia, Norway, Sweden, Prussia, several German states, Denmark, Holland, Belgium, Switzerland, France, and Great Britain.

12. Among the southern states of Europe are Portugal, Spain, Italy, Greece, and Turkey. In these latter countries the soil is generally fertile; and here grapes, olives, oranges, lemons, melons, and other delicious fruits, are abundant. In these mild and genial climates, all the wants of man are very easily supplied; but the inhabitants are ignorant and indolent, and therefore their condition is much inferior, in every respect, to that of the natives of colder countries.

13. In the northern parts of Europe, the people find it necessary to cultivate the soil with care, and lay up in summer a store of provisions against the long, cold winter. They build themselves good houses, they furnish them with many convenient articles, and thus, by their industry *and care, they live more happily than those who inhabit the gentler climes of the south.*

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Which is the third quarter of the globe? The smallest? How large is Europe compared with Asia? Africa? America? How is it separated from Asia? From Africa? How far is the nearest point of Europe from Africa? Boundaries of Europe? Direction of Europe from Africa? Asia? America? What ocean lies between Europe and America? Distance from America to Europe? **Ans.** Three thousand miles.—2. In what does Europe abound?—3. What of religion in Europe? What of Asia and Africa? Churches? Mosques? Temples?—4. What does the traveller meet in Europe? What do churches show? Colleges, schools, &c.?—5. In countries where the Christian religion is unknown what happens? Describe the effect of false religions. Of the true religion.—6. What of Europe? Mention the condition of Europe until after the empires of Asia and Egypt had long flourished.—7. What part of Europe was first inhabited? About what time did the Greeks begin to emerge from the savage to the civilized state? Progress of the Greeks?—8. What of Rome, and of the countries subject to Rome?—9. What was Rome? What followed the destruction of the Roman empire?—10. What of the several nations of Europe?—11. How may Europe be divided? Principal nations of northern Europe?—12. The southern kingdoms of Europe? Climate in southern Europe? Effect of the climate upon the people?—13. What of the northern parts of Europe? Condition of the people?



*Ruins of a Roman Castle, in England.*

CHAPTER XLVI. EUROPE continued.—*About Greece ; where it is situated ; appearance of the Country ; Climate.*

1. GREECE is a small country extending into the Mediterranean Sea. It is nearly at an equal distance from Asia Minor on the east, and Italy on the west.

2. Greece is bounded on the north by Macedonia, which is now a part of Turkey ; on every other side it is bounded by the sea. To the south and east of it are a number of islands, some of them extremely beautiful.

3. Several of them have towns and cities upon them, and one, called Antiparos, is remarkable for a grotto beneath the earth, which appears like a beautiful palace. When lighted up with lamps, it seems a vast hall, with a thousand pillars and ornaments of silver.

4. Some of the islands of Greece have been thrown up from the sea, and others which formerly existed have disappeared. These strange things have been caused by volcanic fires under the sea. Nothing can be more wonderful than the scenes which have sometimes been exhibited by these convulsions of nature.

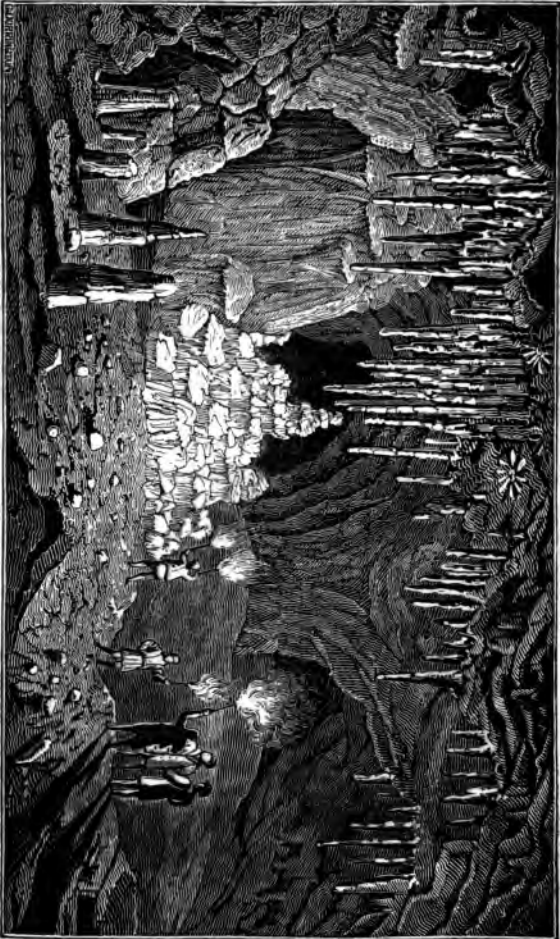
5. In the southern part of Greece, and among the islands, the climate is very mild ; and here the country abounds in all sorts of delicious fruits. In the northern part, the climate is somewhat colder.

6. If you were to travel through Greece, you would discover that it is naturally very beautiful. Along the shores, you would meet with many little bays and harbours, and you would easily believe that the people living there would be tempted by the placid water to become seamen. You would accordingly find a large portion of the inhabitants to be seafaring people.

7. In the interior of the country you would meet with lofty mountains, whose tops in winter are covered with snow. You would meet with smiling valleys, bright,

rapid streams, and steep hillsides covered with olive groves, vineyards, and fig-trees.

The Grotto at Amphiparos, in Greece.



8. You would discover that the people of the present

K

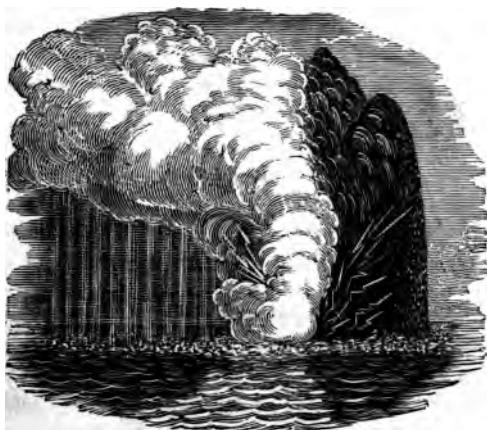


day live in miserable villages or towns, all wearing an aspect of poverty and decay. But you would often meet with the ruins of temples and other edifices, built by the ancient Greeks two or three thousand years ago.

9. These would show you, that, though the modern Greeks appear to be a degraded people, yet the former inhabitants of this country were among the most remarkable people that ever lived. It is of these I am now going to tell you.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What is Greece? In what direction is it from Asia Minor? From Egypt? Italy? France? England? Russia? —2. How is Greece bounded on the north? East? South? West? The islands of Greece?—3. What of Antiparos?—4. Volcanic islands?—5. Climate in the southern part of Greece? Northern?—6. What of the shores of Greece? To what pursuits are many of the present Greeks devoted?—7. The interior of Greece?—8. Present inhabitants of Greece? Ruins of temples, &c.?—9. Do these ruins prove anything?



Volcano Island rising from the Sea.

CHAPTER XLVII. EUROPE continued.—*The extent of Greece. First Settlement of the Country.*

1. THOUGH Greece is one of the most famous countries on the face of the globe, it is not very extensive; its boundaries varied at different times, but it never exceeded four hundred miles in length, and about one hundred and fifty in width.

2. I must now carry you back to the first settlement of this country, which took place more than four thousand years ago. When the human race was scattered from the tower of Babel, it is supposed that the family of Japheth, Noah's youngest son, travelled from Asia into Europe. As Greece lay nearer to the land of Shinar than the other parts of Europe, it was probably settled first.

3. The Greeks themselves believed that their ancestors had sprung up out of the earth. The first inhabitants were, however, mere savages; they dwelt in wretched huts, and fed on acorns, and their garments were the skins of wild beasts.

4. There are so many fables about the early history of Greece, that I shall pass very briefly over the first three or four centuries. Cecrops, an Egyptian, seems to have been the first who introduced civilization among the Greeks; he came with a number of his countrymen, and founded the city of Athens. This event took place about fifteen hundred and fifty-six years before the Christian era.

5. Thirty or forty years afterwards, Cadmus came from Phoenicia, and built the city of Thebes. He was one of the greatest benefactors of the Greeks, for he taught them the cultivation of the vine, the art of working metals, and the use of the alphabet.

6. Other parts of Greece were also settled by colonies from foreign nations. The country was at length divided into a number of small states, which had little or no con-

nexion with one another, but they were frequently at war among themselves.

7. Twelve of these states soon united themselves into a confederacy. Their deputies, who held a meeting twice a year, in order to consult respecting the welfare of the country, were called the council of the Amphictyons. By means of this council, the different states were kept at peace with each other, and were united against foreign enemies.

8. One of the famous events of Grecian history was the Argonautic expedition. It is said that a prince named Jason, with a company of his friends, sailed to Colchis, which lay eastward of the Black Sea; their object was to find a wonderful ram with a fleece of gold, but the whole story is supposed by some to be a fable.

9. The Trojan war was still more famous than the expedition in search of the golden fleece. Troy was a large city on the Asiatic side of the Hellespont, which is now called the Dardanelles. Paris, the son of the Trojan king, had stolen away the wife of Menelaus, the king of Sparta.

10. All the Grecian kings combined together to punish this offence. They sailed to Troy in twelve hundred vessels, and took the city after a siege of ten years. This event is supposed to have occurred eleven hundred and eighty-three years before the Christian era.

11. But most historians are of opinion that the Trojan war was a much less important affair than Homer, the great Greek poet of those days, has represented it to be, for poets do not always write the simple truth. But Homer was worthy to be called the father and chief of poets, though he was a blind old man, and used to wander about the country, reciting his verses.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Mention the extent of Greece? Its greatest length? Width?—2. How long since Greece was first settled? The supposed first inhabitants of Greece? In which direction was

Greece from the land of Shinar? From Egypt?—3. What did the Greeks believe of their ancestors? What of the first inhabitants of Greece?—4. By whom was civilization first introduced among the Greeks? What city was founded by Cecrops, and when? In what part of Greece was Athens? Does Athens still exist? *Ans.* Yes; but the modern town is very mean, compared with ancient Athens. The ruins around it are very splendid.—5. What of Cadmus? In which direction was Thebes from Athens? *N. B.* You must remember that there was a famous city in Egypt named Thebes.—6. How were other parts of Greece settled?—7. What did twelve of the Grecian states do? The Amphictyonic council? What effect had this council?—8. What of the Argonautic expedition?—9. Of the Trojan war?—11. Of Homer?

---

#### CHAPTER XLVIII. EUROPE continued.—*The Grecian Lawgivers.*

1. ONE of the principal states of Greece was called Sparta, or Lacedæmon. It was founded by Lelex, 1516 before Christ, and received a code of laws from Lycurgus, who lived nearly nine centuries before Christ. He was strict and severe, but wise and upright.

2. Lycurgus ordered that all the Spartans should eat together at public tables. The reason of this law was, that the rich citizens might not feast luxuriously at home, but that rich and poor should fare alike. The children, were not allowed anything to eat, unless they could steal it. This wicked custom was adopted with the idea that it would train up the young Spartans to be cunning in war.

3. In order that the people might not be avaricious, Lycurgus forbade any gold or silver to be coined into money, so all the money was made of iron. It could not very easily be carried in the pocket, for five shillings' worth weighed fifty pounds of our weight.

4. The children were all brought up at the public expense. They were allowed to stand near the dinner-tables and listen to the wise conversation of their parents, but the Spartans were very anxious that their children should *abhor drunkenness.*

5. They showed them the disgusting effects of this pernicious vice, by causing their slaves to drink intoxicating liquors. When the children had witnessed the ridiculous conduct of the drunken slaves, they were careful never to reduce themselves to so degraded a condition.

6. When Lycurgus had completed his code of laws, he left Sparta, and previously to his departure, he made the people swear that they would violate none of the laws till he should return. But he had resolved never to return.

7. He committed suicide by starving himself to death; and his ashes were thrown into the sea by his command, so that the Spartans might not bring back his dead body. Thus, as Lycurgus never could return, the Spartans were bound by their oath to keep his laws for ever.

8. They did keep them during five hundred years; and, all that time, the Spartans were a brave, patriotic, and powerful people. Many of their customs, however, belonged rather to a savage than a civilized nation.

9. Athens had two celebrated lawgivers, Draco and Solon. The laws of Draco were so extremely severe that they were said to be written with blood, instead of ink, for he punished even the smallest offences with death. His code was soon abolished.

10. Solon's laws were much milder. Almost all of them were wise and good laws, and would have been advantageous to the people. But the Athenians had so much fickleness and levity, that they were continually proposing alterations in them.

11. Athens was at this time a republic; which is, you know, a government of the people; but soon after Solon had made his laws, the supreme power was usurped by Pisistratus, an ambitious citizen. He and his sons ruled Athens fifty years.

---

QUESTIONS. Where was Sparta? Direction of Sparta from Athens? From Thebes?—1. What of Sparta? Laws? Lycurgus?—2. Did Lycurgus wish the Spartans to eat in public? Why

were the children encouraged to steal?—3. What laws were made respecting money? What of the Spartan coinage?—4. How were children brought up?—5. How were they taught to abhor drunkenness?—6. What did Lycurgus make the Spartans swear before he went away?—7. What was the fate of the Spartan lawgiver?—8. How long did the Spartans keep his laws?—9. What of Draco and Solon? The laws of Draco?—10. What of Solon's laws? The Athenians?—11. What was the government of Athens? Who usurped the supreme power? What of the government of Athens for fifty years?

---

#### CHAPTER XLIX. EUROPE continued.—*War with Persia.*

1. ABOUT five centuries before the Christian era, Darius, king of Persia, made war against Greece. His generals invaded the country with a fleet of six hundred vessels, and half a million of men, and there were scarcely any troops to oppose them, except ten thousand Athenians.

2. Darius felt so certain of conquering Greece, that he sent great quantities of marble with his army, which he intended should be carved into pillars and triumphal arches, and other trophies of victory. He also commanded his generals to send all the Athenians to Persia, in chains.

3. The Athenian general was named Miltiades. He led his little army against the immense host of the Persians, and encountered them at Marathon, a small town on the sea-shore, about fifteen miles north-east of Athens.

4. While their countrymen were fighting, the aged people, the women and children, remained at Athens in the utmost anxiety. If Miltiades were to lose the battle, they knew that the Persians would chase his routed army into the city, and burn it to ashes.

5. Suddenly a soldier, covered with blood, ran into the market-place of the city. He was sorely wounded; but he had come all the way from the army to bring the

news. He was ghastly pale, and the people feared that the Persians had won the day, and that the soldier was a fugitive.

6. They gathered round him, eagerly asking about Miltiades and the army. The soldier leaned heavily upon his spear, and seemed too much exhausted to give utterance to the news he had brought.

7. But, exerting all his strength, he cried out, "Rejoice, my countrymen! the victory is ours!" And, with that exulting shout, he fell down dead.

8. The Athenians showed themselves ungrateful to the brave Miltiades. All that he demanded as a reward for rescuing his native land from slavery, was a crown of olive leaves, which was esteemed a mark of honour among the Greeks. But they refused to give him one; and he was afterwards condemned, on some frivolous pretence, to pay a fine of fifty talents. As Miltiades had not so much money in the world, he perished in prison.

9. After the battle of Marathon, the Persians were driven out of Greece, and Darius died while he was preparing to invade the country again. His son Xerxes renewed the war. In the history of Persia, I have already told of the invasion of Greece by Xerxes with two millions of men, and of the misfortunes which befell him there.

QUESTIONS. In what direction is Persia from Greece?—

1. Did Darius make war against Greece, and when? What of the Persian force? The Athenian?—2. Of marble? What did Darius command?—3. Name the Athenian general. Where was Marathon?—4. What of those who remained at Athens?—5. What messenger was sent from Marathon? Which way is Marathon from Athens? From Sparta?—7. What news did the messenger bring?—8. How did the Athenians treat Miltiades? His fate?—9. What of the Persians after the battle of Marathon? Of Darius? Xerxes?

CHAPTER L. EUROPE continued.—*Affairs of Athens.*

Grecian Chariot.

1. **AFTER** the Persian war, Cimon, Aristides and Pericles were the three principal men of Athens. Pericles at length became the chief person in the republic. Athens was never more flourishing than while he was at the head of the government.

2. He adorned the city with magnificent edifices, and rendered it famous for learning, poetry, and beautiful works of art, such as temples, statues, and paintings. But the Athenians were fickle, and generally ungrateful to their public benefactors; and they sometimes ill-treated Pericles.

3. In the latter part of his administration, a terrible plague broke out in Athens. Many of the citizens fell down and died, while passing through the streets, and dead bodies lay in heaps, one upon another.

4. The illustrious Pericles was one of the victims of this pestilence. When he lay at the point of death, his friends praised him for the glorious deeds which he had achieved. "It is my greatest glory," replied Pericles, "that none of my acts have caused a citizen of Athens to put on mourning."

5. Three years before the death of Pericles, a war had commenced between Athens and Sparta. These were



now the two principal states of Greece, and they had become jealous of each other's greatness. A fierce war



View of the Parthenon at Athens, an Edifice of the age of Pericles.

*followed, in which all the states of that part of Greece*

called Peloponnesus were engaged. This bloody strife lasted twenty-eight years.

6. In the course of this war, Alcibiades made a conspicuous figure among the Athenians. He was the handsomest and most agreeable man in Athens. At one period he was greatly beloved by the people, and possessed almost unlimited power; but he was ambitious, and destitute of principle.

7. He was the cause of much trouble, not only in his native city, but all over Greece. At last, when he had lost the good will of everybody, he retired to a small village in Phrygia, in Asia Minor, and dwelt there with a woman named Timandra.

8. His enemies sent a party of assassins to murder him, and these set fire to the house in which he lived. Alcibiades was a brave man, and he rushed out, sword in hand, upon the assailants, but they stood at a distance, and pierced him through with javelins.

9. The Peloponnesian war brought great misfortunes on the Athenians. The Spartans conquered them, and burnt the city; and while this work of destruction was going forward, the victors caused music to be played.

10. The Athenians were now placed under the government of thirty Spartan captains. These were called the Thirty Tyrants of Athens; but they held their power only three years. Thrasybulus, a patriotic Athenian, then incited his countrymen to regain their freedom.

11. The thirty tyrants were expelled; and Thrasybulus was rewarded with a wreath made of two twigs of an olive tree, which, as I have before said, was esteemed a great mark of honour. Athens again became prosperous, and its former government was restored in the year 403 before the Christian era.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Who were the three principal men of Athens? What of Pericles?—2. Did he do anything for Athens? Men-

tion the general character of the Athenians.—3. What of the plague?—4. What did Pericles say on his death-bed?—5. What was begun three years before the death of Pericles? What of Athens and Sparta? How long did the Peloponnesian war last? What part of Greece was called Peloponnesus? Name the states included in the Peloponnesian. **ANS.** Arcadia, Laconia, Messenia, Elis, Argolis, Achaia, Sicyon, and Corinth.—6. What of Alcibiades?—7. What happened to him?—8. How did he die?—9. What of the Peloponnesian war? Sparta?—10. What of the thirty tyrants? Thrasybulus?—11. How was he rewarded for expelling the thirty tyrants? What took place 403 years before Christ?

---

## CHAPTER LI. EUROPE continued.—*Beginning of the Theban War.*

1. Not long after this period, Thebes became the most distinguished city of Greece, and was the capital of Bœotia. A war between Thebes and Sparta originated in the following manner. Phœbidas, a Spartan general, had wrongfully taken possession of Cadmæa, a fortress belonging to Thebes. The Thebans demanded that it should be given up; but the Spartans garrisoned it strongly, and resolved to hold it as their own.

2. A brave and patriotic young man of Thebes, named Pelopidas, contrived a scheme to get back the fortress. He and eleven companions put on their breastplates, and girded their swords around them, but clothed themselves in women's garments over their armour. In this garb, they went to the gate of Cadmæa, and were admitted.

3. The magistrates and Spartan officers were assembled at a splendid festival. Archias, the Spartan commander, sat at the head of the table. He and his friends were wholly occupied with the enjoyment of the banquet, and took scarcely any notice when the twelve figures in female attire entered the hall.

4. At the moment when the mirth and festivity of the *Spartans* was at its height, the strangers tore off their

female garb, and instead of twelve women, there stood twelve young warriors. The light of the festal torches flashed back from their bright breastplates, and their naked swords gleamed in their hands.

5. Pelopidas and his eleven companions immediately attacked the Spartan banqueters. Their surprise hindered the Spartans from making any effectual resistance, and Archias and many others were struck dead, almost before they could rise from the table.

6. Thus the Thebans gained possession of the fortress, but Sparta immediately began a war against Thebes. Many of the other states of Greece lent their assistance to the Spartans, and it appeared probable that the Thebans would be conquered and entirely ruined.

7. But they had a brave and skilful general, named Epaminondas. With only six thousand Thebans, he encountered twenty-five thousand Spartans, commanded by Cleombrotus, their king. The battle was fought at Leuctra. The Thebans gained a complete victory, and killed Cleombrotus and fourteen hundred of his men.

---

QUESTIONS. Direction of Thebes from Sparta? From Marathon? —1. What of Thebes? In what part of Greece was Bœotia? How did the war between Thebes and Sparta originate? —2. What of Pelopidas? Describe the scheme of Pelopidas and his companions. —5. Did this bold undertaking succeed? —6. What state made war upon Thebes? Other states? —7. What of Epaminondas? His army? The Spartan force? Who was the Spartan leader? Where is Leuctra? Direction from Thebes? Sparta? Athens? Did the Thebans gain the victory?

---

CHAPTER LII. EUROPE continued.—*Sequel of the Theban War.*

Greek warriors, with spears, javelins, shields, and slings.

1. EPAMINONDAS, the Theban general, was one of the best men that lived in ancient times, for his private virtues were equal to his patriotism and valour. It is said of him that a falsehood was never known to come from his lips; one of the highest praises that can be bestowed on any man.

2. It might be supposed that the Thebans would have felt the utmost gratitude towards Epaminondas, whose valour had saved his country; and it is true that the most virtuous part of the people honoured him according to his merits; but I am sorry to tell you that a great and good man is very apt to have enemies.

3. His virtues and his greatness are a reproach to the vicious and the mean, and therefore they hate him, and seek to destroy him. So it happened with Epaminondas, and so it has happened in all ages.

4. Epaminondas had many enemies among the Thebans. They at first attempted to have him sentenced to death, because he had kept the command of the army longer than the law permitted. But as his only motive had been to preserve Thebes from ruin, his judges determined to let him live.

5. Nevertheless, in order to disgrace him as much as possible, he was appointed to clean the streets of Thebes. Epaminondas was not mortified; for he knew that the Thebans might disgrace themselves by such ingratitude, but could not disgrace him. He therefore set about discharging the duties of his new office, and this great and victorious general was accordingly seen clearing away the filth from the streets.

6. But the war was not yet at an end; and the Thebans soon found that they could not do without Epaminondas. They made him throw away his broom, and take the sword again. He was placed at the head of the army, with greater power than he had possessed before.

7. So long as Epaminondas was their general, the Thebans were the most powerful people of Greece. The last victory that he gained was at Mantinea; but it cost the Thebans dear, for while Epaminondas was fighting in the thickest of the battle, a Spartan soldier thrust a javelin into his breast.

8. The Thebans and Spartans fought round the wounded Epaminondas, the latter wishing to put an end to his life, and the former to bear him from the field. The Spartans were driven back, and some of his soldiers carried Epaminondas in their arms to his tent.

9. The javelin remained sticking in the wound, for the surgeons declared that he would die the moment that it should be drawn out. Epaminondas lay in great pain; but he thought little of his own agony, and was anxious only for the success of his countrymen.

10. *At last a messenger came from the battle-field, and*

told him that the Spartans were flying, and that Thebes had won a glorious victory. "Then all is well!" said Epaminondas; and as he spoke, he drew the javelin out of his wound, and instantly expired.

11. This event took place in the year 363 before the Christian era. After the death of Epaminondas, the Thebans were no longer formidable to the rest of the Greeks.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Character of Epaminondas?—2. Were the Thebans grateful to him?—3. Do the wicked hate a great and good man?—4. Did the Thebans attempt anything?—5. How did they attempt to disgrace Epaminondas?—6. What did the Thebans find?—7. What of Thebes while Epaminondas was general? His last victory? How was he wounded? Where was Mantinea? Direction from Thebes? Sparta? Athens? Marathon?—8. By whom was Epaminondas carried from the field?—9. Describe his death?—11. When did this happen?

---

### CHAPTER LIII. EUROPE continued.—*Grecian Religion, or Mythology.*

1. MY history has now reached the period when the glory of Greece was at its height, and I shall soon have to speak of its decline. Before doing so, I think it proper to give a slight account of the religion of the Greeks, and some other interesting particulars.

2. The Greeks believed that there were three classes of deities, the Celestial, the Marine, and the Infernal. The first, as they fancied, dwelt in the sky, the second in the sea, and the third in the dreary regions under the earth. Besides these, there were inferior kinds of deities, who haunted the woods, or lived in fountains and streams.

3. The deities whose home was in the sky, were Jupiter, Apollo, Mars, Mercury, Bacchus, Vulcan, Juno, Minerva, Venus, Diana, Ceres, and Vesta. The greatest of all the gods was Jupiter. When it thundered and lightened, the *Greeks supposed that Jupiter was angry, and was flinging his thunderbolts about.*

4. The Olympic games were instituted by the Greeks, in honour of Jupiter, and were celebrated every four years.



Statue of Jupiter, by the great sculptor Phidias.



They consisted of races on foot and on horseback, and in chariots, and of leaping, wrestling, and boxing. It was considered a very great honour for a person to gain a prize at the Olympic games.

5. Apollo was the son of Jupiter. He was supposed to be the driver of the sun, which had four horses harnessed to it, and went round the world every day.

6. Besides being the coachman of the sun, Apollo was likewise the god of music and poetry, and of medicine, and all the fine arts. He also presided over the famous oracle at Delphos, whither people used to come from all parts of the world to find out the events of futurity.

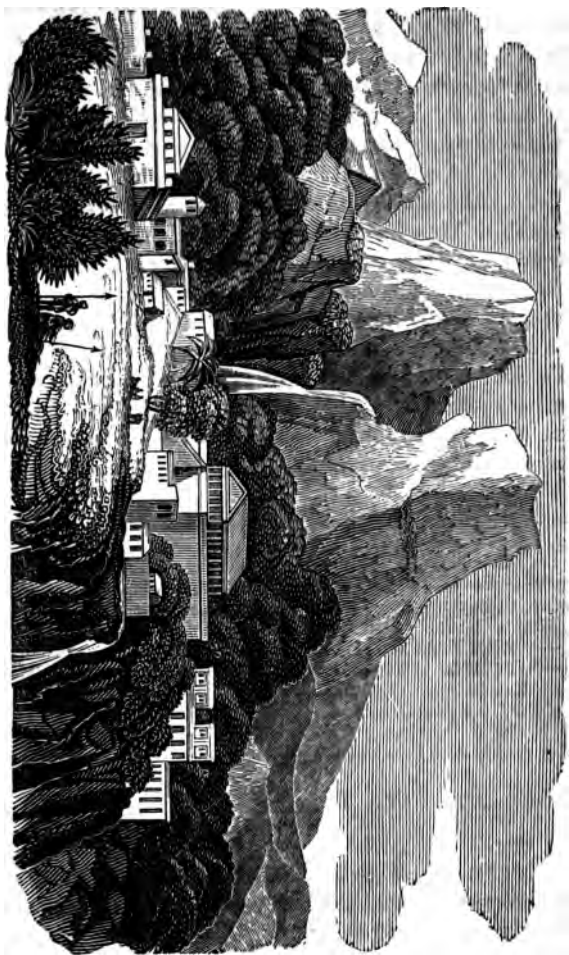
7. Mars was the god of war, and Mercury the god of thieves, and Bacchus the god of drunkards, and Vulcan the god of blacksmiths. Vulcan seems to have been one of the best and most useful of the heathen deities, for he was an excellent blacksmith, and worked hard at his anvil.

8. Venus was the goddess of beauty; her statues were made in the form of a beautiful woman. She had a son named Cupid, a mischievous little imp, and the god of love, according to the heathen mythology, from which so many nonsensical stories have been derived, even in our own times.

9. Neptune was the chief of the marine deities, and of him it was said that he had a huge scallop-shell for a chariot, and that his horses had the tails of fishes. Whenever he rode over the waves, a tribe of sea-monsters surrounded his chariot.

10. Pluto was the deity who presided in the infernal regions. He was represented seated on a throne, looking very stern and awful; in one hand he held a sceptre, and in the other two keys. Beside these gods, the Greeks believed in heroes, who were half gods and half men. Of these, Hercules was very famous for his wonderful feats of strength.

11. *Unless I were to write a large book on this one*



Mount Parnassus, and Delphi, the Temple of the Greek Oracles.

subject, it would be impossible for me to tell you all about the fanciful gods of ancient Greece, and the strange, foolish things they are said by the Greek poets to have done. The only use of such a book would be, to show how necessary it was that the true God should reveal himself to men, since they could contrive no better religion than these absurd, though sometimes amusing fables.

12. Ridiculous as their deities were, the Greeks, in those heathen days, honoured them with magnificent temples, and no other edifices so beautiful have ever been erected. Some of the churches in our own country are now built on the plan of the old Grecian temples.

13. The Grecian sculptors carved marble statues of their deities; and these images were grand, beautiful, and dignified. Phidias, one of the most celebrated of these artists, made the noble statue of Jupiter, sixty feet high, of which an engraving is given in p. 145.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. At what period was the glory of Greece at its height?—2. In what deities did the Greeks believe? What were the three classes? Where did each of them dwell? What of inferior deities?—3. Who were the celestial deities?—4. What of the Olympic games?—5. Of Apollo? His chariot?—7. Of Mars? Mercury? Bacchus? Vulcan?—8. Of Venus? Cupid?—9. Of Neptune? Where did he dwell? How is he represented?—10. Who was Pluto? Where did he dwell?—12. How did the Greeks honour their false gods? What of temples?—13. What of the Grecian statues?

---

#### CHAPTER LIV. EUROPE continued.—*The Grecian Philosophers.*

1. THE Greek philosophers were men who pretended to be wiser than mankind in general: and there were a great many of them, who lived in various ages. I shall speak of some of the most remarkable, in this and the following chapters.

2. The philosopher Thales was born between six and

seven hundred years before the Christian era. In his time lived seven philosophers, who were called the seven wise men of Greece; and Thales was considered the wisest of them all.

3. One night, while this great philosopher was taking a walk, he looked upward to contemplate the stars. Being much interested in this occupation, he strayed out of his path, and tumbled into a ditch. An old woman, who lived in his family, ran and helped him out, all covered with mud. "For the future, Thales," said she, "I advise you not to have your head among the stars, while your feet are on the earth!" Some people think that the old woman was the best philosopher of the two.

4. Another philosopher was named Pittacus. He was so temperate in his habits, that, though there were many sorts of delicious wines in his country, he never drank anything but water.

5. The philosopher Bias lived in the year 617 before Christ. Some fishermen once found a golden vase in the belly of a large fish. On the vase were engraved these words,—“To the wisest.” It was therefore sent to Bias, who was thought to be at least as wise as anybody.

6. But Bias did not care for gold or riches. When his native city was taken by the enemy, all the other inhabitants endeavoured to hide their most valuable property. Bias alone gave himself no trouble. “Riches are but playthings,” said he; “my only real treasures are my own thoughts.”

7. Epimenides was a very great philosopher; but my readers must not put too much faith in the story which I am going to tell them. It is as follows:—One day, when Epimenides was young, his father sent him in search of a sheep that was lost. After finding the sheep, Epimenides entered a cave by the wayside, and sat down, for he was tired, and the sun was very hot. In this cave he fell asleep, and slept a good deal longer than he intended.

8. It was no less than fifty-seven years before he awoke. When he closed his eyes he was a young man, but he was old and gray when he opened them again. He left the cave, and went back to the town where he had formerly lived.

9. But his father had been long dead ; his brother, who was a child when he went away, was now an old man, and the town was full of houses and people that he had never seen before. These were certainly very wonderful changes, considering that they had all happened while Epimenides was taking a nap.

10. The philosopher Pythagoras believed that, when people died, their souls migrated into the bodies of animals or birds, and he affirmed that his own soul had once lived in the body of a peacock.

11. Heraclitus of Ephesus was called the dark philosopher, because all his sayings were like riddles. He thought that nothing was wisdom which could be understood by common people.

12. This wise man considered the world as such a wretched place, that he never could look at anybody without shedding tears. At last he retired to a cave among the mountains, where he lived on herbs and roots, and was as miserable as his heart could wish.

13. Democritus, who lived not long after Heraclitus, was quite a different sort of philosopher. Instead of shedding tears, he laughed so continually, that his townsmen thought him mad ; and, to say the truth, I think so too.

14. The philosopher Anaxagoras believed that the sky was made of stones, and that the sun was a great mass of red-hot iron. This may seem very strange, but in these ancient times the philosophers did not even know the shape of the earth.

15. The philosopher Empedocles went and lived near *Mount Ætna, in Sicily*. He was a man of very grave

and majestic appearance, and everybody knew him, because he used to wear a crown of laurel on his head. People generally acknowledged him to be a very wise man; but, not content with this, he wanted to be thought a god.

16. One day, after he had prepared a great festival, Empedocles disappeared, and was never seen again. The people took it for granted that he had ascended to heaven, but shortly afterwards, there was an eruption of Mount *Ætna*, and a brazen slipper was thrown out of the crater. On examination, it was found out that this slipper had belonged to Empedocles: and it was now easy to guess at the fate of the foolish old man. He had thrown himself into the crater of the blazing volcano, in order that people might think him a god, and that he had gone to heaven.

17. Socrates was one of the wisest and best philosophers of Greece. Indeed he was so wise and good, that the profligate Athenians could not suffer him to live. They therefore compelled him to drink poison.

18. Diogenes was the strangest philosopher of all. He was called Diogenes the Dog,—either because he lived like a dog, or because he had a currish habit of snarling at everybody.

19. His doctrine was, that the fewer superfluities a man had, the happier he was likely to be. This philosopher went about barefoot, dressed in very shabby clothes, and carrying a bag, a jug, and a staff. He afterwards got a great tub, which he used to drag about with him all day long, and sleep in it at night.

20. One day, Alexander the Great came to see Diogenes, and found him mending his tub. It happened that Alexander stood in such a manner as to shade Diogenes from the sun, and he felt cold. “Diogenes,” said Alexander, “you must have a very hard time of it, living in a tub. Can I do anything to better your condition?” “Nothing, except to get out of my sunshine,” replied

Diogenes, who disdained to accept any other favour from the greatest monarch in the world.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Who were the Greek philosophers?—2. Who was Thales? What of the seven wise men? How was Thales considered?—3. Relate an anecdote of him.—4. What of Pittacus?—5. When did Bias live? Tell the story of the vase.—6. What did Bias think of riches?—7. Tell the story of Epimenides.—10. What did Pythagoras believe?—11. What of Heraclitus?—13. Of Democritus? How did he differ from Heraclitus?—14. What did Anaxagoras believe?—15. Where did Empedocles live? What did he wish to be thought?—16. What means did he take to make the people think him a god?—17. What of Socrates? His death?—18. Of Diogenes? His doctrines? How did he live?—19. Tell an anecdote of Diogenes.

---

CHAPTER LV. EUROPE continued.—*Something more about Philosophers. About the Greek Poets.*

1. I COULD tell you much more about the Grecian philosophers, but I have not room. I must not forget, however, to mention Plato, who was born 429 years before Christ, and was for eight years the pupil of Socrates.

2. This great man, like many other Grecian philosophers, was a sort of schoolmaster, and many young men came to be taught by him. He delivered his lectures in a grove near Athens, called Academus, from which circumstance the word academy has since been applied to schools.

3. So great was his reputation, that young men of the highest ranks, from various parts of the world, came to be his pupils. He had very sublime ideas of religion, virtue, and truth, and he delivered these with so much sweetness and eloquence, that his listeners were enchanted. The Greeks spoke of him as the Divine Plato.

4. Greece produced many other celebrated philosophers, but I must now tell you of the poets. Homer, the noblest

poet of ancient times, I have already mentioned. When this great man was born, how he lived, or where he died, are matters of uncertainty. The general opinion is, that he lived about the year 900 before Christ, and was a wandering minstrel, who went about from place to place reciting and singing his verses. The Iliad and Odyssey, his two great poems, were composed in separate parts, and, but for the care of Lycurgus, who had them collected, would doubtless have been lost. The Iliad contains the events of the latter part of the Trojan war; the Odyssey is a narrative of the adventures of Ulysses.

5. Hesiod, another great poet, is supposed to have lived about the same time as Homer. There were a multitude of other poets in Greece, many of whom acquired great celebrity. Among these were Anacreon and Pindar, who wrote odes and lyric pieces; Theocritus, who sang the pleasures of a rural life; and Sophocles, Euripides, and Æschylus, dramatic authors.

6. You already know that the Greeks were in many respects very ignorant. They had not yet discovered that the earth is a globe or ball, that it turns round every day; and that the sun, moon, and stars, are also moving worlds. You would not therefore expect in their writings to find any useful information about geography and astronomy. Yet they lived in a beautiful country, and their mountains, streams, and valleys, were often the subject of their songs.

7. The objects of their idolatry, too, furnished materials for their poets. They described the gods and goddesses as dwelling upon the mountains, or skipping along the valleys, or gliding amidst the waters, and possessed of all the passions and failings of human beings. To this day the works of their poets are admired, and the places mentioned are often visited by travellers, who look upon them with interest, on account of the beautiful fictions to which they gave rise more than two thousand years ago.



QUESTIONS. 1. When was Plato born? Of whom was he a pupil?—2. Can you tell anything else of Plato?—3. Of his ideas, and his mode of expressing them?—4. Of Homer? At what time is it supposed Homer lived? How did he live? What of his poems? Of Hesiod?—5. Of Anacreon? Pindar? Theocritus? Other poets?—6. Were not the Greeks in many respects very ignorant?—7. What of the poetry of the ancient Greeks? Are the poems of the ancient Greeks still admired? Are the places mentioned in these poems rendered more interesting to travellers of the present time who visit them?

---

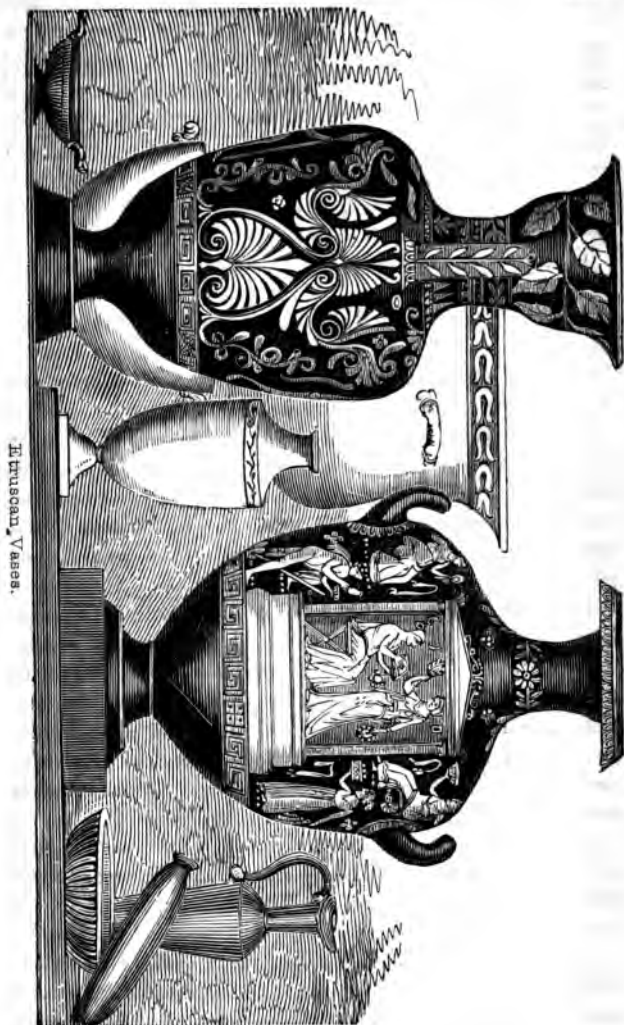
# CHAPTER LVI. EUROPE continued.—*About the Mode of Life among the ancient Greeks.*

1. BUT we must now leave poets and philosophers, and take a view of the private life of the ancient Greeks. The men wore an inner garment, called a tunic, over which they threw a mantle: and their shoes or sandals were bound under their feet with thongs or ropes. In ancient times, the Greeks went with their heads uncovered, but afterwards they used hats which were tied under the chin.

2. The women always covered their heads with a veil, which came down upon the shoulders. They wore in their hair golden grasshoppers, and ear-rings were suspended from their ears. The rest of their dress consisted of a white tunic fastened with a broad sash, and descending in folds down to their heels.

3. The Greeks usually made four meals a day: the morning meal, which was taken at sunrise; the next at mid-day; the afternoon repast; and the supper, which was the principal meal, as it was taken after the business of the day. I have given you pictures of some of their vessels, which will show you that some articles of their furniture were very beautiful.

4. In the early ages, the food of the Greeks was the fruits of the earth, and their drink water; the flesh of animals was introduced at a later period. This brought on the luxuries of the table, and some of the cities of



Etruscan Vases.

Greece became renowned for producing excellent cooks. The Spartans, as we have before mentioned, ate at public tables, and their chief food consisted of black broth.

5. In general, the Greeks were very fond of flesh. Their usual drink was water, either hot or cold, but most commonly the latter, which was sometimes cooled with ice. Wines were very generally used, and even perfumed wines were introduced at the tables of the rich.

6. Before the Greeks went to an entertainment, they washed and anointed themselves; when they arrived, the entertainer took them by the hand, or kissed their lips, hands, knees, or feet, as they deserved more or less respect. It must be observed concerning the guests, that men and women were never invited together.

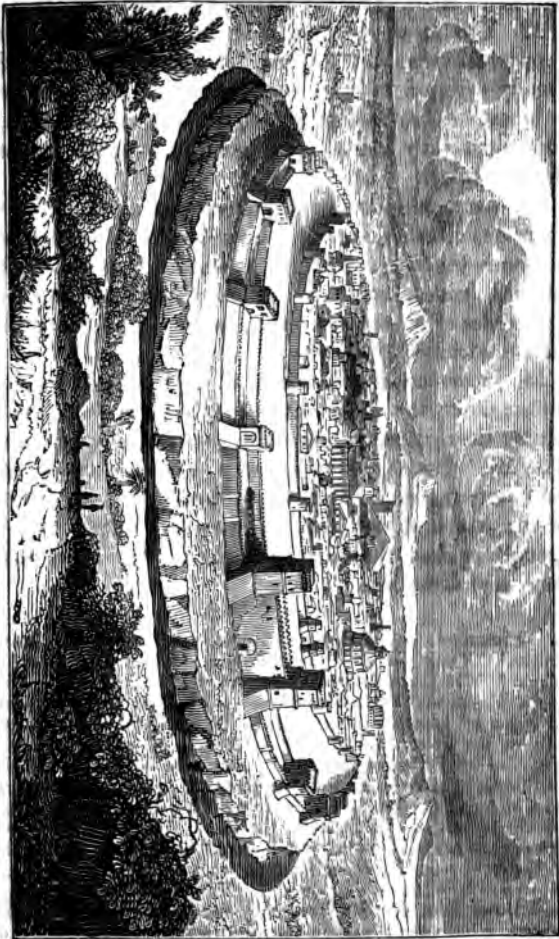
7. They sat at meals either quite upright, or leaning a little backward; but in more degenerate ages, they adopted the eastern custom of reclining on beds or couches. As soon as the dishes were set upon the table, and before the guests began to eat, a part was offered as a sort of first-fruits to the gods.

8. They had a custom similar to ours, of drinking healths, not only to those present, but to their absent friends; and at every name they poured a little wine on the ground, which was called a libation.

9. The repast being ended, a hymn was sung to the gods. After this, the company was amused with music, dancing, and mimicry, or whatever could tend to excite mirth or cheerfulness.

10. The houses of the rich were built of stone, and many of them were highly ornamented. A large part of the people, however, lived in huts made of rough stone laid in clay.

11. In war, the Greeks fought with various weapons. Some of the soldiers had bows and arrows; some had javelins or spears, which they hurled with great force and precision of aim; and some had slings, with which they



View of an ancient Walled Town.

threw stones. They also usually carried short swords, and shields for warding off the weapons of their enemies.

12. You must recollect that, in these ancient times, gunpowder was not known. In battle, the warriors usually engaged in close conflict, foot to foot, and breast to breast. They seldom gave quarter to the vanquished; and when they did so, they commonly made slaves of their prisoners.

13. As mankind were very much given to making war upon one another, it was the custom in all countries to surround the cities with high walls for defence. This practice, indeed, continued for many ages; and the principal cities of France, Germany, and many other countries, are still secured in this way.

14. In modern times, when an army attacks a city it batters down the walls with cannon-shot, or by undermining them, placing gunpowder beneath, and then setting it on fire. But in the olden times of Greece, the warriors used battering rams, consisting of heavy beams with ponderous stones at one end. These were driven by main strength against the walls, and thus, after many efforts, they were demolished.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What did the men wear among the ancient Greeks? Their shoes? Head-dress?—2. Head-dress of the women? What ornaments did they wear? The rest of their dress?—3. The meals of the Greeks?—4. The food of the Greeks in early ages? Luxuries of the table? What of the Spartans?—5. Were the Greeks fond of meat for food? What of their drink? Wine?—6. Of entertainments? Men and women?—7. How did they sit at table? How do the people of Asia sit at table? Did the Greeks adopt this Asiatic custom? What was done before beginning to eat?—8. Drinking healths? Libation?—9. What followed the repast?—10. What of the habitations of the rich? Of the poor?—11. What weapons were used by the Greeks in war?—12. What of gunpowder? How did the warriors engage one another in conflict? Were they merciful to the vanquished?—13. What was the custom regarding cities?—14. How does a modern army attack a walled city? How did the ancients destroy the walls of a city?

CHAPTER LVII. EUROPE continued.—*Philip of Macedon conquers Greece.*

1. I SHALL NOW resume the history of Greece, at the point where I left off. The reader will recollect that I had just finished speaking of the Theban war.

2. Not long after the close of that war, the states of Greece became involved in another, which was generally called the Sacred War. The people of Phocis had been sentenced, by the Amphictyonic council, to pay a heavy fine for ploughing a field which belonged to the temple of Apollo, at Delphos. Conceiving the sentence to be unjust, the Phocians resolved not to submit to it, and the people of Athens, Sparta, and Achaia, assisted them. The Thebans, Locrians, and Thessalians, took the part of the Amphictyonic council, and Philip, king of Macedon, was solicited to fight on the same side, and named general by the council.

3. The kingdom of Macedon is numbered by some historians among the states of Greece; but others consider it a separate country. Although it was founded about five hundred years before this period, it had never been very powerful till Philip mounted the throne.

4. Philip was ambitious and warlike, and he had no sooner marched his army into Greece, than he determined to make himself ruler of the whole country. The Greeks were not now so valiant as they had been; and there were no such men as Leonidas, Miltiades, or Epaminondas, to lead them to victory. The person who most strenuously opposed the designs of Philip, was Demosthenes, an Athenian. He was one of the most eloquent orators that ever lived; and his orations against Philip incited the Athenians to resist him to the utmost; it is from these orations against the Macedonian king that severe speeches have since been called *philippics*. But the Athenians and their allies were defeated at Cheronæa, in the year 338 before

the Christian era ; and thenceforward, Philip controlled the affairs of Greece till his death. Perhaps, after all, he was a better ruler than the Greeks could have found among themselves.

5. But he had many vices, and among the rest, that of drinking to excess. One day, just after he had risen from the banquet, he decided a certain lawsuit unjustly ; the losing person cried out, " I appeal from Philip drunk, to Philip sober !" The next day, when sober, he decided the other way.

6. A poor woman, who had some business with Philip, tried in vain to obtain an audience. He put her off from one day to another, saying that he had no leisure to attend to her ;—" If you have no leisure to do justice, you have no right to be king !" said the woman. The king was struck with the truth of what the woman said, and he became more attentive to the duties of his station.

7. He lived only two years after the battle of Cheronææ. There was a young nobleman named Pausanias, a captain of the guard, who had been injured by one of Philip's relations. As Philip would not punish the offender, Pausanias resolved that he himself should die. On the day of the marriage of Philip's daughter, the king was entering the public theatre, where the nuptial festivities were to be celebrated ; at this moment Pausanias rushed forth, with his sword drawn, and stabbed him to the heart ; he was himself immediately slain. The Athenians greatly rejoiced at the news of Philip's death, and all the other states of Greece likewise revolted against the power of Macedon.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the sacred war ? Cause of it ? Which way was Delphos from Athens ? Phocis ? Thessaly ? What states fought on the side of the Phocians ? What on the side of the Amphictyonic council ? On which side did Philip, king of Macedon, fight ?—3. What of Macedon ? Situation ? When was it founded ? Which way did Philip's army march from Macedon to Greece ?—4. What of Philip ? On what did he determine ? What of the

Greeks at this time? What of Demosthenes? What effect had his oratory on the Athenians? Origin of the word *philippic*? Where were they beaten? When did the battle take place? Where is Cheronæa? Direction from Thebes? Athens? Sparta? How long did Philip rule Greece?—5, 6. Relate some anecdotes of Philip. —7. What of Pausanias? Describe the death of Philip. What did the Athenians do? Other states?

---

CHAPTER LVIII. EUROPE continued.—*Conquests of Alexander the Great.*



Ancient Statue of Alexander the Great.

1. BUT the new king of Macedon, though only twenty years old, was well qualified to fill his father's place. He was Alexander, afterwards surnamed the Great. Young as he was, he had already given proofs of the valour which so soon made him conqueror of the world.

2. Alexander subdued the Grecian states in the course



of one campaign; he was then declared generalissimo of the Greeks, and undertook a war against Persia. The army which he led against that country consisted of thirty-five thousand men. He crossed the Hellespont, and marched through Asia Minor, towards Persia, but before reaching its borders, he was met by the Persian king, Darius, who had collected an immense army. Alexander defeated him, and killed many thousands of his soldiers. He then marched into Egypt, and founded the city which still bears the name of Alexandria.

3. Darius soon assembled a mightier army than before; and had now half a million of men. He advanced to battle in the midst of his troops, seated on a lofty chariot, which resembled a moving throne, and around him were his life-guards, all in splendid armour. But when the Persians saw how boldly the Macedonian horsemen advanced, they took to flight; and poor king Darius was left almost alone on his lofty chariot. He had but just time to get on horseback, and gallop away from the battle, and shortly afterwards was slain by two of his own subjects, as I have told you in the history of Persia.

4. After the victory, Alexander marched to Persepolis, which was then the capital of Persia, and a rich and magnificent city. In the royal palace, there was a gigantic statue of Xerxes, but the Macedonian soldiers overthrew it, and tumbled it upon the ground. While he remained at Persepolis, Alexander gave himself up to drunkenness and licentious pleasures. One night, at a splendid banquet, an Athenian lady persuaded him to set fire to the city, and it was accordingly burnt to the ground.

5. When Persia was completely subdued, Alexander invaded India, the country now called Hindostan. One of the kings of that country, named Porus, is said to have been seven feet and a half in height. This gigantic king led a great army against Alexander.

6. Porus was well provided with elephants, which had

been trained to rush upon the enemy, and trample them down. Alexander had no elephants, but his usual good fortune did not desert him. The army of Porus was routed, and he himself was taken prisoner, and loaded with chains.

7. In this degraded condition, the Indian king was brought into the victor's tent. Alexander gazed with wonder at the enormous stature of Porus, for although so great a conqueror, he was himself only of middle size. "How shall I treat you?" asked Alexander of his prisoner. "Like a king!" said Porus. This answer led Alexander to reflect how he himself should like to be treated, had he been in a similar situation; and he was induced to behave generously to Porus.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Who was the new king of Macedon? Of what had he given proofs?—2. After what exploit was Alexander declared generalissimo of the Greeks? What of the army which he led against Persia? Direction of Persia from Macedon? Over what sea and country did the army cross to reach Persia? Who opposed Alexander? Where did Alexander march after the battle?—3. Describe the march of Darius and his new army. What became of Darius?—4. To what place did Alexander go after his victory? Situation of Persepolis? Direction from Athens? What of the statue of Xerxes? What happened at Persepolis?—5. What country did Alexander next invade? Direction of India from Greece? Persia? What of Porus?—6. What animals had Porus in his army? Who conquered? What became of Porus?—7. Describe the meeting between Alexander and Porus.

---

## CHAPTER LIX. EUROPE continued.—*Sequel of Alexander's career.*

1. In the early part of his career, Alexander had shown many excellent and noble traits of character. But he met with such great and continual success in all his undertakings, that his heart became corrupted, and he committed many cruel actions. One of his worst deeds was the

murder of Clitus, an old officer who had fought under king Philip. He had once saved Alexander's life in battle, and on this account he was allowed to speak very freely to him.

2. One night, after drinking too much wine, Alexander began to speak of his own exploits; and he spoke more highly of them than old Clitus thought they deserved. Accordingly, he told Alexander that his father Philip had done much greater things than he had ever done. The monarch was so enraged, that he snatched a spear from one of his attendants, and gave Clitus a mortal wound. When he saw the old man's bloody corpse extended on the floor, he was naturally seized with horror, for he had murdered the preserver of his own life!

3. Alexander's remorse, however, did not last long. He was so elated by his successes against his enemies, that he fancied himself a god, the son of Jupiter Ammon; and because a philosopher, named Callisthenes, refused to worship him, he was put into an iron cage, and tormented, till he killed himself in despair.

4. After Alexander's return from India to Persia, he met with a great misfortune, in the loss of his dearest friend, Hephæstion, who died of a disease which he had contracted by excessive drinking. For three days afterwards, Alexander lay prostrate on the ground, and would take no food. At length he erected a funeral pile of spices and other precious materials, so that it was as costly as a palace would have been; and the lifeless body of Hephæstion was placed on the summit. Alexander then set fire to the pile, and stood mournfully looking on while the corpse of his friend was consumed to ashes.

5. It would have been well if Alexander had taken warning by the fate of Hephæstion; but he, too, was destined to owe his destruction to the wine-cup. While *drinking at a banquet in Babylon, he was suddenly taken ill, and died in a few days.*

6. Of a certain pirate, whom the Macedonian soldiers once took prisoner, Alexander demanded by what right he committed his robberies. "I am a robber by the same right that you are a conqueror," was the reply. "The only difference between us is, that I have but a few men, and can do but little mischief; while you have a large army, and can do a great deal!" It must be confessed that this was the chief difference between many of the barbarous conquerors of old and robbers.

7. When Alexander died, his body was deposited in a splendid coffin, at Alexandria in Egypt, and the Egyptians paid him divine honours, as if he had been the greatest possible benefactor to the world.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of Alexander? What ruined his disposition? What of the actions of Alexander? Who was Clitus?—2. Give an account of the murder of Clitus.—3. What did Alexander insist upon being called? What of Callisthenes?—4. Of Hephæstion? The cause of his death? What did Alexander do with the body of Hephæstion?—5. What caused Alexander's death? At what place did he die? Situation of Babylon? Direction from Macedon? India?—6. Tell the story of the pirate.—7. What was done when Alexander died?

---

#### CHAPTER LX. EUROPE continued.—*Greece invaded by the Gauls.*

1. WHEN Alexander lay on his death-bed, his attendants asked to whom he would bequeath the empire, which now extended from Greece to India, including a great many nations; his answer was, "To the most worthy." But there appears to have been no very worthy man among those whom he left behind him; and even if there had been, the unworthy ones would not have consented to yield him the whole power; Alexander's empire was therefore divided among thirty-three of his chief officers.

2. But the most powerful of these officers were determined to have more than their share; and in the year

312 before Christ, four of them had obtained possession of the whole. Alexander had then been dead eleven years, and all his children and relatives had been murdered by his ambitious officers.

3. The Greeks, when they heard of Alexander's death, had attempted to regain their liberty. But their struggles were unsuccessful; and the country was reduced to subjection by Cassander, who had been general of Alexander's cavalry. Cassander died in a few years; and thenceforward the history of Greece tells of nothing but crimes, and revolutions, and misfortunes.

4. In the year 279 before the Christian era, Greece was invaded by the Gauls, a barbarous people, who inhabited the country now called France. Their general's name was Brennus; and their numbers are said to have been a hundred and sixty-five thousand men. Brennus met with hardly any opposition; and marched to Delphos, intending to seize the treasures that were contained in the famous temple of Apollo. "A deity, like Apollo, does not want these treasures," said Brennus; "I am only a man, and have great need of them."

5. Accordingly, he led his barbarians towards the temple, the stately marble front of which was seen at a short distance before them. It was considered the holiest spot in Greece; and here was the mysterious oracle, from which so many wonderful prophecies were pretended to have issued. A wild shout burst from the army of the Gauls, and they were on the point of rushing forward to the temple, when suddenly a violent storm arose; the thunder roared, the wind blew furiously, and at the same moment a terrible earthquake shook the ground beneath their feet. A band of Greeks had assembled to defend the temple, and when they saw the disorder of the barbarians, they attacked them, sword in hand. It had grown so dark, too, that the Gauls could not distinguish friends from foes, so they killed *one another, and their whole army was destroyed.*

6. Such is the story which the Greek historians tell about this battle, but it is doubtless much exaggerated. This was the last great victory that the Greeks ever achieved over their enemies.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What was asked Alexander on his death-bed? His reply? How was the empire divided?—2. What took place in the year 312 before Christ? What of Alexander's children and relatives?—3. By whom was Greece subdued? Who was Cassander? What of the history of Greece after his death?—4. In what year did the Gauls invade Greece? Name of their general? What of their army? Situation of Delphos? Direction from Athens? Sparta? Thebes? What famous temple was at Delphos?—5. Describe the march towards the temple. By what were the Gauls affrighted? What of the Greeks? How were the Gauls destroyed?—6. What may be said of this victory over the Gauls?

---

## CHAPTER LXI. EUROPE continued.—*End of Grecian Independence.*

1. THE Greeks had now almost entirely lost their love of liberty, as well as the other virtues which had formerly distinguished them. In proof of this, I will relate the story of Agis, the young king of Sparta.

2. King Agis was anxious for the welfare of Sparta, and he greatly desired to restore the ancient laws which Lycurgus had enacted. But the Spartans were now vicious and cowardly; they hated the very name of Lycurgus, and resolved not to be governed by his severe laws. They therefore seized the virtuous young king, dragged him to prison, and he was condemned to death. The executioner shed tears at the moment when he was going to kill him; "Do not weep for me," said Agis, "I am happier than my murderers." A little while after Agis was killed, his mother and grandmother came to the prison to see him, for they had not heard of his death. They were led into his dungeon, and the murderers of Agis immediately strangled them both, and threw their dead bodies upon his

3. Some time after this horrible event, the Spartans had a king called Nabis. He was such a cruel monster, that Heaven seemed to have placed him in authority only for the punishment of the people's wickedness. Nabis had an image in his palace, which resembled his own wife, and was very beautiful; it was likewise clothed with magnificent garments, such as were proper for a queen to wear, but the breast and arms of the image were stuck full of sharp iron spikes; these, however, were hidden by the rich clothes.

4. When king Nabis wished to extort money from any person, he invited him to his palace, and led him up to the image, but no sooner was the stranger within reach, than the image put out its arms and squeezed him close to its breast. This was done by means of machinery, and the poor man might struggle as hard as he pleased, but he could not possibly get away from the cruel embrace of the statue. There he remained, with the iron spikes sticking into his flesh, until his agony compelled him to give Nabis as much money as he asked for.

5. When such enormities were committed by the kings of Greece, it was time that the country should be governed by other masters, and my readers will not be sorry to hear that this soon happened. One hundred and forty-six years before the Christian era, Greece submitted to the authority of Rome.

6. Thus I have given you a very brief account of ancient Greece; its history is full of interest, and instruction, and I hope you will hereafter read the whole story in some larger work than mine.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the Greeks?—2. Who was Agis? What did he desire? What of the Spartans? What did they do to Agis? Describe his death. What of the mother and grandmother of Agis?—3. What of Nabis? Describe the image.—4. What did Nabis do when he wanted to extort money from any one?—5. At what period was Greece conquered by the Romans? Situation of Rome? Direction from Greece? Persia? India?



View of Corinth, in Greece.



CHAPTER LXII. EUROPE continued.—*Modern History of Greece.*

1. FROM this time forward, the history of Greece is connected with that of other nations. The Greeks had no longer any power, even in their native country, though they were still respected on account of the poets, and historians, and sculptors, who appeared amongst them. But in course of time, the genius of the Greeks seemed to have deserted them, as well as their ancient valour, and they were then wholly despised.

2. Between three and four hundred years after the Christian era, the Roman dominions were divided into the Eastern and Western empires. The capital of the Eastern empire was Constantinople, and the territory of ancient Greece being included under this government, it was sometimes called the Greek empire. Above a thousand years elapsed, and nothing happened of such importance that it need be told in this brief history, but, in the year 1453 the Turks invaded the Eastern empire of the Romans. Greece then fell beneath their power; and during almost four centuries, the Greeks were treated by the Turks like slaves.

3. At last, in the year 1821, they rose in arms against the tyranny of the Turks; the war was continued a long time, and was carried on with the most shocking cruelty on both sides. Many people from other countries went to assist the Greeks; for the ancient renown of Greece made friends of all who were acquainted with her history.

4. The Turks are a fierce people, and they resolved not to give up the country. The Greeks, on the other hand, determined either to drive away their oppressors, or to die; but they would not have succeeded, if England, France, and Russia, had not taken their part. The fleets of these *three nations* formed a junction off the coast of Greece.

They were all under the command of the English admiral, Sir Edward Codrington, and in October, 1827, attacked a Turkish fleet of more than two hundred vessels, in the bay of Navarino.

5. The Turks were entirely beaten, their vessels were sunk or burned; and in consequence of their losses in this battle, they were unable to continue the war. Greece was therefore evacuated by the Turks, but as the Greeks were not considered entirely fit to govern themselves, a king was selected for them, by England, France, and Russia. The new king was a young man of eighteen, named Otho, son of the King of Bavaria, who was placed on the throne in the year 1833. This is the latest remarkable event in the history of Greece.



Modern Greeks; of the lower orders.

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the Greeks? For what were they respected? What happened in course of time?—2. At what time were the Roman dominions divided? Name the two parts. Situation of Constantinople? Direction from Athens? What was the Eastern empire sometimes called? What happened about 1450? Into whose power did the Greeks then fall? How were they treated?—3. What took place in 1821? Who assisted the Greeks? Why did Greece find so many friends?—4. What of the Turks? The Greeks? Who took part with Greece? Who commanded the com-

bined fleet of England, France, and Russia? In what year did they attack the Turks?—5. What of the Turks? Were they obliged to leave Greece? Who chose a king for the Greeks? His name? In what year did he come to the throne?

### CHAPTER LXIII. EUROPE continued.—*Chronology of Greece.*

	BEFORE CHRIST.
Argos founded by Inachus - - - - -	1856
Athens founded by Cecrops - - - - -	1550
Corinth founded by Sisyphus - - - - -	1520
Sparta founded by Lelex - - - - -	1516
Thebes founded by Cadmus - - - - -	1500
Amphictyonic council established - - - - -	1329
Argonautic expedition - - - - -	1281
Siege of Troy ended - - - - -	1183
Homer born - - - - -	900
Lycurgus gives laws to Sparta - - - - -	880
Solon, lawgiver of Athens - - - - -	594
Battle of Marathon - - - - -	490
Peloponnesian war begins - - - - -	431
Death of Pericles - - - - -	429
Athens taken by the Spartans - - - - -	404
Former government restored in Athens - - - - -	403
Retreat of the Ten Thousand - - - - -	400
Battle of Leuctra - - - - -	371
Death of Epaminondas - - - - -	363
Battle of Cheronæa - - - - -	338
Death of Philip, king of Macedon - - - - -	336
Thebes taken and destroyed by Alexander - - - - -	336
Death of Alexander - - - - -	323
Greece subjected by Cassander - - - - -	322
Division of Alexander's kingdom - - - - -	312
Greece invaded by the Gauls - - - - -	279
Death of Agis - - - - -	241
Greece becomes a Roman province - - - - -	146
	A. D.
The Turks conquer the Eastern empire - - - - -	1453
The Greek revolution begins - - - - -	1821
Battle of Navarino - - - - -	1827
Accession of Otho to the throne of Greece - - - - -	1833

CHAPTER LXIV. EUROPE continued.—*About Italy as it now is.*

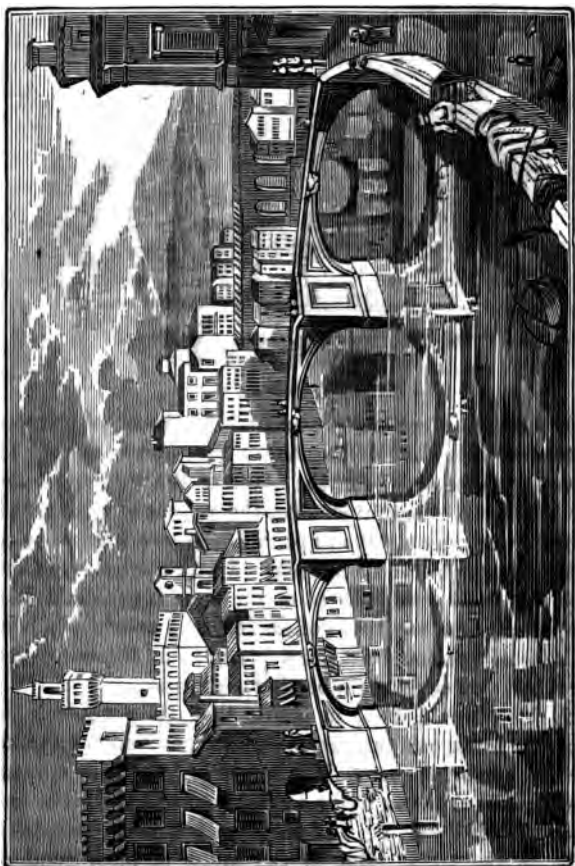


A Modern Italian Cabriolet.

1. ITALY is a celebrated country in the south of Europe, extending into the Mediterranean Sea, and is fancied to have the shape of a boot, the island of Sicily lying at the toe. It has a beautiful climate, the seasons of Spring and Summer seeming always to prevail. If you were to go to this country, you would be charmed with the beauty of the sky, and the balmy softness of the air. You would find grapes so abundant that you could buy a delicious bunch, as large as you could eat, for a penny; and if you wished for wine, you could get a bottle for sixpence.

2. You would find, in short, that Italy abounds in pleasant fruits, and in every species of production required for the comfort of man. You would find the people, men, women and children, living a great part of the time in the open air, often singing, and sometimes dancing in groups beneath the trees. But in the midst of these signs of cheerfulness, you would observe a great deal of poverty, and you would soon discover that many of the people are indolent, vicious, degraded, and sunk in superstition.

3. In the cities, many of which are large, and populous, you would see beautiful churches, palaces, and bridges, many of them built of marble. But still everything around



A View of Florence.

you would bear an aspect of decay, and impress you with the idea that Italy, with all its splendour and beauty, is an unhappy country.

4. At Florence, Rome, Naples, and other large cities, you would find collections of pictures and statues, which surpass in beauty everything of the kind in the world. These pictures are the works of famous artists, who lived in Italy within the last five hundred years, and the statues are the productions of sculptors, who lived at various periods during the last two thousand years. Some of ~~them~~ indeed are supposed to have been executed by ~~Grecian~~ artists, who lived in the time of Pericles.

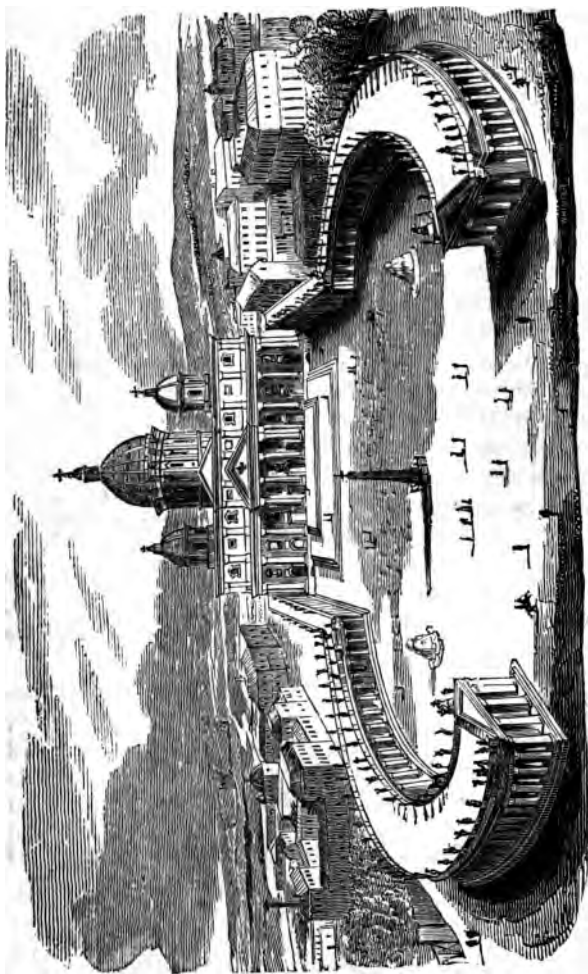
5. But in all Italy there is nothing that excites so much interest as the ruins of ancient Rome, and the associations connected with them. These, like the ancient remains of Egypt and Greece, would delight you with their beauty, and astonish you by their grandeur and magnificence.

6. The most remarkable edifice of modern times to be found in Italy, is the Church of St. Peter, at Rome, the most magnificent temple in the world. Near this is the Vatican, a famous palace inhabited by the pope, who reigns as a sovereign over Rome and the surrounding country.

7. If you were to go to Naples, you would see, at the distance of a few miles, a famous mountain called Vesuvius, from which smoke, flame, and torrents of melted lava, have occasionally issued for ages.

8. If you were to go to Sicily, you would behold another volcanic mountain called Etna, which also pours out, from time to time, immense volumes of smoke, fire, and lava. Yet on the sides of this mountain many people dwell; and here you will find rich vineyards, beautiful gardens, and groves of figs, and oranges, and olives: and at its foot is a large and handsome city called Catania.

9. Having visited Italy, you may remember with admiration the majestic ruins of Rome, the marble palaces of Florence and Naples, but you would not wish to live in a country where even these splendid edifices oppress the heart with gloom. You would much rather live among the



The great Church of St. Peter, at Rome.

cheerful and thriving villages and towns of our own country. The truth is, that Italy has been badly governed for ages, and the people have become indolent and vicious; but let us hope that they will yet become more worthy of the beautiful country they inhabit.



Sicilians.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What is Italy? Its shape? Situation of Sicily? Climate of Italy? What of the air and sky in Italy? Of grapes? Wine?—2. Fruits? Other productions? The people? What would you discover after examining the people of Italy carefully?—3. What of the cities?—4. Of pictures and statues?—5. Of the ruins of Rome?—6. Of St. Peter's? The Vatican? The pope?—7. Of Vesuvius?—8. Of Etna?—9. With what feelings would you return home after visiting Italy?

---

## CHAPTER LXV. EUROPE continued.—*Founding Rome by Romulus. Its early State.*

1. I SHALL now proceed to tell you the history of Rome, the most celebrated empire of antiquity. Like the early history of all countries, it abounds in tales of bloodshed, injustice, and crime. Over such horrid scenes I should be



glad to draw a veil ; but these things have really happened, and it is the duty of a faithful story-teller to hide nothing which is necessary to give a true picture of what he undertakes to exhibit.

2. The famous city of Rome stands on the river Tiber, in Italy, about sixteen miles from the sea. It is supposed to have been founded by Romulus, in the year 753 before Christ. Romulus was the captain of about three thousand banditti, or outlaws, who built some huts on a hill called the Palatine, and enclosed them with a wall. This was the origin of the most famous city the world ever saw.

3. It is said that this wall was so low, that Remus, the brother of Romulus, leaped over it. "Do you call this the wall of a city?" cried he, contemptuously. Romulus was so enraged, that he struck his brother dead ; and this was the first blood that bedewed the walls of Rome.

4. When Romulus and his fellow robbers were comfortably settled in their new houses, they found themselves in want of wives. At this time, Italy was inhabited by many rude tribes, and among these were the Sabines, who lived in the neighbourhood of Rome. These would not allow their young women to marry the Romans ; but Romulus contrived a scheme to get wives by force.

5. He invited the whole Sabine people to witness some games and sports. Accordingly, the Sabines came ; and, as they suspected no mischief, they brought their wives and daughters with them. At first, the Sabines were highly delighted with the feats of strength and agility which were performed by the Romans to entertain them ; but, in a little while, Romulus gave a signal, and all his men drew their swords, and rushed among the peaceable spectators. The Sabines were of course taken by surprise, and could make no resistance. Each of the Romans seized one of the women, and carried her away, and made her his wife.

6. This outrageous act of violence caused a war between

the Romans and Sabines. The latter mustered a large army, and would probably have exterminated Romulus and his banditti; but when they were about to engage in battle, the Sabine women rushed into the field, and besought the two hostile parties to make peace. They said that whichever side might gain the victory, it would bring nothing but sorrow to them; for, if the Sabines should conquer, their husbands would lose their lives; or if the Romans should win the day, their kindred would perish. Both parties were much moved by these entreaties; the Sabines saw that the women had become attached to the Romans, and therefore thought it would be a pity to separate them, even if it could be done without bloodshed. In short, the matter ended peaceably, and an alliance, or friendly treaty, was formed.

7. The first government of Rome consisted of a king and senate. Romulus was chosen king, and reigned thirty-seven years. There are different accounts of the way in which his reign terminated.

8. Some historians pretend that, while Romulus sat in the senate-house, giving wise instructions in regard to matters of state, the hall was suddenly darkened by an eclipse of the sun. When the sun shone out again, the chair of Romulus was perceived to be empty; and it was said he had been taken up into heaven. Others say that Romulus attempted to make himself absolute, and that therefore the senators pulled him down from his chair of state and tore him in pieces. This story appears more probable than the former; at all events, king Romulus suddenly disappeared, and was never seen again in the city which he had founded.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the empire of Rome? Of its history? —2. On what river is Rome? How far is it from the sea? At what time, and by whom was it founded? Who was Romulus? What did the outlaws do? The origin of Rome? —3. What happened between Romulus and Remus? —4. Of what did Romulus

and his men feel the want? What of the Sabines?—5. Give an account of the carrying off of the Sabine women.—6. What did this act cause? How was the war prevented? What did the wives of the Romans say? What effect had their entreaties?—7. What of the first government of Rome? Who was chosen king, and how long did he reign?—8. What do some historians pretend? What do others say?

---

CHAPTER LXVI. EUROPE continued.—*Battle of the Horatii and Curiatii.*

1. THE second king of Rome was Numa Pompilius, a wise and good king, and a great lover of peace. He reigned forty-three years, and made many excellent laws, and instructed his people in agriculture and other useful arts.

2. The peaceful Numa was succeeded by Tullus Hostilius, who was a warlike monarch. During his reign the Romans engaged in hostilities with the Albans, who inhabited a neighbouring city.

3. It was agreed that the war should be decided by a battle between three champions on each side. In the army of the Albans there were three brothers, each named Curiatius; and in the Roman army there were likewise three, by the name of Horatius.

4. These Horatii and Curiatii were fixed upon as the champions. They fought in an open plain; and on each side stood the ranks of armed warriors, with their swords sheathed, anxiously watching the combat.

5. At first it seemed as if the Curiatii were about to gain the victory: it is true they were all three wounded; but two of the Horatii lay dead upon the field. The other Horatius was still unhurt. He appeared determined not to perish like his two brothers; for he was seen to turn and flee. At the flight of their champion, the Romans *groaned* with shame and despair; for if he should lose the *battle*, they would all be made slaves.

6. The three Curiatii pursued the fugitive, but their wounds had rendered them feeble. They staggered along, one behind the other, so that they were separated by considerable distances. This was what Horatius desired. Though he could not have beaten all three together, he was more than a match for them singly.

7. He now turned fiercely upon the foremost, and slew him; then he encountered the second, and smote him dead in a moment; the third met with the same fate. The Alban army now turned pale, and dropped their weapons on the field, for they had lost their freedom.

8. The exulting Romans greeted Horatius with shouts of triumph, and he returned towards Rome amid a throng of his countrymen, all of whom hailed him as their benefactor. But as he entered the city, he met a young woman wringing her hands in an agony of grief. She was his sister, and in love with one of the Curiatii; when she saw Horatius, she shrieked aloud, and reproached him bitterly for having slain her lover.

9. The victor still held the bloody sword with which he had killed the three Alban champions. His heart was still fierce with the frenzy of the combat: he could not bear that his sister should bewail one of his dead enemies, instead of her two dead brothers, nor that she should darken his triumph with her reproaches; and, in the passion of the moment, he stabbed her to the heart.

10. Horatius was condemned to die for this dreadful crime; though he was afterwards pardoned, because his valour had won for Rome such a great deliverance. But the disgrace of his guilt was far more than the honour of his victory.

QUESTIONS. 1. Who was the second king of Rome?—2. What of Tullus Hostilius?—3. How was the war between the Romans and Albans to be decided? Who were the Curiatii?—4, 5. Describe the battle between these two parties. Who fled from the battle?—6. What did the three Curiatii do?

What of Horatius?—7. What was the fate of the Curiatii?—8. How was Horatius greeted? What of his sister?—9. Why did Horatius kill her?—10. What of Horatius? Why was he pardoned.

---

CHAPTER LXVII. EUROPE continued.—*From the reign of Ancus Martius till the expulsion of the Kings.*

1. AFTER the death of Tullus Hostilius, the Romans elected Ancus Martius to be king. He was succeeded by Tarquin the Elder, whose father had been a rich merchant. The next king was Servius Tullius. When Servius had reigned forty-four years, he was murdered by Tarquin, his son-in-law, who was ambitious of being king.

2. Tullia, the wife of Tarquin, and daughter of Servius, rejoiced at her father's death, for she wished to be queen. She rode out in her chariot in order to congratulate her wicked husband, and in one of the streets, through which the chariot was to pass, lay the dead body of the poor old king. The charioteer saw it, and was desirous of turning back; "Drive on!" cried the wicked Tullia. He did so; and the street being narrow, the chariot passed directly over the murdered king. But Tullia rode on without remorse, although the wheels were stained with her father's blood.

3. Her husband now ascended the throne, and was called Tarquin the Proud. The Romans abhorred him, for he was a hateful tyrant. Several almost incredible stories are told respecting his reign.

4. One day, it is said, a woman of singular aspect entered the king's presence, bringing nine large books in her arms. No one knew whence she came, nor what was contained in her books. She requested the king to buy them; but the price was so high, that Tarquin refused, especially as he did not know what the books were about.

5. The unknown woman went away and burnt three of her books. She then came back, and again offered the

remaining ones to Tarquin ; but she demanded as much money for the six as she had before asked for the whole nine, and Tarquin of course refused to buy them.

6. The woman went away a second time, but, shortly afterwards, she was again seen entering the palace. She had now only three volumes left, and these she offered to the king at the same price which she had before asked for the whole nine.

7. There was something so strange and mysterious in all this, that Tarquin resolved to purchase them. She put the three volumes into his hands, and immediately disappeared.



A Sibyl.

8. The books were found to be the oracles of a sibyl, or prophetess. They were therefore looked upon with superstitious reverence, and were preserved in Rome during many ages. In all difficult and perplexing cases, the rulers looked into these old volumes, and read, as they supposed, the secrets of their country's fate.

9. The ~~above~~ story is no doubt a fable ; and so also is that of the ~~discovery~~ of a man's head, while the workmen were digging the foundation of the temple of Jupiter. Yet the Romans firmly believed that a human head was

found there under the earth, and that it looked as fresh as if just cut off.

10. When Tarquin the Proud had reigned more than twenty years, he and his family were driven out of Rome by the people. This event was brought about by the wickedness of his son Sextus, whose conduct had caused Lucretia, a noble Roman lady, to commit suicide. The expulsion of the Tarquins took place in the year 509 before the Christian era. The government was now entrusted to two magistrates called consuls, who were afterwards chosen every year. Brutus and Collatinus were the first.

11. Brutus gave a terrible example of his justice and patriotism. His two sons had engaged in a conspiracy to make Tarquin king again. Brutus, before whom they were brought to trial, condemned them both to death, and had them executed in his presence.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Who was king after Tullus Hostilius? Who next? By whom was Servius Tullius killed?—2. What of Tullia? Describe her wicked act.—3. What was Tarquin called? What of him?—4. Relate the story of the sibyl.—9. Of the human head.—10. How long did Tarquin reign? What of him and his family? Of Sextus? What took place 509 years before Christ? How long from the founding of Rome to the fall of her last king? What of the government of Rome after the expulsion of the Tarquins? Name the first consuls.—11. What of Brutus and his sons?



A Roman Charioteer.

CHAPTER LXVIII. EUROPE continued.—*The Story of Coriolanus.*

1. ACTS of heroism were common among the Romans in those days. A young man, named Mutius Cordus, who had gained great credit for his fortitude, was taken prisoner in an attempt to kill Porsena, king of Etruria, or Tuscany, who was at war with Rome, and for this Porsena threatened him with torture. A fire was burning close beside him at the time, and he immediately put his right hand into the midst of the flames, and held it there till it was burnt off. He then told Porsena that three hundred others had sworn to take his life, which so intimidated the king, that he set Mutius at liberty, and made peace with the Romans. Mutius received the name of *Scævola*, or “left-handed,” from this exploit.

2. Almost from the first foundation of Rome, the inhabitants had been divided into two classes; one called patricians, and the other plebeians. The senate and most of the rich men were included among the patricians, and the consuls were also chosen from this class.

3. Thus the patricians had nearly all the power in their own hands, and this caused frequent quarrels between them and the common people, or plebeians. At length it was ordained that five magistrates, called tribunes of the people, should be annually chosen by the plebeians.

4. These tribunes greatly reduced the power of the patricians, and were therefore hated by them. Coriolanus, a valiant, but proud patrician, endeavoured to have the office of the tribunes abolished, but they were more powerful than he, and succeeded in procuring his banishment. Coriolanus left the city, and went to the territories of the Volsci, who were bitter enemies of the Romans. There he gathered a large army, and advanced to besiege Rome. *His countrymen were greatly alarmed when they*



heard that the banished Coriolanus was returning so soon, and in so terrible a manner.



A Roman Tribune.

5. They, therefore, sent an embassy to meet him, consisting of the oldest senators: but these venerable men could make no impression on Coriolanus. Next came an embassy of priests; but they met with no better success; Coriolanus still marched onward, and pitched his tent within a short distance of the walls of Rome. He was gazing towards the city, and planning an attack for the next day, when a third embassy appeared. It was a mournful procession of Roman ladies.

6. At their head walked Veturia, who was the mother of Coriolanus; and Volumnia, his wife, was also there, leading his children by the hand. When they drew near, his mother knelt down at his feet, and besought him not to be the ruin of his native city. Coriolanus strove to resist her entreaties, as he had resisted those of the senators and priests; but though his heart had been proud and stubborn against them, it was not so against his mother. "Mother," cried he, "I yield! You have saved Rome, *but you have destroyed your son!*" And so it proved;

for the Volsci were enraged at his retreat from Rome, and they murdered him on his return to Antium, their capital.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Relate the anecdote of Mutius Scaevola.—  
2. Into what two classes were the Romans divided? What of the class of the patricians? Who were the plebeians?—3. Cause of the quarrels between the patricians and plebeians? From which class were the tribunes chosen?—4. What of the tribunes?—  
5. Tell the story of Coriolanus. His fate?

---

### CHAPTER LXIX. EUROPE continued.—*Rome invaded by the Gauls. The first Punic War.*

1. In process of time, the Roman government underwent various changes. The people became more powerful, and the prosperity of Rome increased, both at home and abroad.

2. But in the year 389 before Christ, a great calamity befell the city; it was taken by an army of Gauls, inhabitants of the country now called France. When Brennus, their general, had entered Rome, he marched with his soldiers to the senate-house.

3. There he beheld an assemblage of gray-bearded senators, seated in a noble hall, on chairs of ivory, each holding an ivory staff in his hand. These brave old men, though they could make no resistance, considered it unworthy of them to flee from the invaders. The Gauls were, at first, awe-struck by their venerable aspect; but, at last, one of the soldiers pulled the long gray beard of an aged senator, named Papirius, who struck him a blow with his staff. The Gauls immediately massacred Papirius and the other senators, and set fire to the city; and almost the whole of it was reduced to ashes. You must bear in mind that at this time Rome had become an immense city; it contained many magnificent edifices, the most splendid of which was called the Capitol.

4. All the bravest of the Romans assembled there, and resolved to defend it to the last; yet the enemy had nearly got possession of it in the night; but when they drew near the gate, they disturbed a flock of geese that were kept in a temple hard by, whose cackling aroused the sentinels, and the Gauls were disappointed. In consequence of this fortunate event, a goose was thenceforth highly honoured by the Romans; and I am not sure but what they thought it a crime to have roast goose for dinner.

5. The Gauls were soon after vanquished by Camillus, a brave and patriotic Roman. It is said that not a single man returned to their own country, to tell the fate of his companions.

6. The Romans were almost continually at war; their valour and discipline generally rendered them successful, but sometimes they met with misfortunes. In a war with the Samnites, a Roman army was captured, and forced to pass under the yoke, which was a sign of subjection, and was considered the greatest possible ignominy.

7. But, at length, all the other states and kingdoms of Italy were reduced under the Roman power. Afterwards, the most formidable enemy of Rome was Carthage. This was a powerful city on the African coast, situated nearly south of Rome, across the Mediterranean Sea, at the distance of about four hundred miles, near where Tunis now stands.

8. The wars between Rome and Carthage were called the Punic wars. The first began in the year 264 before Christ, and lasted twenty-three years. Many battles were fought on land, and some by sea. The Carthaginians were a cruel people; and whenever their generals lost a battle, they were crucified. Regulus, a Roman general, was taken by them, and underwent horrible torments; they cut off his eyelids, and then exposed his naked eyes to the

burning sun : he was afterwards thrust into a barrel, the inner sides of which were set with iron spikes, where he remained till he expired.

9. A peace was at last concluded between Rome and Carthage. The doors of the temple of Janus, at Rome, had not been shut for five hundred years ; for they always stood open while the Romans were at war. But now they were closed and barred ; for Rome was at peace with all the world.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Did Rome continue to increase in power ?—2. What befell the city 389 years before Christ ?—3. What of Brennus ? What happened in the senate-house ? What of the size of Rome at this time ?—4. Of the Capitol ? How was the Capitol saved ?—5. Who conquered the Gauls ?—6. What of the Romans ? What of the war with the Samnites ?—7. What of the kingdoms of Italy ? Situation of Carthage ? How far was it from Rome ? Direction from Rome ? Athens ? Sparta ?—8. When did the first Punic war begin ? How long did it last ? What of the Carthaginians ? Of Regulus ?—9. Of the temple of Janus ? How long had the doors been open ? Why were they now closed ? When was the temple of Janus open ? When shut ?

---

## CHAPTER LXX. EUROPE continued.—*Second and third Punic Wars.*

1. THE doors of the temple of Janus did not long remain closed ; for a war speedily broke out between the Romans and a tribe of Gauls, which ended in the defeat of the latter.

2. In the year 218 before the Christian era, another war with Carthage began, which was called the second Punic war. The Carthaginians were commanded by Hannibal, who proved himself one of the greatest generals that ever lived.

3. Hannibal transported his army across the Mediterranean Sea to Spain, and thence marched toward Italy. In his progress it was necessary that he should cross the Alps. The *summits* of these mountains are many thousand

feet in height, and were covered with ice and snow ; in some places Hannibal had to cut a passage through the solid rock.



Passage of the Alps, by Hannibal.

4. After crossing these mountains, several battles were won by the Carthaginians. At length, the two Roman consuls, with a large army, encountered Hannibal and his soldiers at Cannæ. Here the Romans were defeated with dreadful slaughter ; one of the consuls fled ; the other was slain, and fifty thousand men were left dead on the field.

5. Rome had now no army to protect it ; and if Hannibal had marched thither immediately, it is probable that he might have taken the city ; but he delayed too long, and the Romans had time to make preparations to defend themselves.

6. Hannibal never won such another victory as that at *Cannæ*, for the Romans soon enlisted new armies, and

were more successful than before. After some years, Scipio, their best general, was sent to Africa, in order to attack Carthage; and Hannibal, after having had possession of a large part of Italy for seventeen years, was obliged to return to defend his country. A battle was fought between him and Scipio at Zama. The Carthaginians had a multitude of elephants. These animals were wounded by the Roman darts, and the pain made them rush through the field, trampling down whole ranks of Hannibal's army. The Carthaginians were entirely defeated, and Hannibal himself barely escaped amid the rout and confusion. This battle put an end to the second Punic war.

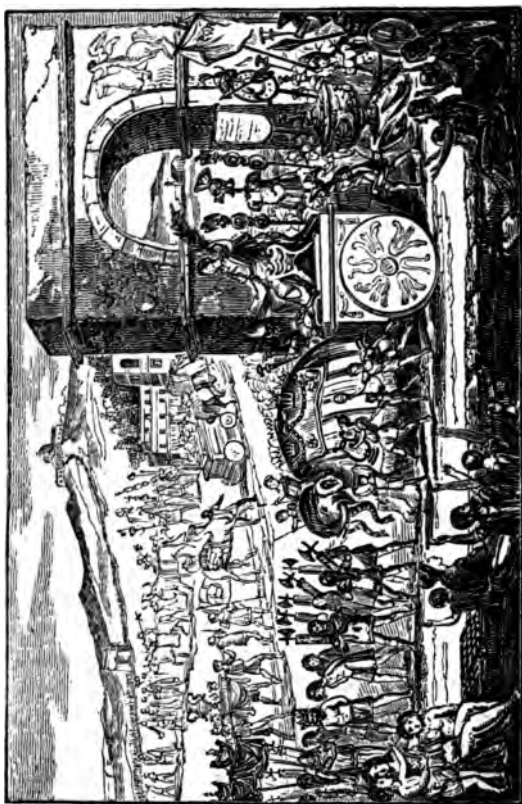
7. But a third war between Rome and Carthage broke out in about fifty years; for the Romans had determined on the entire destruction of their rivals. Their army was commanded by another Scipio, who was as valiant as the first; but the Carthaginians had no longer a Hannibal. They were defeated, Carthage was set on fire, and continued to burn during seventeen days, and many of the inhabitants perished in the flames. This happened in the year 146 before the Christian era.

8. Scipio returned to Rome, and was rewarded with a triumph. As this was the highest honour that a Roman general could attain, and as such rewards were often given to successful commanders, I will describe, in the next chapter, what the triumph was.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What war now broke out? Which side was victorious?—2. When did the second Punic war begin? By whom were the Carthaginians led?—3. What did Hannibal do? How did his army cross the Alps?—4. Describe the battle of Cannæ.—5. What of Rome at this time?—6. Of Scipio? Where was a battle fought? What of elephants?—Which side was defeated? What of Hannibal?—7. Who led the Romans in the third Punic war? What of the Carthaginians? When was Carthage burnt?—8. How was Scipio rewarded?

CHAPTER LXXI. EUROPE continued.—*A Roman Triumph.*



Procession at a Roman Triumph.

1. THE victorious general, on reaching Rome, stopped at the Campus Martius, which was a plain on the outside of the city, and from thence was escorted to the Capitol by a grand procession.

2. First came a band of musicians, playing their loudest

strains on various instruments. Then followed oxen for sacrifice; their horns were gilded, and garlands were wreathed around their heads.

3. The spoils of the vanquished were next borne along, the crown or the armour of the enemy's general or king being exalted high above the rest; and when Titus entered Rome in triumph, after his conquest of Jerusalem, which I have already told you of, the golden candlesticks, the ark of the covenant, and the rest of the spoils of the temple, were carried before him. During the wars against Antiochus, Mithridates, and other eastern monarchs, camels, elephants, lions, tigers, and other wild animals, were frequently led in the procession, or appeared in the amphitheatre, at the games with which the rejoicings for victory were usually concluded.

4. After the spoils appeared a melancholy band, composed of the prisoners who had been taken, often including kings, their wives and children, all loaded with heavy chains, who, after being thus paraded amidst the insults of the populace, were mercilessly put to death, or lingered out the remainder of their days in a state of bondage worse than death itself; for they were commonly delivered over to those of the Romans who had themselves lost friends or relatives in the war, by whom they were treated with the most shocking barbarity.

5. Behind the sad troop came another loud band of music, drowning the groans of the captives with the uproar of a hundred instruments. There were likewise dancers, and buffoons in grotesque dresses.

6. Then came a splendid chariot, drawn generally by horses, but sometimes by other animals, as camels or elephants. In this chariot stood the victorious general, dressed in a purple robe, covered with gold embroidery; his face was painted with vermilion, he had a crown of laurel on his head, and in his right hand he held an ivory sceptre, with a golden eagle on the top.



7. Around the chariot were usually his friends and relatives, clothed in white, and next came the consuls and the senate, in their robes of ceremony.

8. Last in the procession marched the victorious army, having their helmets wreathed with laurel, the standard-bearers carrying eagles of silver gilt, instead of banners. As they moved onward, they sang hymns in praise of their general, all the Roman citizens joining their voices in the chorus. In this manner, the procession passed through the streets of Rome, and reached the Capitol.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Where was the Campus Martius? What of the procession?—2. What came first? What was done with the oxen?—3. With what were the cars laden?—4. Describe the appearance and treatment of the captives.—5. What of musicians and dancers?—6. Describe the victor.—7. Who followed the chariot?—8. Describe the victorious army.

---

## CHAPTER LXXII. EUROPE continued.—*Sylla and Marius.*



Remains of a Roman Castle in Algiers.

1. THE Romans still continued to make conquests; and, not long after the ruin of Carthage, the whole of Spain became a province of Rome. They likewise made war on

Numidia, a country of Africa, now called Algiers. Jugurtha, the Numidian king, was brought prisoner to Rome, and starved to death in a dungeon.

2. Next followed the Social War, which began in the year 91 before Christ. This war was called Social, because it was between the Romans and the neighbouring states of Italy, who had been in alliance with them. The Romans were at length victorious. Then there was a war with Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor, who was not entirely vanquished till forty years afterwards.

3. In the course of these wars, two Roman commanders acquired great renown. One was named Marius, and the other Sylla. Marius was merely a rude and daring soldier; Sylla was a good soldier, and also a man of great eloquence, and of polished manners. These two generals became so great and powerful, that a civil war ensued between them. I will relate an incident, in order to show the horrors of this war.

4. One of Sylla's soldiers had killed another that fought for Marius, and he began to strip him of his armour; but on taking off the helmet which had concealed the dead man's face, he saw that it was his own brother. The wretched survivor placed the body on a funeral pile, and then killed himself.

5. In the outset of the struggle with Sylla, Marius was defeated; but he afterwards gained possession of Rome, and resolved to put to death every person that was not friendly to his cause; senators and other distinguished men were publicly murdered, and dead bodies were seen everywhere about the streets. But Marius could not escape the misery which his wickedness deserved; and he was so tortured by remorse, that he contracted a habit of drinking immoderately, and this brought on a fever, of which he died.

6. After the death of Marius, Sylla returned to Rome at the head of a large army. He declared himself dictator;

and his word then became the sole law of Rome. Like Marius, he determined to massacre all his enemies, and as fast as they were killed, their bloody heads were brought to him. After a while, Sylla suddenly resigned his power ; everybody was surprised at this, but nobody lamented it ; nor were there any mourners when this wicked man died, which happened soon after.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of the Romans ? Of Spain ? Situation of Numidia ? Direction from Rome ? Carthage ? What of it ? Its king ?——2. When did the Social War begin ? Who was Mithridates ? Where was Pontus ? Direction from Rome ? Carthage ?——3. What of the Roman commanders ? Marius ? Sylla ? What war broke out in Rome ?——4. Relate a horrid incident in this war.——5. What did Marius do ? What was his fate ?——6. What did Sylla do ? Give an account of his proceedings. What act of Sylla's surprised everybody ?

---

### CHAPTER LXXIII. EUROPE continued.—*Cneius Pompey and Julius Cæsar.*

1. If the Roman people had loved liberty as well as they once did, they never would have borne the tyranny of Sylla and Marius. But they had become addicted to luxury, by the riches which they had acquired from their conquests in all parts of the world.

2. Owing to their continual wars, they had also accustomed themselves to consider successful warriors as the greatest men on earth. Soldiers blindly obey their leaders, and all the Roman people felt like soldiers. Thus the very same causes which rendered the Romans so formidable to their enemies, made them liable to be enslaved by any great general ambitious of supreme power. And such a general soon appeared.

3. After the death of Sylla and Marius, the two most *valiant and distinguished* warriors were Pompey and

Cæsar. Pompey was the eldest; he had grown famous by vanquishing Mithridates, and by many other victories, for he had conquered fifteen kingdoms, and taken eight hundred cities. His rival was Julius Cæsar, who had fought in Gaul, Germany, and Britain, and was said to have conquered three millions of men, and killed one million.

4. At last, like Sylla and Marius, these two generals became so great and powerful, that the world was no longer wide enough for them both. They each collected large armies, in which all the Roman soldiers were enlisted, on one side or the other.

5. They encountered each other at Pharsalia, in Thessaly. Part of Pompey's army consisted of a body of the young Roman nobility. Cæsar ordered his rough and weather-beaten soldiers to aim their blows right at the faces of their enemies, and the latter were so afraid of being thus disfigured, that they immediately turned and fled. A complete victory was gained by Cæsar.

6. Pompey made his escape into Egypt, but was there murdered. His head was cut off and brought to Cæsar, who turned aside his eyes from the bloody spectacle, and wept to think that so mighty a warrior had met with so sad a fate.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the Roman people?—2. What was the consequence of continual war?—3. What generals appeared after Marius and Sylla? What had Pompey done? What of Pompey's rival, Julius Cæsar?—4. What did these great generals do?—5. Where was a battle fought? What of Pompey's army? By what means did Cæsar vanquish the followers of Pompey?—6. To what country did Pompey escape? Why did Cæsar weep at his death?

---

CHAPTER LXXIV. EUROPE continued.—*Cæsar usurps the Supreme Power.*

1. WHEN the Roman senate heard of Cæsar's victory, they proclaimed a solemn thanksgiving to the gods. Supreme power was granted him for life, with the title of dictator, and his person was declared sacred and inviolable.

2. His statue was placed among those of gods and heroes in the Capitol. It stood next to that of Jupiter, and bore this imposing inscription:—

“THE STATUE OF CÆSAR THE DEMIGOD.”

This proves that the Romans were already the worst of slaves, when they thus deified a mortal man.

3. Cæsar had now but one other wish to gratify. He desired to bear the name of king. He endeavoured to gain the good-will of the soldiers and people, in order that they might give him the title; and for this purpose he spent immense sums in entertainments and magnificent spectacles.

4. On one occasion, he made a feast for the whole Roman people. Twenty-two thousand tables were set out in the streets of Rome: all sorts of delicious food and drink were heaped upon them; and the meanest beggar was at liberty to sit down and eat as much as he liked.

5. Most of the Romans had now lost the noble spirit which had animated their forefathers, and were willing to be governed by any man who would feed them with delicacies, and amuse them with splendid shows, as Cæsar did. It must be owned, also, that Cæsar had many noble and amiable qualities.

6. The people, therefore, forgot that he had destroyed the liberties of his country. They loved to behold him, at the public spectacles and entertainments, sitting on a gilded chair of state, with a golden crown upon his head.

7. But there were a few Romans who loved liberty for *its own sake*; and there were others, also, who hated Cæsar, because he had wronged them, or because he was

more powerful than they. These two parties formed a conspiracy to kill him.

8. The two chief conspirators were Brutus and Cassius. Brutus loved Cæsar, and was beloved by him; still he felt bound to sacrifice his friend, that his country might be free. Cassius formed the same resolution; but it was chiefly because he was envious of Cæsar's greatness. Sixty others were engaged in the plot. Most conspirators endeavour to do their work in secrecy and at midnight; but it was resolved that the blood of Cæsar should be shed in broad daylight, and in the great hall of the senate-house.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What did the Romans do after Cæsar's victory?—2. What of Cæsar's statue?—3. What did this great conqueror now desire? What did he do to obtain his wish?—4. Describe the feast.—5. State of the Romans.—6. What did they like to see?—7. By whom was a conspiracy formed to kill Cæsar?—8. Who were Brutus and Cassius? Why did they each determine to kill Cæsar? How was the conspiracy carried on?

---

## CHAPTER LXXV. EUROPE continued.—*Assassination of Julius Cæsar.*

1. On the appointed morning, Cæsar set forth from his mansion, surrounded by a great throng of flatterers and false friends. As he came down the steps of the portal, Artemidorus, a soothsayer, pressed through the crowd, and put a paper into his hand, containing an account of the whole plot, and if Cæsar had read it, he would have saved his life; but he gave it to one of his secretaries, and walked onward.

2. As Cæsar passed through the streets of Rome, he looked round at the crowd of obsequious senators, and listened to the shouts of the multitude. He felt that he was the most exalted man in the world; but his heart was not at ease; for he also felt that he had enslaved his country.

3. The proud procession ascended the steps of the senate-house, and passed into the hall. Along the sides of this hall were ranged the statues of many famous Romans, and among them stood the marble image of Pompey, whose bloody head had been brought to Cæsar. Just as Cæsar was passing in front of Pompey's statue, Metellus Cimber, one of the conspirators, presented a petition to him, and knelt down, as if to urge his prayer, at the same time taking hold of his robe. This was the signal for the attack.

4. Casca, who was behind Cæsar, drew a dagger, and stabbed him in the shoulder. "Wretch! what doest thou?" cried Cæsar, snatching the weapon. The other conspirators now rushed upon him; but he defended himself with the valour that he had shown in a hundred battles.

5. Brutus then pressed forward, and struck him with his dagger; and when Cæsar saw that the hand of Brutus was raised against his life, he made no more resistance. "And thou, too, Brutus!" he said, with one reproachful look; then covering his head with his mantle, that his enemies might not behold the death-pang in his face, he fell down at the pedestal of Pompey's statue, and expired, having received twenty-three wounds.

6. The conspirators dipped their weapons in the blood that flowed upon the pavement. Brutus raised his dagger aloft, and addressing himself to Cicero, the illustrious orator and patriot, who was present as a senator, exclaimed,—  
"Rejoice, father of our country, for Rome is free!"

7. But the Romans were too degenerate to wish for their ancient liberties; and as they merely exchanged one tyrant for another, Cæsar was sacrificed in vain.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Describe Cæsar's departure from his house. What happened as he came down the steps?—2. What did he see on looking around him? How did he feel?—3. To what place did the procession march? What were ranged around the

hall? What happened as Cæsar was passing the statue of Pompey? —4. Who first stabbed him? How did he defend himself? —5. Who gave Cæsar a blow? How did he receive it? —6. Describe his death. What did Brutus and the conspirators now do? —7. Why did Cæsar die in vain?

---

CHAPTER LXXVI. EUROPE continued.—*Consequences of Cæsar's Death.*

1. THE death of Cæsar took place forty-four years before the Christian era. The affairs of Rome were thrown into great confusion by it, and Cæsar's friends found little difficulty in persuading the people that he had been unjustly slain.

2. Brutus, Cassius, and the other conspirators, were compelled to flee from the city. Three men then usurped the government, and were called triumvirs, or the triumvirate. Their names were Mark Antony, Lepidus, and Octavius; the latter was Cæsar's nephew, and had been his adopted son.

3. The triumvirate resolved to secure themselves in power, by murdering all who were opposed to them. They made a list of three hundred senators, and more than two thousand others, and offered rewards for killing them, and exulted when the heads of their victims were laid at their feet.

4. One of these cruel men presented the head of his own brother to his colleagues, and another brought his uncle's head. Neither friend, relative, nor patriot, was spared, if he was suspected of being opposed to the triumvirate.

5. In the mean time, Brutus and Cassius had collected an army of a hundred thousand men in Greece. Mark Antony and Octavius marched against them; and a battle was fought at Philippi. Brutus and Cassius were defeated, and both committed suicide.

6. The *triumvirate* had now got all the power into their



own hands, but they soon quarrelled among themselves. Lepidus was turned out of office, and banished; Mark Antony and Octavius then made war upon one another, like Marius and Sylla, and Pompey and Cæsar.

7. The good fortune of Octavius gave him the victory, and Antony killed himself with his own sword, as I have related in the history of Egypt. Octavius had no longer any rivals, and was now sole master of Rome and its dominions; he assumed the title of emperor, to which he added Augustus Cæsar, and by these names he is best known.

8. In addition to several other titles, the senate gave him that of Pater Patriæ, or Father of his Country. This was merely a piece of flattery; yet there were now so few good men in Rome, that perhaps Octavius made a better use of his power than many others would have done.

9. His reign from this time was peaceable and quiet, and offers few events that need be recorded in this brief history. Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and other celebrated poets, lived at this time, and were patronized by the emperor, and in their works consists the great glory of his reign.

10. Octavius, or, as he is usually called, Augustus Cæsar, reigned forty-one years, and died at the age of seventy-six, in the year 14 after the birth of Christ. It was this emperor who "commanded all the world to be taxed," in consequence of which Joseph and the Virgin Mary repaired to Bethlehem, where our blessed Lord and Saviour was born.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. In what year did Cæsar's death take place? What of Rome? The friends of Cæsar?—2. Who were obliged to fly from the city? By whom was Rome now governed? Who was Octavius?—3. What did the triumvirate do?—4. What acts of cruelty did they commit?—5. Where now were Brutus and Cassius? Who opposed them? At what place was the battle fought? Fate of Brutus and Cassius?—6. What of the triumvirate?—7. Which of the triumvirs triumphed? What became of Antony? By what name did Octavius call himself?—8. What title did the senate give him?—9. Describe the reign of Augustus.—10. How long did he reign? In what year did he die?

**CHAPTER LXXVII. EUROPE continued.**—*About the great power and extent of the Roman Empire in the time of Augustus.*

1. As the Roman empire was now at its greatest height of wealth and splendour, I shall try to give you some idea of its extent and power, and then, having told you a little more of its history, I shall say something about the manners and customs of the ancient Romans.

2. In the time of Augustus, the Roman empire embraced all the nations of Europe, except a few northern tribes, who still maintained their independence. It included England, France, Spain, Germany, all the states of Italy, Greece, the country now occupied by Turkey in Europe, beside many other nations.

3. In Asia, it embraced most of the countries between Asia Minor on the west, and India on the east; of course, it included Asia Minor, Syria, Palestine, and many other countries.

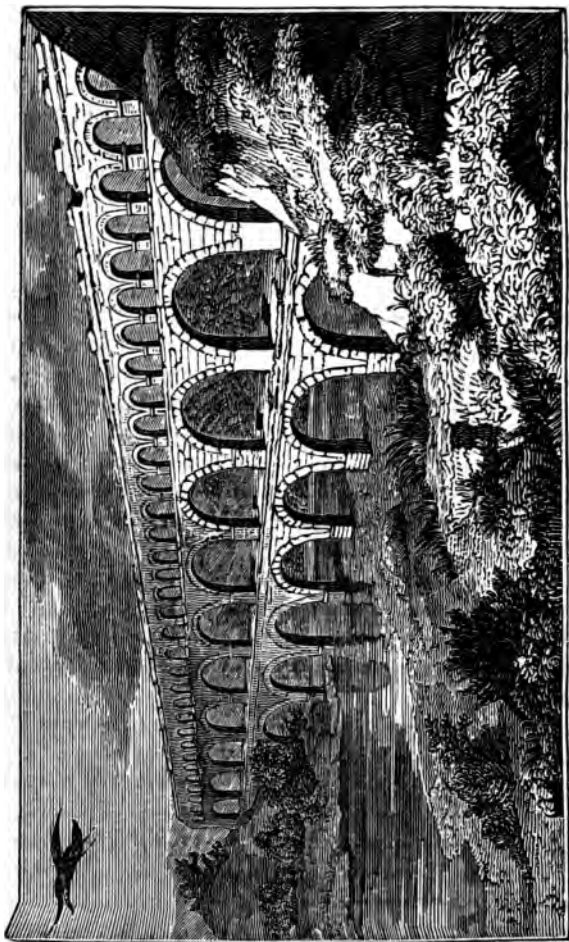
4. It included the whole northern portion of Africa, from Mauritania, now Morocco, on the west, to Ethiopia on the east. This was the whole of Africa known to the ancients.

5. It seems wonderful that one country should be able to hold in subjection so many nations. This was done by placing Roman governors over the various countries; the governors being sustained by a strong body of Roman soldiers.

6. During this period the arts of architecture, sculpture, painting, and many others, were carried to great perfection, in all parts of the empire. The cities and towns were adorned with costly temples and palaces of marble, with beautiful statues and valuable paintings. The splendour and magnificence of many of these cities, at this period, was indeed wonderful.

7. In the countries which they conquered, the Romans

erected many public works of great utility; they constructed roads paved with stone; they built durable bridges, and made aqueducts for supplying the cities with



Remains of a Roman Aqueduct in France.

water. So numerous and so permanent were these vast works, that the remains of them are still to be found in most of those countries over which the Roman dominion was then established, though they were executed nearly two thousand years ago.

8. But of all the cities in the world, Rome was itself the most wonderful. In the time of Augustus, it was fifty miles in circuit, and contained four millions of inhabitants. Like all ancient cities, it was surrounded by high, strong walls of stone ; for in these warlike times, as I have before said, walls were a necessary protection against the attacks of an enemy. The walls of Rome were entered by thirty gates.

9. The interior of this wonderful city surpassed all description. The various generals who had conquered other countries, had robbed them of their choicest treasures, and these had been brought to Rome to decorate and enrich the capital. There were beautiful statues from Greece, obelisks and columns from Egypt, and a great variety of curious and costly manufactures from Asia ; gold, silver, and precious stones, had been gathered from every part of the earth. Nor was this all ; the city was embellished with temples, many of them of marble, and beautifully sculptured ; there were also theatres, amphitheatres, porticoes, public baths, triumphal arches, and aqueducts.

10. In short, the city of Rome was enriched with the spoils of the whole world, and had that air of pomp and magnificence which suited the capital of the greatest empire that the world ever saw.

---

QUESTIONS. 2. What of the Roman empire during the reign of Augustus ? What did it include in Europe ?—3. In Asia ?—4. In Africa ? What parts of Africa were then known ? Tell the direction of each of the countries named from Rome.—5. How did Rome govern all these nations ?—6. With what were many cities filled ?—7. What of public works ?—8. Of aqueducts ? Describe the city of Rome.—9. How was the capital decorated ? What of temples ? Other buildings ?—10. Of the city ?

CHAPTER LXXVIII. EUROPE continued.—*The means by which Rome acquired its power.*

1. I TRUST you have now some faint idea of the extent, wealth, and power of the Roman empire. These are such as at first to fill the mind with feelings of admiration : yet when we look at the means which had been employed to establish this dominion, when we consider the condition of mankind during the period of its greatness, and remember how soon this vast dominion crumbled into atoms, we cannot but view the matter in a very different light.

2. In the first place, the means used to aggrandize Rome were those of conquest. The Roman generals went abroad to subdue other countries, for no other purpose than to acquire fame and spoils for themselves, and power for Rome. They slaughtered the inhabitants without mercy ; they plundered them without scruple, and subjected them to the Roman yoke without the slightest regard to the rights of mankind. Such were the means by which the mighty fabric of Roman power was erected. What must have been the condition of mankind during the seven hundred years that Rome was carrying on its wars for no other purpose than to enslave the world ?

3. It is true that a few men, generals, senators, consuls, and governors, lived in splendour, and enjoyed wealth and fame ; the Roman soldiers, too, led lives of adventure, gratifying to bold and restless spirits. But how much suffering, sorrow, and despair, must there have been among the millions of wounded men ; among the millions who were bereaved of their friends ; among the millions who were stripped of their fortunes ; among the millions who were reduced to slavery !

4. The simple truth is, that the policy of Rome was wholly selfish. The Roman rulers, like the Greeks, Persians, Egyptians, and other ancient nations, had some

abstract notions of virtue, and occasionally performed noble and generous actions. Yet, like all these nations, they were destitute of true morality ; that morality which our Lord has taught in a single sentence : “ Do to another as you would have another do to you.” Like the other ancient nations, Rome was destitute of that true religion, which teaches mankind that all power founded on injustice must perish.

5. Splendid as the Roman empire was, it was destitute of real glory. Its splendour was acquired by robbery, and its fame, though it might dazzle a heathen, will be regarded as a false renown by the Christian. We may remark, that no heathen nation or country has ever existed, where the people generally were lovers of justice, truth, and charity. It is only in Christian countries, where the laws of truth and morality are established on the basis of the Bible, that true virtue may be found.

6. Such as it was, the power of Rome was destined to speedy decay. For some time after Augustus, the empire maintained its power, and the magnificence of Rome continued. The luxury of the wealthy citizens even increased, and refinement in many respects was carried to a higher pitch than ever. But the whole fabric was based upon a false foundation ; and in a few centuries imperial Rome itself was taken and plundered by some of those tribes of barbarians whom the Romans had so long insulted and oppressed.

QUESTIONS. 1. How must we feel upon reading the history of Rome ?—2. By what means did Rome rise to such a high pitch of renown ? What of the Roman generals ? How many years was Rome at war with other nations ?—3. What classes may have been benefited by these wars ? Who suffered from them ?—4. What of Rome and her citizens ? Were the people either truly moral or religious ?—5. What of the splendour of Rome ? What may be said of heathen nations ? Christian nations ?—6. State of Rome after the death of Augustus ? The final fate of Rome ?

CHAPTER LXXIX. EUROPE continued.—*Rome under the Emperors.*



Roman Emperor and Empress.

1. THE Roman empire had now reached the height of its power and splendour; and its decline had already commenced, because the people and their rulers were alike corrupt. It was like a great tree with wide-spreading branches, but rotten at its trunk.

2. In the course of about three hundred and fifty years after the death of Augustus Cæsar, there were thirty-six emperors of Rome; but I can mention only a few of them. They lived in great luxury and splendour, but they were generally such wicked persons that it would have been better for the world if they had never lived.

3. The next emperor to Augustus Cæsar was Tiberius; he was a frightful-looking object, being bald and covered with sores, and his disposition was even more hideous than *his aspect*. This gloomy tyrant suspected everybody of

plotting against his life. He put so many people to death, that their dead bodies were piled in heaps in the public places; and he once sentenced a poor woman to die, merely for lamenting the death of her son. At last, he fell ill, and, when he appeared to be recovering, his guards smothered him with the bed-clothes.

4. His successor was Caligula, who expressed a wish that the whole Roman people had but one head, that he might cut it off at a single blow. He also was murdered by his guards, and was succeeded by Claudius, a weak and cruel man. Claudius was poisoned by his wife.

5. Nero was the next emperor, and his whole reign was



Ancient Medal of Nero in the Chariot of the Sun.

scene of bloodshed. He murdered his mother and his wife, and he set Rome on fire, merely for the pleasure of seeing it blaze. While the city was in flames, he sat on the top of a lofty tower, playing on a harp. Finally, he was dethroned, and condemned to be beaten to death with rods, but, to escape this torture, he killed himself.

6. The two next emperors were Galba and Otho. The



first was killed by his soldiers, and the second committed suicide. The next was Vitellius, a monster of cruelty, who delighted in visiting fields of battle, and walking amongst the slain. Vespasian, one of his generals, took arms against him, and having taken him prisoner, the soldiers put a rope round his neck, and dragged him into the most public part of the city, where they killed him in the most cruel manner. His head was placed on a lance, and his body thrown into the Tiber.

7. But I am weary, my dear young readers! my old heart grows sick and sad, while I speak to you of these evil and miserable men. It is painful to think that such monsters should have ever existed in the world.

QUESTIONS. 1. To what can you compare the Roman empire? —2. How many emperors reigned after Augustus? What of them? —3. Give an account of Tiberius. —4. Describe Caligula. —5. What of Nero? —6. Of Galba and Otho? Vitellius?



*The Pantheon at Rome, erected twenty-five years before Christ.*

CHAPTER LXXX. EUROPE continued.—*Fall of the Western Empire of the Romans.*

1. Yet there were some good men among the Roman emperors. Such were Vespasian, Titus, Nerva, Trajan, Antoninus, Marcus Aurelius, Alexander Severus, Aurelian, and Diocletian.

2. The first emperor who became a convert to Christianity was Constantine the Great, who began to reign in the year 306 after the Christian era. By him the seat of government was transferred from Rome to Byzantium, now called Constantinople.

3. The religion of Christ was planted in various parts of the Roman empire by the apostles, but the first Christians were much persecuted. Some were scourged, many were imprisoned, and thousands were murdered, but still their numbers increased. At length the emperor Constantine ordered that the persecutions should cease, and he himself became a convert to Christianity. This took place in the year 311.

4. It is said that Constantine was one day riding at the head of his army, when he saw a splendid cross in the heavens, upon which was written, "By this sign thou shalt conquer." It is supposed that this vision convinced the emperor of the truth of the Christian religion, and induced him to adopt it.

5. From this period Christianity flourished, and the mythology of Greece and Rome gave way before it. Many of the temples were converted into churches, and the people who had been accustomed to bow down before the statues of Jupiter, and other imaginary gods, knelt in humiliation at the foot of the cross.

6. In the year 364 after the birth of Christ, the Roman dominions were divided into the Eastern and Western empires. The capital of the Eastern empire was Constan-

tinople. Its fate will be briefly related in the history of the Turks.

7. The capital of the western empire was Rome. But this imperial city was no longer powerful enough to defend itself against the nations which it had formerly conquered. It was ravaged by hordes of barbarians from the north of Europe, consisting of Huns, Goths, Vandals, &c.

8. Of these rude tribes I shall speak more particularly hereafter. It is sufficient for the present to say that they were hardy warriors, and chose rather to obtain wealth by plundering the rich countries of the south, than by the cultivation of their own more sterile soil.

9. One of the first and fiercest of these northern invaders was Alaric, king of the Goths, who led a large army against Rome, and threatened the destruction of the city. The inhabitants were very different from the ancient Romans, and being overawed by his army, promised him large sums of money; but this promise not being fulfilled, Alaric took the city and gave it up to plunder. For six days imperial Rome was a scene of pillage and murder. Thousands of the inhabitants were slain, and a large portion of the city reduced to ashes; after a while, Alaric retired. This occurred in the year 410.

10. About the year 450, Attila, leader of the Huns, threatened to follow the example which Alaric had set. But in the midst of his projects he died; and Rome, for a time, was saved. In a few years, however, it was again taken and plundered by Genseric, king of the Vandals.

11. In the year 476, the very name of the Western empire was annihilated by Odoacer, who had raised himself from the rank of a private soldier, and who took the title of king of Italy. In the year 537, Belisarius, a general of the Eastern empire, re-conquered Rome, and a part of Italy; but in a brief period the Greeks were expelled, and from that time to the present, the Lombards, the Germans, the Normans, the Spaniards, and the French,

have all in turn possessed the whole, or parts of the country, and much bloodshed and misery has naturally flowed from their contests.

QUESTIONS.—1. What good emperors were there?—2. What of Constantine? In what year did he begin to reign? Where was the seat of government placed by Constantine? What was the former name of Constantinople?—3. What of the religion of Christ? First Christians? Persecutions? What did Constantine do?—4. What is said to have happened to Constantine?—5. What of Christianity from this period? Mythology of Greece and Rome? Temples? People?—6. What took place in the year 364? Name the capital of the Eastern empire of Rome.—7. Of the Western? How was it ravaged and laid waste?—8. What of the northern barbarians?—9. What of Alaric? What occurred in 410?—10. What happened about the year 450? What of Genseric?—11. What of Odoacer? What happened in 537? Who was Belisarius? What did he do? What has since happened?

#### CHAPTER LXXXI. EUROPE continued.—*Progress of the Decline of Rome.*



A Roman Gateway.

1. IN the year 800, Charlemagne, king of France, having rescued the pope from his enemies, was by him crowned emperor of the West. One of his successors, in the tenth century, named Otho, claimed Italy as part of his dominions; but several cities resisted his authority. The emperor upon this invaded Italy, and, marching to Rome, took possession of the palace, and prepared a magnificent feast, to which all the great men of Rome were invited.

The emperor sat at the head of the table, on a splendid throne, and the guests seated themselves, expecting to be feasted with luxuries.

2. But before they had eaten a mouthful, Otho made a sign, and immediately the hall was filled with armed men. The emperor ordered the guests neither to move or speak, on pain of death, whatever might take place.

3. One of the emperor's officers stood up, and read aloud the names of all who had opposed his authority. These unfortunate men had been invited to the feast, and were now sitting at the table. The emperor commanded them to be dragged into the middle of the hall, and put to death. The executioner was in readiness, with a broad and heavy sword ; and one after another the heads of the condemned persons rolled upon the floor of the hall. Not one was spared.

4. When this butchery was over, the emperor turned his attention to the banquet. His stern and wrathful aspect became mild and pleasing, and he endeavoured to make the survivors forget what had just occurred, but they could little enjoy themselves after such a scene. This is a horrible story, and I only tell it to show you the barbarous and cruel character of the men of those times.

5. In the course of years, Italy was divided into several separate states, or sovereignties. The principal of these were Naples, Tuscany, Parma, Lombardy, Genoa, and Venice ; the city of Rome, with other territories, was given to the pope. Of these I shall give you a brief account ; but before I proceed further with the history of Rome, I will tell you something of the manners and customs of the ancient Romans.

6. Let me remark, however, that Rome was now totally changed from what it was in the days of Augustus. Not only was the empire now divided into many independent states, but the proud city of Rome itself had lost its former *glory*.

7. The number of its inhabitants had greatly diminished; its most splendid edifices were falling into ruins, and the people, having been long mixed with barbarians, had all the vices of both civilized and savage nations.

8. Even the language of Rome and of all Italy gradually became changed. The people had formerly spoken the Latin language; but this became mingled with the languages of the northern invaders, and thus the modern Italian was gradually formed. Such were the wonderful changes which had taken place in Rome and Italy!

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the emperor of Germany?—2, 3, 4, What did he do? Describe the banquet. 5. How did Italy become divided?—6. What of the changes in Rome?—7. What of the inhabitants, edifices, &c.—8. The language of Rome?

---

## CHAPTER LXXXII. EUROPE continued.—*Manners and Customs of the ancient Romans.*



Senator.



Patrician.

1. I AM now going to give you an account of the manners and customs of the great people whose history you

have just read. I shall tell you about their domestic habits, and about their public observances; about the state of society, their agriculture, shows, dresses, religion, marriage ceremonies, funeral rites, military institutions, and public edifices.

2. The people of Rome, as you know, were at first divided into two classes, the patricians and plebeians, and it was to the struggles for power between these ranks that most of the difficulties in the state were owing. To these a third, or intermediate rank, was afterwards added, called equites, or knights; the custom of making slaves of the subjects of conquered nations, introduced a fourth class.

3. You have seen that the government of Rome suffered numerous changes; at one time it was administered by kings, at others by consuls, dictators, emperors, &c. The other officers of the state were numerous, and invested with very different degrees of power.



Sacrificing Priests.

Augur, or Divining Priest.

4. The ministers of religion among the Romans did not *form a distinct order*, but were chosen from among the

most eminent citizens, the office of chief-priest, or *Pontifex Maximus*, being one of great political importance. They attended to the sacrifices of victims to the gods, and other religious rites. The superstitions of the time gave rise to the establishment of a college of augurs, whose business it was to explain dreams, oracles, and prodigies, and to foretell future events.

5. They drew their auguries, or presages concerning futurity, from the appearance of the heavens, and inspection of the entrails of birds and beasts. Of course their pretensions were as false as those of the gipsies at the present day. The weakest and most ignorant are now too well informed to give credit to their pretences, and from this fact you can form some opinion as to the general intelligence of the Romans, compared with that of your own countrymen.

6. The augurs at Rome interpreted the will of the gods in the affairs of making war and peace, and none dared to dispute their authority. No business of importance could be proceeded in, without first consulting them; and their advice, whatever it might be, was, by a decree of the senate, to be strictly observed. The office of an augur was, therefore, important, and was sought after by many of the principal persons in the Roman senate. Cato the Censor was a member of their college, and Cicero also; though they both appear to have been fully sensible of the extravagance and folly of the art they practised. A remark is attributed to Cato, that he wondered how one augur could look in the face of another without laughing.

---

QUESTIONS. 2. Into what four ranks, or classes, were the Roman citizens divided?—3. What of the government? Officers of state?—4. Ministers of religion? Superstitions?—5. How did the augurs proceed? What must we think of these superstitions?—6. The augurs? The office of an augur? Cato and Cicero? Remark of Cato?



CHAPTER LXXXIII. EUROPE continued.—*About Religion. Deities. Temples. Marriage.*



Roman Pottery.

1. THE religion of the Romans was borrowed from the Greeks, and included the worship of Jupiter, and a multitude of other deities. Every virtue and vice of the human heart, every faculty of the mind and body, every property of the real and imaginary world, was presided over by its peculiar god. Every grove, and mountain, and stream, had its nymph, or naiad, and the early heroes and sages of the country were elevated to the rank of divinities.

2. Every species of idolatry was tolerated at Rome; but the Jews and the Christians (whom the Romans, in their ignorance, confounded together,) were persecuted with unrelenting cruelty, until the mild precepts of the true religion triumphed over superstition and ignorance. Christianity at length prevailed, and was adopted as the religion of the state in the year 311.

3. The great number of deities whom the Romans worshipped occasioned the erection of a multitude of temples.

Many of these were very splendid edifices, adorned with all the arts of sculpture, and filled with offerings and sacrifices. The priests attended at the temples, and sacrificed sheep, bulls, oxen, and other animals.

4. The temples erected to the inferior deities were of less magnificence and grandeur, and were merely styled sacred houses. In the dwelling of every wealthy family there was a private chapel, in which they worshipped their household gods. Ancient Rome contained more than four hundred temples, dedicated to different deities.

5. Marriage was very much favoured by the laws of Rome, and severe penalties were inflicted on those who remained single. At one period, the censors obliged all the young bachelors to make oath that they would marry within a certain time. Augustus increased the penalties on bachelors, and bestowed rewards on those who were parents of a numerous offspring.

6. The parties were betrothed some time before the actual celebration of the marriage. This was attended with many ceremonies, at which the priests and augurs assisted. The contract of marriage was drawn up in the presence of witnesses, and confirmed by the breaking of a straw between the engaged pair.

7. The bridegroom then presented his bride with the wedding-ring, and the father of the bride gave an entertainment. The wedding-ring was worn on the third finger of the left hand, from a notion that a nerve of that finger communicated directly with the heart.

8. In dressing the bride, they never failed to divide her locks with the point of a spear, to signify that she was about to become the wife of a warrior. They then crowned her with a chaplet of flowers, and put on her a veil proper for the occasion.

9. Her toilet being completed, she was led in the evening towards the bridegroom's house, by three boys, whose parents were still alive. Five torches were carried before

her, and also a distaff and spindle. Having come to the door, she herself bound the posts with wreaths of wool washed over with melted tallow, to keep out witchcraft.

10. In going into the house, she was by no means to touch the threshold, but was to be lifted over by main strength. When she had entered, the bridegroom presented her with the keys, and with two vessels, containing fire and water.

11. The bridegroom then gave a grand supper to all the company. The festival was accompanied with music and dancing, and the guests sang verses in praise of the new-married couple.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of religion?—2. Toleration? Christianity?—3. What is said of the Roman deities? Their temples?—4. Household gods?—5. Marriage? Penalties?—6. Describe the marriage ceremonies.

---

#### CHAPTER LXXXIV. EUROPE continued.—*About Funeral Rites and Ceremonies.*

1. THE funeral rites of the Romans present a very interesting subject. Burning the dead, though practised by the Greeks from very early times, was not adopted at Rome till the later ages of the republic. It afterwards became universal, and was continued without interruption till the introduction of Christianity. It then gradually fell into disuse.

2. Among the Romans, the bed of the sick was never abandoned to hired nurses and servants, but was attended by the relatives and intimates, who waited till the last hour, and bade a last farewell to their dying friend.

3. The body of the deceased was rubbed with perfumes, dressed in rich garments, and laid out on a couch strewn with flowers. The outer door of the house was shaded with branches of cypress. According to the heathen

mythology, Charon would not convey the departed spirit across the Styx, without payment of a fixed toll. A small coin was, therefore, placed in the mouth of the deceased to meet this demand.

4. The funeral took place by torchlight, and the body was borne by near friends and relatives, on an open bier covered with the richest cloth. Lictors, dressed in black, regulated the procession; and if the deceased had been a soldier, the badges of his rank were displayed, and the corps to which he belonged marched with their arms reversed.

5. Before the corpse were carried images of the deceased and his ancestors: then followed musicians, and mourning women, who were hired to sing his praises, and dancers and buffoons, one of whom attempted to represent the character of the dead man, and imitate his manner when alive.

6. The family of the deceased followed the bier in deep mourning; the sons with their heads covered, the daughters unveiled and with their hair dishevelled. Magistrates and patricians attended without their badges or ornaments, and the procession was closed by the freedmen of the deceased, with the cap of liberty on their heads.

7. The funeral ceremonies of a man of rank were distinguished by an oration in his honour, pronounced over the body by a friend. The scene of this display was the Capitol, and in the later ages of the republic it became very common. While the practice of burial prevailed, the body was either interred without a coffin, or placed in a kind of deep chest called a sarcophagus.

8. On the termination of the rites, the sepulchre was strewn with flowers, and the mourners took a farewell of the remains of their friend. The attendants were then sprinkled with water by the priests, and all were dismissed.

9. When the custom of burning the body was intro-

duced, a funeral pile was raised in the form of an altar, and the bier was placed upon it. The procession then moved slowly about, to the sound of solemn music, when the nearest relative advanced from the train with a lighted torch, and set fire to the pile.

10. Perfumes and spices were then thrown into the blaze, and the embers were quenched with wine. The ashes were collected and placed in a costly urn, which was deposited in the family sepulchre. In the funeral solemnities of a soldier, his arms, and the spoils he had won from the enemy, were sometimes added to the funeral pile.

11. It was a prevalent belief of the ancient nations that the spirits of the dead were pleased with blood, and it was their custom to sacrifice on the tomb of the deceased, those animals to which he was most attached during his life. In the more remote and barbarous ages, men were often the victims; these were domestic slaves, and captives taken in war; and sometimes friends gave themselves to be sacrificed, from feelings of affection. There are some few instances of this custom among the early Romans, but they soon became too civilized to allow the performance of such horrid rites.

12. Burial within the walls of the city was not allowed, except to the vestal virgins, and to some few families of high distinction. Great military commanders were usually buried in the Campus Martius, and the private soldiers in the slope of the fortifications; and private citizens were interred either in the gardens of their houses, or by the road-side.

13. Many of these monuments are still standing. The sepulchres of the great and wealthy are engraven with long and pompous lists of their titles, honours and achievements; and the tombs of the humble bear but a simple lesson to the reader, and some beautiful and touching *expressions of sorrow* or hope for the departed.

QUESTIONS. 1. What of burning the dead?—2. The bed of the dying?—3. The body of the dead? Notion with regard to Charon?—4. The funeral?—5. The procession?—7. Oration?—8. Conclusion of the ceremonies?—9. Ceremony of burning the body?—12. What of the various burial places?—13. Monuments?

---

CHAPTER LXXXV. EUROPE continued.—*Roman Farms; mode of Ploughing; Farm-houses; Grain; Cattle; Superstitions of the Farmers; Gardens; Vines.*

1. I AM now going to tell you about the farms and gardens of the Romans. In the early and more virtuous ages of the state, the cultivation of the earth, and a few rude trades connected with it, were the only occupations. The best husbandman was the man most valued and honoured; and many of the most ancient families received their names from their success in the cultivation of plants, or the rearing of cattle.

2. It is probable that at first the ground was broken up only by the spade, but afterwards, when the farms were enlarged, more expeditious means were employed. They always ploughed with oxen, a single pair, or sometimes three abreast, yoked by the neck and horns.

3. The farm-houses were at first little huts, but they were soon enlarged to suit the increasing possessions of the owners. We read, at a later period, of large store-houses and granaries, cellars for wine and oil, barns, together with separate buildings for the care and rearing of every species of domestic animals.

4. The kinds of grain in common cultivation were the same as those now known in Europe, with the exception of maize, or Indian corn, which was then unknown, being brought to Europe from the West Indies. The ancient mode of converting grain into meal was by pounding it with an instrument something like the pestle and mortar.

They had also a rude sort of corn-mill, at which slaves only were employed, on account of the severity of the labour. Mills moved by cattle, and by water, are more modern inventions.

5. Much care was paid by the Romans to the rearing of cattle. Sheep were secured under cover during winter, notwithstanding the mildness of the Italian climate. Shearing-time was a season of general festivity. Goats were made as profitable to the farmer as sheep: their hair was clipped every year, and woven into a kind of coarse stuff, and their milk was the chief supply of the dairy.

6. The Roman farmers were very superstitious. They refrained from all labour on the fifth day of the new moon; on the seventh and tenth they planted vines, and harnessed young oxen to the yoke; on the ninth they commenced a journey. The skeleton of an ass's head was hung up at the boundary of the farm, to enrich the soil, and prevent the effects of blight. The same figure carved in brass, and crowned with vines, was affixed as an ornament to their couches.

7. In the early ages of the republic, the gardens of the Romans contained only a few of the most common pot-herbs and fruit trees. Apples, cherries, and other delicious fruits, and many beautiful flowers, were introduced at a much later period, from Persia and Asia Minor. The style of ornamental gardening was heavy and formal, producing a gloomy shade, rather than displaying beautiful scenery. It was the fashion to fill the gardens with dark walks shaded with evergreens, loaded with statues, and bounded by high clipped hedges.

8. It is supposed that the Romans obtained a knowledge of the cultivation of the grape, and of the art of making wine, from Greece. They took great care of their vineyards, and laboured in cultivating the plants with much *art and industry*. The mode of gathering and pressing *the grape* was the same as that now practised. The

vintage was a time of festival, and the rustics made merry with the performance of a rude kind of comedy, and pouring out libations of new wine to Jupiter and Venus.

9. The wine appears to have differed from that of modern times; it was kept in jars formed like urns, some of which are said to have been so large as to have made, when filled, a load for a yoke of oxen. They were commonly ranged in cellars, but were sometimes buried in the earth, or even bedded in solid masonry. The wine was usually kept to a great age. It was held in less esteem than the wine of Greece, and was much cheaper.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What were the early occupations of the Romans?—2. Their mode of ploughing?—3. Their farm-houses? Other buildings?—4. What kinds of grain were cultivated?—5. What is said of cattle?—6. Superstitions of the farmers?—7. Produce of the gardens? From what countries did the Romans introduce the finer fruits and flowers? Ornamental gardening?—8. What is said of the grape? Wine? The vintage?—9. Wine jars?

---

#### CHAPTER LXXXVI. EUROPE continued.—*Country houses. Description of Pliny's Villa. Aqueducts.*

1. I SHALL now describe the villas, or country seats of the wealthy Romans. Originally, they were nothing more than very humble farm-houses; but with the progress of wealth and luxury, they were made by degrees more extensive and costly.

2. Some of them were surrounded with large parks, in which deer and various foreign wild animals were kept. Large fish-ponds were also not unfrequently attached to them, and were stocked at great expense. Generally, however, the villas were merely surrounded by gardens, and in size and appearance resembled those of modern Italy.

3. Pliny the younger, the philosopher, was a man of fortune, and the owner of four magnificent villas. Of two



of these he has left minute descriptions. One of them I will now describe to you.

4. The house was seated on a rising ground, facing the south, with the Apennine mountains in the distant background, and had a portico, with a terrace before it, adorned with various figures, and bounded by a hedge of box. Hence you passed by an easy descent into a lawn surrounded by walks, and adorned with box-trees, cut into the shapes of various animals.

5. Beyond this lawn you entered a ground for exercise, laid out in the form of a circus, ornamented with well-trimmed box and other shrubs, and fenced with a wall covered by box. On the outside of the wall was a meadow, and beyond were other meadows, fields, and thickets.

6. Opposite the portico stood a square edifice, which encompassed a small area or space, shaded by four plane trees, with a fountain in the midst. This apartment consisted of a bed-chamber and a dining room. A second portico looked out upon this little area.

7. Another room, situated by the nearest plane tree, enjoyed constant greenness and shade. In the same building were dressing-rooms, porticoes, baths, and rooms for playing different games. The sides of one room were encrusted half-way with sculptured marble; thence, to the ceiling, branches of trees were painted, with birds intermixed with the foliage.

8. In front of these buildings and porticoes was [a spacious circus, surrounded by plane trees covered with ivy. Between these were planted box and bay trees, mingling their shade. The inward circular walks were perfumed with roses.

9. A thousand different and fantastic shapes were given to the box-hedges that bordered the straight and winding alleys that crossed the grounds. At the end of one of these walks was an alcove of white marble, shaded with vines, and supported by four pillars.

10. A fountain here emptied itself into a marble basin, contrived with so much art as to be always full without overflowing. Sometimes Pliny supped here with his friends, and then the basin served for a table, the larger vessels being placed about the margin, and the smaller ones swimming about in the form of little boats and water-fowl.

11. In front of the alcove stood a summer-house of exquisite marble, with projecting doors which opened into a green enclosure. Next to this was a private recess, furnished with a couch, and shaded by a spreading vine which reached to the top. Here, also, a fountain alternately rose and disappeared. In different parts of the walks were several marble seats, and throughout the whole circus were small rills to refresh the herbage.

12. Such is the description which Pliny the younger has given us of one of his villas. You will see that it was very magnificent, and there were many others throughout Italy of equal splendour. You will perceive by this, that the wealthy Romans lived in a style of great luxury in the time of the emperors.

13. It was not till the year 441 after its foundation, that is, in the year 312 before Christ, that Rome obtained its supplies of water by means of aqueducts. They afterwards became so numerous, that it has been calculated they furnished the city with five hundred thousand hogs-heads every day. They were built of brick, and were sometimes thirty, forty, and even sixty miles in length.

14. The water was conveyed to reservoirs, and thence distributed through metal pipes over the city in great abundance. Only three aqueducts now remain for modern Rome; yet so pure are the sources from which they draw their supplies, that few cities can boast of such clear and healthful water.

15. Great attention was paid to ornament in the erection of the aqueducts. One built by Agrippa, in the

reign of Augustus, contained one hundred and thirty reservoirs, and five hundred fountains, adorned with statues and columns. The remains of many of these great works, in various countries, bear witness to this day of their beauty and convenience.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the Roman villas?—3. Pliny the younger?—4. Describe his villa.—5. Ground for exercise?—6. Edifice opposite the portico? Rooms of this building?—8. Circus?—10. Fountain? Basin?—11. Summer-house? Other ornaments?—13. Aqueducts? Quantity of water carried daily to the city? Their length?—15. Aqueduct built by Agrippa? Remains of other aqueducts?

---

CHAPTER LXXXVII. EUROPE continued.—*Military Affairs of the Romans. The Imperial Eagle. Music. Arms. Dress. Military Rewards. Naval Affairs. Galleys. Merchant-ships. Wild Beasts in the Amphitheatre. Gladiators.*



Legionary and Light-armed Soldier.

1. You have been already told that the Romans were *almost* continually engaged in wars. Their military

affairs, therefore, occupied the attention of the most distinguished citizens. According to the Roman laws, every free-born citizen was a soldier, and bound to serve in the army at any period from the age of seventeen to that of forty-six.

2. The Roman forces were divided into legions, each of which originally consisted of three thousand foot soldiers, and three hundred horsemen, but the number was afterwards increased to nearly seven thousand. The standard of the legion was a silver eagle.



A Slinger.



A Standard Bearer.

3. The eagle was borne on a spear by an officer of rank, and was regarded by the soldiers with a reverence almost amounting to devotion. The cavalry carried pennons, on which the initials of the emperor, and the number of the legion, were embroidered in letters of gold.

4. The only instrument of martial music among the Romans, was the brazen trumpet. Some of the soldiers were armed with light javelins, and others with a heavier weapon of a similar description. All, however, carried

shields and short swords, which they wore on the right side.

5. They were dressed in a metal cuirass, with an under covering of cloth, which was generally red, and hung loose to the knee. On the head they wore brazen helmets, ornamented with flowing tufts of horse-hair. The generals wore also an open scarlet mantle.

6. The cavalry wore a coat of mail, of brazen or steel scales, or of chain-work, sometimes plated with gold; and under this a close garment, which reached to their buskins. They rode without stirrups, and their saddles were merely cloths folded to suit the convenience of the rider. The discipline of the army was maintained with great strictness and severity.

7. Rewards of various kinds were held out to those who distinguished themselves by any extraordinary exploit; and a particular kind of crown was presented to him who, in the assault, first scaled the ramparts of a town. A soldier who saved his comrade's life in battle, was entitled to the civic crown, which was thought a distinction of the highest honour; and the general who conquered in a battle, was decorated with the laurel-leaf, and was sometimes honoured with a triumph, which I have already described.

8. The first vessel of the Roman navy is said to have been built after the model of a Carthaginian galley, which had been driven ashore in a storm. Their ships were roughly and slightly constructed, and, though very large, unfit to contend with boisterous and tempestuous weather. They were clumsy and ill-fashioned, with a high stern and sides, and rowed with two or three tiers of oars on different decks. The prows of the ships were armed with iron, usually in the shape of the head of some animal; the upper deck was surmounted with a moveable turret, *from which* the soldiers could throw their weapons with

advantage, and was furnished with a kind of drawbridge, by means of which they boarded the enemy's vessels.



A Roman Galley.

9. The merchant-ships of the Romans were of sizes corresponding with the purposes for which they were intended. Before the discovery of the magnet, by which the mariner can now direct his course in safety over the pathless waves, navigation was necessarily confined to the coast. These coasting-vessels were considered large if they were of the burden of fifty tons.

10. Rome was long supplied with the products of the East by the merchants of the maritime states of the Mediterranean; and it was not till the conquest of Egypt by Augustus, that the trade became exclusively her own. Of this commerce, Alexandria was the centre.

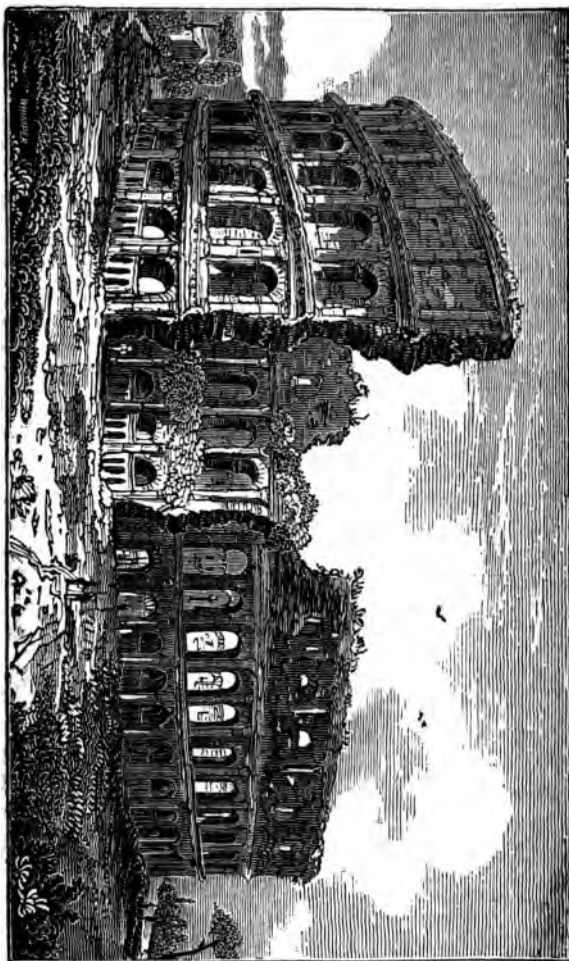
11. The first amphitheatre at Rome for the shows of wild beasts and gladiatorial combats, was a mere temporary building of wood, probably erected by Julius Cæsar. The Flavian amphitheatre, better known by the name of Coliseum, was commenced in the reign of Vespasian, and is supposed to have been large enough to contain upwards of eighty thousand persons.

12. The wild beasts were secured in dens around the arena in the centre, which was strongly fenced, and surrounded by a canal, to guard the spectators against their attacks. A vast number of wild beasts were made to destroy each other in these cruel exhibitions. Eleven thousand are said to have been slain during four months of triumph in honour of a conquest over the Dacians; and five hundred lions were killed in a few days on another similar occasion. Many of the early Christians were martyred by being thrown to the wild beasts of the amphitheatre.

13. The first public combats of gladiators took place at Rome in the close of the fifth century from the foundation of the city. They were exhibited at a funeral. From that period they became frequent on such occasions, and afterwards, on days of public festival, were considered an indispensable part of the ceremonies.

14. Five hundred pairs of these wretched beings have frequently been led to the public games to sacrifice each other for the amusement of the barbarous spectators. They were at first captives taken in war, or malefactors; afterwards slaves trained to the profession. They fought with various weapons, some in complete armour, others with only a trident and a net, in which they endeavoured to entangle their adversary and thus slay him. The emperor Commodus frequently bore a part in these combats, always taking care to be better armed than his adversaries.

15. I will not pain my young readers with a minute



Ruins of the Coliseum, at Rome.



account of these inhuman combats, which were conducted with the most bloody and savage spirit, and are sufficient proofs of the degraded and brutalized condition of the period when they were tolerated. They were abolished by the Christian emperor Constantine.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of the military affairs?—2. Divisions of the army?—3. Standard? Pennons?—4. Instruments of martial music? Weapons?—5. Dress of the soldiers? Generals?—6. Dress of the cavalry?—7. Rewards of the army? Crowns?—8. First vessel of the Roman navy? Describe the war-galley.—9. What is said of the Roman merchant-ships? Navigation? Coasting vessels?—10. How was Rome supplied with the products of the East?—11. What of the first amphitheatre?—12. Combats of wild beasts? The Christian martyrs?—13. Gladiatorial combats?—14. Weapons of the gladiators? The emperor Commodus?—15. What of these exhibitions?



Gladiators.



Pugilists.

CHAPTER LXXXVIII. EUROPE continued.—*Sports; Chariot Races; the Circus; Carriages; private Entertainments; Supper Rooms; Convivial Parties; Luxuries.*

1. I WILL now change the picture, and give you an account of some of the less barbarous amusements of the Romans. Among these were several games of ball, played both with the hand and foot. The young men chiefly engaged in sports in the open air, that would make them more active and vigorous. Boxing, wrestling, and throwing the quoit, formed a prominent part of these amusements; but chariot driving took the lead of all others.

2. For horse and chariot races, there was an enclosed course immediately adjoining the city, called the Circus. It was rather more than a mile in circumference, and was surrounded with seats and three tiers of galleries. In the centre was a barrier of twelve feet in breadth and four feet high, around which the race was performed; and at one end was a triumphal arch, through which the successful charioteer drove, amidst the shouts and applause of the assembly.

3. Four chariots usually started together, the drivers of which were distinguished by dresses of different colours. Each colour had its particular partisans, who betted largely on the success of their favourite. These sports were exceedingly popular, and repeated in almost constant succession.

4. As to the carriages in use among the Romans, we are informed that they were of various kinds; one was an open litter, or couch, borne on poles by slaves in livery, which was furnished with pillows and a mattress, and with feet of silver or gold to support it when set down. There were also close litters, drawn by mules, and carriages on two or four wheels, painted of various colours.

and highly ornamented; the horses were yoked to the carriage by means of a curved cross-bar passing over their necks, and were directed by bridles and reins, which were sometimes of embroidered silk, with gold bits. Besides mules and horses, many other animals were occasionally used in carriages, such as dogs, goats, and deer, and even bears, leopards, lions, and tigers, but this, of course, was merely for a whimsical amusement, and not for real service.

5. In early times, the Romans lived chiefly on milk and vegetables, with a coarse kind of pudding, made of flour and water. But as they began to grow powerful, and to conquer the neighbouring nations, they became acquainted with the luxuries of the people they subdued, and introduced them into their own state.

6. As they found in Greece models of the fine arts, so Asia furnished them with new and numerous sources of pleasure in the gratification of their senses. In the later days of the republic, great attention was paid to the art of cookery, and various apartments were constructed in the houses of the rich for the entertainment of company.

7. Supper was the principal meal among the Romans, and the supper rooms of some of the emperors were hung with cloths of gold and silver, enriched with jewels. The tables were of fine gold, and the couches had frames of massive silver. The Romans always reclined on couches to take their meals.

8. At great entertainments the supper room was hung with flowers, and the guests were crowned with garlands. The floor was generally bare, though richly ornamented, and the ceiling was inlaid with a fretwork of gold and ivory. Scented oil was used for lighting the apartments and massive carved lamps of figured bronze reflected their brilliancy on the gay and beautiful scene.

9. Some of the more voluptuous and degraded of the *Roman emperors* were most extravagant and ridiculous in

providing rare dishes for their table, such as the livers and brains of small birds, the heads of parrots and pheasants, and the tongues of peacocks and nightingales. But the most luxurious dish that graced the table of the Romans was an entire boar, roasted and stuffed with game and poultry. How miserable must have been the condition of the people whose masters could lavish their wealth in such wanton and disgraceful indulgence of the commonest appetite!

10. On one occasion, the senate was assembled to consult on the best mode of dressing an immense turbot, which had been presented to the emperor Domitian. In our time, a council of cooks might have been called on an affair of so much importance, but it would hardly have been thought a subject to bring before the rulers of the people.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Games of the Roman youths?—2. The circus?—3. The chariots? Their drivers?—4. What is said of the form of the Roman carriages? How were the horses harnessed and managed? What other animals were sometimes used?—5. Early living of the Romans? Introduction of luxuries?—6. Cookery?—7. Supper rooms?—8. Ornaments of the supper room?—9. Costly dishes of the Roman emperors?—10. What of Domitian's turbot?



Roman War-Chariot.

**CHAPTER LXXXIX.** EUROPE continued. — *About Theatres. The Sundial. The Fine Arts. Books and Writing. Costume.*

1. THEATRICAL entertainments were first introduced into Rome in the year of the city 391 (362 years before Christ), and were originally little more than dances to the sound of the flute; and it was more than a hundred years before the drama attained to much dignity or excellence. Actors were always held in contempt, but were enabled, from the patronage they received, to accumulate large fortunes. Theatres were at first built in the villages in the vicinity; the first permanent edifice of this kind in the city was built of stone, and calculated to contain forty thousand spectators.

2. A sundial was set up at Rome, 293 years before Christ; and about a hundred years afterwards, the clepsydra, which told the time by the fall of a small quantity of water, was introduced.

3. The fine arts were unknown in Rome till after the sixth century of her existence, when they were introduced by the successful captains of her armies, from the nations they had conquered. After a taste for the arts had been thus formed, large enclosed galleries were built around the mansions of the rich, and were adorned with the finest specimens of painting and sculpture.

4. In the dwellings of the most affluent patricians, these galleries also contained splendid libraries, which were open to the inspection of the learned and the curious. Collections of books were then of course very rare, on account of the great expense and difficulty of transcribing them. They were sometimes written on parchment, but more frequently on a paper made from the leaves of an Egyptian plant called papyrus, from which we have our modern term, *paper*. The leaves were pasted together *at the ends*, and then made up into a roll, which was

enclosed in a covering of skin or silk, fastened with strings or clasps.

5. Writing was performed with a reed, split and pointed like our pen, and dipped in ink. Matters not intended for preservation were usually written with a pointed instrument on tables spread with wax. Letters were not, as with us, folded flat, but made up into a roll, and tied with a silken thread, the ends of which were sealed with wax.

6. The usual garments of the Romans were the toga and the tunic; the former, was a loose woollen robe, of a semicircular form, and without sleeves; the latter, a close white garment, worn when abroad under the toga, but alone in the house. The men usually went bareheaded. For the feet, the usual coverings were the buskin and the sandal. The buskin reached about half way up the leg; the sandal was a mere sole, fastened to the foot by straps and buckles.



Citizen's Wife.



Roman Citizen.

QUESTIONS. 1. At what time were theatrical exhibitions introduced at Rome? What is said of them? Actors? Theatres?—2. Sundials? The clepsydra?—3. Of the fine arts?—4. Libraries? Books? Paper?—5. Writing? Letters?—6. Usual garments of the Romans?

CHAPTER XC. EUROPE continued.—*Rome under the Popes.*



View of Rome.

1. I WILL now proceed to finish the history of Rome. I have already had occasion to speak of the pope. This title was given to the bishops of Rome, at a very early period of the Christian church. At first, the pope was only one of the superior dignitaries of the church; but in the course of years he became the head of it, and both claimed and exercised an authority superior to that of any king or emperor.

2. For a long time, the popes of Rome had authority only in matters of religion; but Gregory II., about the year 715, resisted the Greek emperor, who ruled over Italy, and established the title of the pope to reign over Rome in matters of state. From this time forward, the popes rapidly acquired power, and in the year 755 they had extensive possessions and immense wealth. Their *pride* was now equal to their power, and neither seemed

to have any bounds. As I before told you, they exercised the right of appointing the emperors, whose subjects they should have been.

3. The popes styled themselves God's vicegerents on earth. They called themselves the successors of St. Peter, and affirmed that the keys of heaven and hell were given into their custody. No other tyranny has ever been like theirs, for they tyrannized over the souls as well as the bodies of men.

4. Other potentates are content with wearing a single crown; but the popes crowned themselves with three, rising one above the other. They assumed the title of Holiness; but some of them were as unholy men as ever lived, being full of earthly ambition, and guilty of many great crimes.

5. When their power was at its height, they showed themselves to be the haughtiest of mortals. No person was allowed to enter their presence without kneeling down to kiss their feet; and when they mounted on horseback, kings and emperors have held their stirrups. They assumed the power of taking away kingdoms from the rightful sovereigns, and bestowing them on others; and sometimes excommunicated whole nations, or preached crusades against them.

6. In 1077, pope Gregory VII. obliged Henry IV., emperor of Germany, to stand three days, in the depth of Winter, barefooted at his castle gate, to implore his pardon. In 1191, another pope kicked another emperor's crown off his head, while he was kneeling before him, to show that the pope could make and unmake kings at his pleasure.

7. It was near the year 1100, that one of the popes of Rome ordained that the title of pope should be given only to the bishop of Rome. It was about this period that the power of the popes was at its highest pitch; and for nearly four hundred years they continued to exercise an



undisputed sway over the kings, princes, and people, of the Christian world, who were all this time in a state of almost heathen darkness.

8. But in the year 1517, the Reformation was commenced by Martin Luther. He preached against the power of the popes, and the corruptions of the church, and all Europe was shaken with the convulsion which followed. The result was, that the political authority of the popes was utterly destroyed all over Europe, and nearly all the northern countries renounced all connexion with them in religious matters also, though a protracted warfare took place before this was accomplished.

9. The pope still governs Rome, and other adjacent territories in the centre of Italy. His dominions are bounded north by Lombardy, and in other directions by the Mediterranean Sea and the Adriatic, and by the kingdom of Naples, and the duchies of Modena and Tuscany. He is still acknowledged as the head of the Roman Catholic church, though his will is little regarded even in Catholic countries.

10. The city of Rome is at present thirteen miles in circumference. The greater part of it has a dark, gloomy, and desolate appearance. It is full of the ruins of the palaces and temples, and other magnificent edifices of the ancient Romans; and innumerable statues are supposed to be buried under ground.

11. But these ruins and relics are not the only remains of ancient Rome. There are a great many works still existing, written by the old Roman authors: [many of them are very interesting, and from them modern nations have derived many of their laws and institutions.

12. The contrast between the ancient and modern city of Rome, striking as it is, is hardly greater than the difference between the hardy warriors of former times, and the *degenerate* people who now claim the name of Romans.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of the popes in early times?—2. Of Gregory II.? When was the pope's title to rule over Rome established? Of popes in the year 755? Their pride and power?—3. What did the popes claim? What did they call themselves? What of their tyranny?—4. Of the crowns of the popes? What title did they assume?—5. How did their pride manifest itself? What power did they assume?—6. What did pope Gregory VII. do in 1077? What of another pope in 1191?—7. What of the power of the pope about the year 1100? When was it at its highest pitch? How long did its sway continue? What was the state of the world at this time?—8. What took place in 1517? What of Martin Luther? What was the result of the Reformation?—9. What of the pope at the present day? Where are his dominions? Of what church is he the head?—10. What of the present city of Rome?—11. What of the old Roman writers? What have the moderns derived from them?—12. What of the Roman people?



Arch of Constantine, at Rome.

CHAPTER XCI. EUROPE continued.—*About several other Italian States.*



View of the Rialto, at Venice.

1. ITALY is now divided into several distinct states ; and at some future day it will be well for you to read the story of these celebrated countries. In this little book I can only give you a very brief account of two or three of them.

2. The kingdom of Naples, or the kingdom of the two Sicilies, includes the island of Sicily, and the southern extremity of the peninsula of Italy. It adjoins the foot of the figure of a boot, which I have before mentioned. This kingdom has a population of seven millions.

3. The history of Naples, after it was separated from the Roman empire, possesses very little interest. In the eighth century it was ravaged by the Saracens, and the troops of the emperor of the East ; afterwards it was conquered by the Normans. Long wars followed between the French and the Spaniards, during the middle ages, and *it is now governed by a branch of the house of Bourbon.*

4. The history of Venice is more interesting. When the northern barbarians invaded Italy in 452, some of the inhabitants fled to the marshes along the border of the Adriatic Sea, and supported themselves by fishing, making salt, and by commerce. In the year 809, they commenced building the city of Venice, on a little island called Rialto. To this place they transported their riches, and soon the new city became the capital of the Republic of Venice. The city and state increased, until at length Venice was one of the most powerful states in the world.

5. The inhabitants paid great attention to commerce, and such was the number of their ships, that, in the twelfth century, Venice sent a fleet of two hundred sail to assist in the crusades. To testify their supremacy over the Adriatic, the doge used yearly to cast a ring into it, which was called "wedding the sea."

6. The power of Venice continued to increase, and when Constantinople was captured by the crusaders, the spoils of the captured city, consisting of gems and jewellery, books, marbles, pictures, statues, obelisks, and other costly treasures, were chiefly carried to Venice.

7. The republic flourished for many years, and conquered the Morea, and many of the Greek islands. The government, though called a republic, was a pure despotism, exercised by three persons, and the people were ruled in the most cruel and oppressive manner. But I have only room to add, that toward the close of the last century, it fell a victim to the power of France, and since the year 1798, it has formed part of the empire of Austria.

8. I could fill a book with tales about Genoa, which was at one time the rival of Venice; about Tuscany, which is considered the most beautiful portion of the country, and about the kingdom of Sardinia, which lies in the northern part of Italy. But as it is impossible to tell a long story in a little book, I must let these things pass.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. How is Italy now divided?—2. What does the kingdom of Naples include? Population? Direction from Rome?—3. Its history?—4. What of the history of Venice? When and where was Venice built? What did it become?—5. What of the commerce of Venice? Fleet? The doge?—6. Power of Venice? What city was taken by Venice and the crusaders? What of the spoils of Constantinople?—7. What of the republic of Venice for many years? What of France? What of Venice since 1798?—8. What of Genoa? Tuscany? Sardinia? Direction of each of these places from Rome?

## CHAPTER XCII. EUROPE continued.—*Chronology of Rome.*

	BEFORE CHRIST.
Building of Rome by Romulus	75
Numa Pompilius made king	716
Tullus Hostilius	672
Expulsion of the Tarquins	509
Tribunes of the people chosen	493
Decemviri chosen	461
Censors appointed	442
Rome taken and burnt by the Gauls	389
Theatres first established at Rome	362
War with the Samnites	343
The first Aqueduct built	312
The sandial introduced	293
All Italy submits to Rome	270
First Punic war begins	264
Second Punic war	218
Carthage destroyed	146
Greece becomes a Roman province	146
Spain becomes a province of Rome	133
Social war begins, and continues three years	91
War between Marius and Sylla	86
Death of Mithridates	64
The first triumvirate formed	59
Cæsar invades Britain	55
Battle of Pharsalia, and death of Pompey	48
Death of Cæsar	44
The second triumvirate	43
Egypt becomes a Roman province	30

	A. D.
Death of Augustus Caesar - - - - -	14
Tiberius died - - - - -	37
Caligula assassinated - - - - -	40
Claudius poisoned - - - - -	54
Death of Nero - - - - -	68
Vitellius ascends the throne - - - - -	69
Titus becomes emperor - - - - -	79
Hyginus, the first bishop of Rome who took the title of pope	154
Constantine began to reign - - - - -	306
Christianity adopted as the religion of the empire - - -	324
Constantine removes the seat of empire to Constantinople	339
First division of the Roman empire between Valentinian and Valens - - - - -	364
The empire again divided by Theodosius - - - - -	395
Rome taken by Alaric - - - - -	410
Italy invaded by Attila - - - - -	451
Rome plundered by Genseric - - - - -	455
Rome taken by Odoacer - - - - -	476
The Goths driven from Rome by Belisarius - - - - -	537
The pope's supremacy over the Catholic church asserted	607
Custom of kissing the pope's toe introduced - - - - -	706
Gregory II., founder of the pope's temporal power, became pope - - - - -	715
The pope's temporal power established - - - - -	756
Charlemagne crowned emperor by the pope - - - - -	800
Venice built - - - - -	809
Leo IX., the first pope that kept an army, died - - -	1054
The pope's authority introduced into England - - - - -	1069
The emperor Henry IV. obliged to stand three days at the pope's gate - - - - -	1077
The pope kicks off the emperor Henry the Sixth's crown	1191
Residence of the popes removed from Rome to Avignon, where it remained 70 years - - - - -	1305
The Reformation commenced by Martin Luther - - -	1517
Rome sacked, and pope Clement VII. imprisoned by the troops of the emperor Charles V. - - - - -	1527
Kissing the pope's toe abolished - - - - -	1773
The republic of Venice attached to Austria - - - - -	1798

**CHAPTER XCIII.** EUROPE continued.—*About the Ottoman empire. Turkey in Europe. Turkey in Asia. About the climate, people, and other things.*

1. THE Turkish or Ottoman empire is divided into two parts, called Turkey in Europe, and Turkey in Asia. It was formerly much more extensive than at present, but it still embraces a large region of territory in Europe, lying between Greece on the south, and Russia and Germany on the north; this portion is called Turkey in Europe. Turkey in Asia consists of Asia Minor and some islands in the Mediterranean, and till lately included Syria and Palestine. Egypt and the Barbary states in Africa were also subject to Turkey, till within a few years. The capital of this empire is Constantinople, which I have often mentioned before, and which at this day is one of the greatest cities in the world.

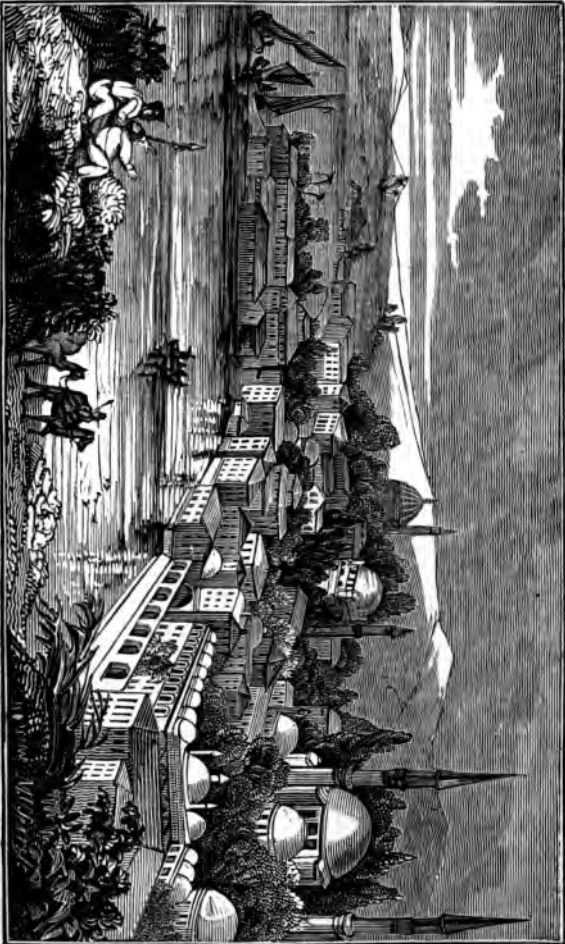
2. The chief ruler of the Turks is called the sultan. He lives at Constantinople, in a splendid palace, and, like most eastern princes, has many wives, who are shut up in a place called the harem.

3. The Turks have long beards, wear turbans on their heads, and a loose flowing robe over their under dress; they sit on cushions instead of chairs, and take their food with their fingers instead of forks; but the present sultan is endeavouring to introduce many European customs.

4. The sultan rules his subjects according to laws laid down in the Koran; and in all matters not contrary to these, his power is absolute over life and property.

5. If you were to go to Turkey, you would discover that the climate is warm, and the country naturally fertile; you would see that the people are indolent and cruel; you would see that they have not many manufactures, and but little commerce. You would see that the lands are poorly cultivated, and that many tracts naturally *fruitful are barren and desolate for want of tillage.*

6. You would discover that the people dislike the Christians, and worship according to the faith of Mo-



View of Constantinople.

ammed, and you would discover that they have mosques



instead of churches. At Constantinople, you would see a very splendid edifice, called St. Sophia, which was formerly a Greek church, but is now converted into a Mohammedan mosque.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What other name has the Turkish empire? How is the Ottoman empire divided? Where is Turkey in Europe? How is it bounded? Which way is Constantinople from Athens? From Jerusalem? From Egypt? From England? Was the Turkish empire more extensive once than it is now? What does Turkey in Asia now include? What other countries formerly belonged to the Turkish empire? How is Asia Minor divided from Turkey in Europe? What of the countries that formerly belonged to the Ottoman empire? Capital of Turkey? What of Constantinople?—2. Of the sultan?—3. Describe the Turks?—



The Mosque of St. Sophia.

4. How does the sultan rule the Turks? What of the people?—  
 5. Soil and climate of Turkey? The people? Manufactures? Commerce? Lands?—6. Religion of the Turks? What are their places of worship called? St. Sophia?
- 

**CHAPTER XCIV.** EUROPE continued.—*About the Saracens. How the Turks overturned the Saracen empire. How the Ottoman Turks founded the Ottoman empire. About Bajazet and Timour. Fall of Constantinople.*

1. IN the history of Asia I have given you some account of the Saracens, and these you will remember were Arabs, by whose help Mohammed and his successors established an empire at the commencement of the seventh century.

2. The kings or rulers of the Saracen empire were called caliphs, and resided at Bagdad, a splendid city which they built near the river Tigris, in Mesopotamia. I have told you how these caliphs extended their empire over a considerable part of Asia and Africa, and some portions of Europe.

3. To the north of Mesopotamia, there were several tribes of Tartars, among which were some called Turks. These were daring warriors, and such was their fame, that the caliphs induced many of them to come to Bagdad and serve as soldiers.

4. In process of time, the Turks acquired great influence at Bagdad, and finally overturned the Saracen empire, made themselves masters of nearly all the Saracen possessions, and adopted the Mohammedan religion. Thus the Turkish empire became the successor of the Saracen empire, and included in its dominion Asia Minor, Syria, Palestine, and other Asiatic countries, which the Saracens had conquered from the Greek empire. The taking of Jerusalem by the Turks in 1065 occasioned the crusades, as they were too bigoted to allow Christian pilgrims to visit the sepulchre of our blessed Lord.

5. After a while, the Turkish empire, which had been thus established, was overturned by another tribe of Turks, who called themselves Ottomans; these came from the country east of the Caspian Sea, and laid the foundation of the present Ottoman empire. This took place in the year 1299. The founder of the empire was Othman, whose successors greatly enlarged his dominions, and conquered many of the provinces of the Greek empire, till they came at last to the gates of Constantinople.

6. Constantinople, the present capital of Turkey, was anciently called Byzantium, from Byzas, who founded it 715 years before Christ. It was a flourishing city in the time of the early Greeks, and the neighbouring country was settled by colonies from Greece, and by other tribes. It was conquered by the Romans, and the name of Byzantium was changed to Constantinople, by the emperor Constantine, in 329.

7. It had, before this period, fallen into decay; but it was now revived, and Constantine removed thither with his whole court; it thus became the capital of the Roman empire. When that was divided into the Eastern and Western empires, in 364, it was the capital of the former, which, as you know, was often called the Greek empire.

8. In the year 1204, the Crusaders made themselves masters of Constantinople, and part of the surrounding country; thus founding what is called the Latin empire. In 1264 it was reconquered by the Greeks, and continued to subsist as a distinct sovereignty, till the period of which I am now treating, when it was, as I have said, on the brink of ruin, but its fall was for a time averted, by a check which the Ottomans at this time received.

9. Their ruler was Bajazet, who began to reign in 1389, and was so famous for his conquests, that the Turks called him the Thunderbolt. He was preparing to attack Constantinople, when a greater warrior than he came from *Tartary*, and conquered him. This was Timour the

Tartar, sometimes called Timour the Lame, who defeated Bajazet in a great battle.

10. It is said that, when Timour had got Bajazet the Thunderbolt into his power, he put him into an iron cage, and carried him about for a show, like a wild beast, till he died of grief and vexation.

11. The misfortunes of Bajazet prevented the Turks from attacking the Eastern empire for a considerable time; but, in 1453, when Mohammed the Second was sultan, they took Constantinople, and the emperor, whose name was Constantine, was killed. From this time forward the Turks were securely established in Europe, and the country which they inhabited was called Turkey.

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the Saracens? By whom was the Saracen empire established?—2. What of the caliphs? Direction of Bagdad from Constantinople? Dominion of the caliphs?—3. Who were the Turks? Where did they live? Why were they employed by the caliphs of Bagdad?—4. What did the Turks do? What of the Turkish empire?—5. By whom was the first Turkish dynasty overturned? By whom was the Ottoman empire founded, and when?—6. What of Constantinople? By whom was it founded, and when?—What of it in the time of the early Greeks? When was its name changed? By whom and when was Byzantium called Constantinople?—7. When was it made the capital of the Roman empire? What took place in 395? What was called the Greek empire? What countries did the Eastern empire of the Romans include? ANS. Greece, Macedon, what is now called Turkey in Europe, Asia Minor, and other adjacent countries.—8. Who was Bajazet? In what year did he begin to reign? What did the Turks call him? What of Timour?—9. How did Timour treat Bajazet?—10. What happened in 1453?

## CHAPTER XCV. EUROPE continued.—*Sequel of the Turkish History.*

1. THE reigns of most of the Turkish sultans have been full of crime and bloodshed. Sultan Selim, who began to reign in 1512, invaded Egypt, and conquered it. The

Egyptian soldiers were called Mamelukes, of whom I have told you in the history of Egypt. They were defeated, and thousands of them taken prisoners, when the sultan ordered a splendid throne to be erected on the banks of the river Nile, near the gates of Cairo, and seated on this throne, he caused all the Mamelukes to be massacred in his sight, and their bodies to be thrown into the river.

2. Mohammed the Third, who ascended the throne in 1596, had nineteen brothers, all of whom he caused to be strangled, lest they should conspire against him.

3. Amurath the Fourth became sultan in 1621. This monster caused many thousand men to be murdered, and the sport that pleased him best, was to run about the streets at night, with a drawn sword, cutting and slashing at everybody whom he met.

4. These facts will show the reader what kind of a government the Turks have lived under. The present sultan, whose name is Mahmoud the Second, ascended the throne in 1808: he is more enlightened than his predecessors, but many of his reforms have been effected by means savouring too much of the barbarism of their times. This was particularly the case in regard to the janizaries, a large body of guards, established in 1300, who continued to be a very powerful body for several centuries, and became more dangerous than all the other subjects of the empire, which, indeed, they claimed the right of disposing of at pleasure.

5. Sultan Mahmoud therefore determined to free himself from their power; and accordingly, in the year 1826, he ordered the rest of his troops (who had been taught the European exercise) to surround the janizaries, which was done, and they were all massacred.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the reigns of some of the Turkish sultans? What of sultan Selim? Of the Mamelukes? What did

the sultan order?—2. In what year did Mohammed the Third ascend the throne? What crime did he commit?—3. Who became sultan in 1621? What of Amurath the Fourth?—4. Who is the present sultan? In what year did he ascend the throne? What of him? Who were the janizaries? When were they established?—5. What was done in 1826?



Turks.

---

**CHAPTER XCVI. EUROPE continued.—*Early history of Spain. The Moorish Conquest.***

1. THE kingdom of Spain is divided from France on the north by the Pyrenees, and has Portugal on the west; its other boundaries are, the Atlantic Ocean, the Bay of Biscay, and the Mediterranean Sea. The whole country, with Portugal, forms a large peninsula, nearly square in shape.

2. Spain is a very remarkable country; it is full of wild, rocky mountains, with beautiful valleys between. The climate is warm and delightful, and the country produces abundance of grapes, olives, oranges, lemons, almonds, figs, citrons, and pomegranates.

3. Spain is celebrated for a very fine breed of horses. It was also the country from which the merino sheep were first brought, of which there are many now in this country, and they produce the finest wool in the world.

4. Spain has about thirteen millions of inhabitants. The people are generally ignorant and superstitious, but they are ceremonious and polite; and are fond of gay dances in the open air. Madrid, the capital of Spain, is a very splendid city.



Spaniards.

5. Spain has many castles, churches, and palaces, built by the Moors, of whom I shall soon tell you the story. These edifices are some of the most wonderful buildings in the world, and are totally unlike those of ancient Greece and Rome. They bear some resemblance to what is called the Gothic architecture, such as Westminster Abbey.

6. If I had time and room, I should like very much to tell you a long story about Spain; but I shall be obliged

to say very little of it, and leave you afterwards to pursue the subject in some larger book.

7. Little is known about the history of Spain till the Phœnicians made voyages thither. They came from Phœnicia, which, you know, was close to the land of Canaan, a distance of two thousand miles, to the Straits of Gibraltar, the mountains on each side of which they called the pillars of Hercules. The ancients never sailed far beyond them, into the broad Atlantic Ocean.

8. The Greeks founded several cities in Spain; and afterwards the Carthaginians acquired possession of the country; but it was conquered by the Romans in the year 133 before Christ, who kept it till the year 406 after the Christian era. Spain was then invaded by barbarians from the north, called the Suevi, the Alani, and the Vandals. Some of these people continued in the country more than a hundred years; they were then driven out by another set of barbarians, called Goths, or Visigoths, who overran the whole of Spain, became established in the country, and finally founded a kingdom there.

9. After the Goths had been in Spain about two hundred years, a king mounted the throne, whose name was Roderic. This king grievously injured Count Julian, who was one of the most powerful of the Spanish or Gothic nobles, and who, in order to avenge himself, took steps which occasioned the ruin of his country. The Saracens, (sometimes called Moors,) were then in possession of the coast of Africa opposite Spain, and to them Count Julian applied, to invade Spain, and dethrone King Roderic. Accordingly a great number of them landed on the Spanish shores, under the command of a general named Tarik. Roderic the Goth gathered an army, and encountered them at Xeres, in the south of Spain, where a great battle was fought, in which the Saracens were completely victorious. The fate of King Roderic was never known; his horse, and his sword, helmet, shield, and breastplate, were



found by the side of a river, near the field of battle, but his body was nowhere to be seen. These events occurred about 712 years after the birth of Christ.

10. The Spaniards long believed that King Roderic was alive, and that, at some future day, he would again lead an army to battle against the invaders; but his war-shout was heard no more, and as the Gothic monarchy was ruined by his fall, he is called Roderic the last of the Goths.

11. Pelagio, a prince of the blood-royal, took the command of his countrymen, and led them into the mountainous regions of Asturias and Burgos, in the north, where he founded a little kingdom. This was the only part of Spain which the Moors never conquered. The successors of Pelagio enlarged the boundaries of his kingdom, but, for a long time, the Saracens possessed three-fourths of Spain.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. In what part of Europe is Spain? What sea lies between Spain and England? How is Spain divided from France? Boundaries of Spain?—2. What sort of a country is Spain? Climate? Productions?—3. What of the horses of Spain? Merino sheep?—4. Population? What of the people? Capital? What of Madrid?—5. What of the Moorish buildings in Spain?—7. What of the early history of Spain? Situation of Phœnicia? How far from Spain? In what direction from Spain? What did the Phœnicians do in Spain? What straits connect the Mediterranean Sea with the Atlantic Ocean? Where were the pillars of Hercules? How far did the ancients venture to go in their vessels?—8. What of the Greeks? The Carthaginians? The Romans? What barbarians conquered Spain? About what time did they conquer Spain? How long did the Suevi and other barbarians remain in Spain? Who drove out the Suevi? What of the Goths?—9. What of King Roderic? Count Julian? To whom did Count Julian apply? What did the Moors do? What followed? Fate of King Roderic? How long ago did this happen?—10. What did the Spaniards believe? Why was Roderic called the last of the Goths?—11. What of Pelagio? What was the only part of Spain not conquered by the Moors? What of the successors of Pelagio? What portion of Spain did the Moors long possess?

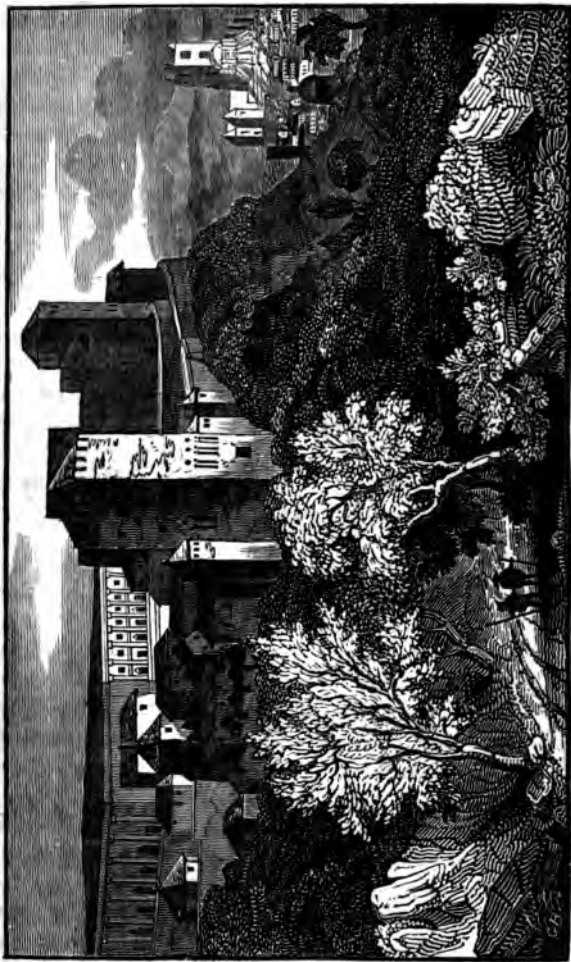
CHAPTER XCVII. EUROPE continued.—*Wars between the Moors and the Spaniards.*



Moors.

1. THE Moors were a barbarous people when they first conquered Spain; but they soon became civilized and polished, and learning was more cultivated amongst them than in any other part of Europe. In the city of Cordova, the capital of their kingdom, there was a library of six hundred thousand volumes, and there were likewise seventy public libraries in other parts of their territories. The Moors were great lovers of poetry and music.

2. They built many noble edifices in Spain. The Alhambra, in the city of Granada, was the palace of the Moorish sovereigns: it was of marble, and ornamented with beautiful sculptures, and the sultry atmosphere was cooled by fountains, which spouted continually in the chambers and halls. Beneath the Alhambra were vaults, which the Moorish kings had caused to be dug, that they



The Moorish Palace of the Alhambra, at Granada, in Spain.

might be buried there ; for they loved the Alhambra so well, that they used it both as their palace and sepulchre.

3. But the Spaniards and the Moors were constantly at war, the victory sometimes falling to one party, and sometimes to the other. Eighty thousand Moors are said to have been slain in a single battle, while on the other hand, a Moorish hero, of the name of Almanzor, is said to have vanquished the Spaniards in more than fifty battles. He took the city of Compostella, and compelled his captives to carry the gates of a large edifice from thence to Cordova, four hundred miles distant, on their shoulders.

4. The most famous warrior that appeared on the other side, was Don Rodrigo de Bivar, surnamed the Cid Campeador, or the Incomparable Lord. He gained so many battles against the Moors, that at last the Spaniards considered victory certain whenever the Cid Campeador was at their head. When the Incomparable Lord was dead, the courage of the Moors revived ; they boldly attacked the Spaniards, and besieged the city where the Cid Campeador lay buried. The Spaniards went forth to meet them, and at their head rode an armed warrior, with a countenance like death. The Moors recognised his features and fled ; for it was the Cid Campeador ! The Spaniards had taken his body from the tomb, and placed it on the war-horse which he rode in his lifetime, and thus the dead warrior won another victory.

5. Many other wonderful stories are told about the Moorish and Spanish wars. Sometimes, it is said, a saint came down from heaven, to lead the Spaniards to battle ; sometimes the sun stood still that they might have time to kill their enemies ; sometimes they were encouraged by the appearance of a blazing cross in the sky. These, of course, are but fables, but it is certain that the Moors gradually lost their Spanish territories, till nothing remained to them except Grenada, and in the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella, they were wholly driven out of Spain. This

event took place in 1492, nearly eight centuries after the overthrow of king Roderic the Goth.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of the Moors? What of the libraries in Cordova? In other cities? What did the Moors love?—2. What did they build in Spain? Describe the Alhambra. What were beneath the Alhambra?—3. Wars of the Spaniards and Moors? What of Almanzor? What city did he take?—4. What famous warrior can you mention? What of him? Of the Moors after his death? Who rode at the head of the Spaniards? How were the Moors affected by seeing the dead body of the Cid Campeador?—5. What stories are told of the Moorish and Spanish wars? What at last remained to the Moors? In what year were the Moors driven out of Spain?

---

#### CHAPTER XCVIII. EUROPE continued.—*The Spanish Inquisition.*

1. THE reign of Ferdinand and Isabella was disgraced by the establishment of the Spanish Inquisition. The design of this horrible tribunal was to prevent the people from adopting any but the Catholic religion.

2. Persons who were suspected of being what the priests of those days were pleased to call heretics, were thrown into damp and dismal dungeons. They were then brought before the inquisitors, who sat covered with long black robes and hoods; their faces were concealed, but they looked at the prisoners through holes in their hoods.

3. If the accused persons would not plead guilty, they were tortured in various ways. Sometimes they were drawn up to the roof of the chamber by a rope, and after hanging some time, the rope was loosened, so that they fell almost to the floor, when the rope was suddenly tightened again, and the prisoner's limbs were put out of joint by the shock. In short, the cruelties committed by this dreadful tribunal were too frightful to be told.

4. When the inquisitors had satisfied themselves with torturing their prisoners, they prepared to burn them.

The condemned persons walked in a procession, dressed in garments which were painted with flames, and on their breasts they wore their own likenesses, in the act of being devoured by serpents and wild beasts.

5. When they reached the place of execution, the victims were fastened to a stake with iron chains, and roasted to death by slow fires. They sometimes suffered the agony of this torment for two or three hours, before death relieved them. Such were the horrors of the Inquisition, yet it was introduced into Portugal, Italy, and other Catholic countries, and continued in operation for nearly three hundred years. It has been supposed that between thirty and forty thousand persons were burnt alive, before the Inquisition was abolished.

6. The remembrance of the Inquisition will ever cause a stain to rest upon the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella. It was the great glory of this king and queen, that they gave Christopher Columbus the means of discovering America, but even Columbus was thrown into a dungeon, as the reward of his discovery!

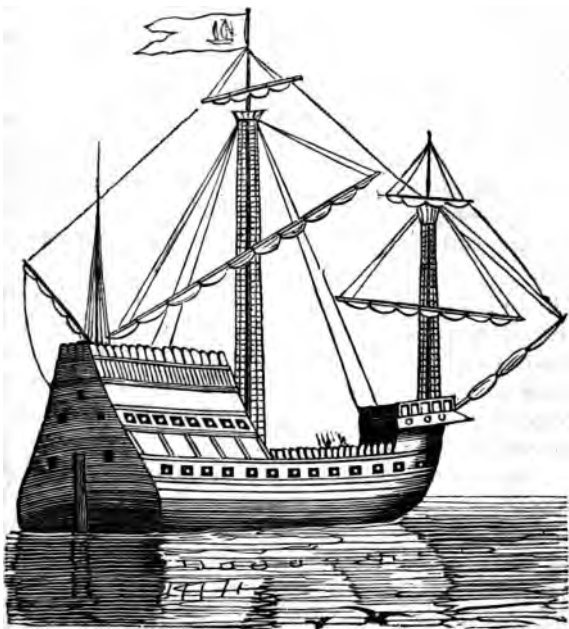
7. The Spaniards made great conquests in America. The riches of the country were in this way much increased; and there was more silver and gold in Spain than in all the rest of Europe. But it is doubtful whether Spain ever derived any real benefit from her American colonies, for, instead of staying at home to cultivate the soil, the inhabitants crossed the ocean in search of gold and silver.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. In what reign was the Inquisition established? What was its design?—2. How were suspected persons treated? Describe the inquisitors.—3. How were the accused persons tortured?—4, 5. Describe the burning of the prisoners. How long did the Inquisition continue in operation?—6. What of the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella? What was the glory of their reign? What was the fate of Columbus?—7. What of the Spaniards? Of the riches of Spain? Were the American colonies any benefit to Spain?

CHAPTER XCIX.. EUROPE continued.—*The Invincible Armada. Singular death of a Spanish King. Recent affairs of Spain.*

1. ONE of the most powerful monarchs of Spain was Philip the Second. He was not only king of Spain, but he obtained the crown of Portugal also, in 1580; although Portugal afterwards became a separate kingdom again. It had first been declared independent of Spain at the beginning of the twelfth century.



Spanish War Galleon, forming part of the Armada against England

2. Philip wished to conquer England, and prepared for that purpose a mighty fleet which was called the In-

vincible Armada. But it was conquered almost without a battle, for a storm scattered it, and drove many of the ships on the British coast, and the rest were easily defeated.

3. The son of Philip was a weak-minded man, the manner of whose death was very singular. He was sitting, one day, in the council-chamber, which was warmed by a large stove; the heat and vapour of the stove affected his head.

4. He ordered the attendants to quench the fire; but the person whose duty it was to do this happened not to be in the chamber, and the rules of the Spanish court were so strict, that it would have been unlawful for any other person to touch the fire.

5. Moreover, it would have been beneath the king's dignity to leave the chamber, or even to move his chair back from the stove. So the fire continued to grow hotter, and the poor king grew more and more sick, till at last it was impossible to cure him; and thus he died, by a kind of death that could have befallen nobody but a Spanish king.

6. In the year 1700, Charles the Second of Spain died without children, and was succeeded by a young French prince, named Philip, duke of Anjou, the grandson of Louis the Fourteenth, in whose favour Charles was said to have made a will. The kings of this family are called the Spanish Bourbons.

7. This event caused a long war in Europe, called the War of the Succession, in which the Duke of Marlborough gained many great victories. Charles, archduke of Austria, claimed the crown of Spain, and he and Philip of Anjou alternately drove each other out of Madrid. In 1713 peace was made, when Philip retained possession.

8. Spain has often been at war with this country. She united with France against England, during the American War; but peace was concluded in 1783. In 1808, when the emperor Napoleon was at the height of his power, he



compelled the Spanish king, Ferdinand the Seventh, to abdicate his throne. Napoleon then placed the crown of Spain upon the head of his brother, Joseph Bonaparte, but most of the Spaniards refused to acknowledge king Joseph as their sovereign, and a bloody war ensued. The English government sent armies into Spain and Portugal; and it was there that the Duke of Wellington gained his great victories over the French.

9. King Ferdinand was replaced upon the throne in 1814. He was, however, a tyrant and a bigot, and his reign was mischievous to the country. His death took place in 1833. Since that event, Spain has been ravaged by a civil war, between Don Carlos and the young queen Maria Isabella, the daughter of Ferdinand. Many battles have been fought, and great cruelties committed on both sides, in this war, which still continues to desolate the country.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of Philip the Second? Of Portugal? —2. Of the Invincible Armada?—3. Describe the death of Philip's son.—6. What happened in the year 1700? Who succeeded Charles the Second? Who were the Spanish Bourbons?—7. Why did Charles and Philip go to war? Who triumphed?—8. What of Spain? When was peace concluded between Spain and England?—9. What did Napoleon compel the Spanish king to do in 1808? Who was Ferdinand the Seventh? Whom did Napoleon make king of Spain? What of the Spaniards? Of the English government? Of the Duke of Wellington?—9. When was Ferdinand replaced upon the throne? What of him? In what year did he die? What of the civil war in Spain?



Medals commemorative of the Discovery of America by Columbus.

CHAPTER C. EUROPE continued.—*A short Story about Portugal.*



Belem Castle, near Lisbon.

1. PORTUGAL lies to the west of Spain, and is bounded on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. The population of the country is nearly four millions. The capital is Lisbon. This is a large city, and many English vessels visit it for wines, grapes, oranges, and lemons.

2. The climate of Portugal is similar to that of Spain; and the people a good deal resemble the Spaniards, but speak a language somewhat different. The Portuguese are very ignorant and bigoted.

3. Portugal was originally considered a part of Spain, and shared in the fortunes of that country, till the twelfth century, when it became independent. Since that time it has been considered a separate kingdom, though it has been subject to Spain during a portion of this period.

4. The history of Portugal is of little interest, till about the year 1400, when the Portuguese commenced the task of navigating the Atlantic Ocean. At that time, this

great sea was known only for a short distance along the coast of Africa. But the little Portuguese vessels ventured further and further, and finally one of them reached the Cape of Good Hope. After this, a Portuguese fleet passed entirely round Africa, crossed the Indian Ocean, and reached India.



Portuguese Costumes.

5. These wonderful adventures and discoveries excited other nations, and in a few years Christopher Columbus discovered America. Thus the Portuguese may be considered as having led the way to the discovery of that vast continent, which was unknown to the people of Europe, Asia, and Africa, till the year 1492.

6. In the year 1578, King Sebastian being slain in battle by the Moors, Portugal was seized on by the Spaniards, who retained possession till 1640, when they were expelled by the Duke of Braganza, the rightful heir. Nothing very remarkable happened in Portugal from this time till the year 1755. At that date, an earthquake took place,

which shook down nearly the whole city of Lisbon : houses, churches, and palaces, were suddenly tumbled into heaps of ruins ; large chasms were opened in the earth, and hundreds of houses were plunged into them. The sea at first rolled back from the land, and then returned, sweeping everything before it. In this awful calamity, ten thousand persons lost their lives.

7. The Portuguese founded many colonies in different parts of the world ; as Goa, in the East Indies, and Brazil, in South America. To this latter place the King of Portugal retired with his family in 1807, and established his court at Rio Janeiro, the capital of the country. This was done because Portugal had been invaded by the French. The French being driven out in 1808, the king returned in a few years. After his death there was a contest for the crown, but it was finally settled upon Donna Maria, the present queen, the daughter of his eldest son, Don Pedro.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Boundaries of Portugal ? Population ? Capital ? Direction of Lisbon from London ? Madrid ? From Paris ? What of Lisbon ?——2. Climate of Portugal ? The people ? Language ?——3. What of Portugal ? When did it become independent ? What of Portugal since the twelfth century ?——4. Of the Portuguese after about 1400 ? Of the Atlantic at that time ? Of the Portuguese vessels ? Their discoveries ?——5. What consequences followed the Portuguese discoveries ?——6. What of Don Sebastian ? What happened in 1755 ? Describe the earthquake.——7. Colonies of Portugal. What of the King of Portugal ? When and why did he remove to Brazil ? What followed ? Who is the present queen ?

---

CHAPTER CI. EUROPE continued.—*Chronology of Turkey, Spain, and Portugal.*

BEFORE CHRIST.	
The Phœnicians trade to Spain about - - - -	900
The Carthaginians make conquests in Spain about - -	500
Hannibal takes Saguntum in Spain - - - -	219
Spain subjected to the Roman power - - - -	133
A.D.	
Spain invaded by the northern barbarians - - - -	406
Kingdom of the Visigoths founded in Spain - - - -	419
Roderic, king of Spain, defeated by the Moors - - -	712
Portugal subjected by the Moors - - - - -	713
Kingdom of Portugal founded - - - - -	1146
Ottoman empire founded - - - - -	1299
Sultan Bajazet began to reign - - - - -	1389
Bajazet defeated by Timour - - - - -	1402
First voyage of discovery by the Portuguese - - -	1412
The Turks take Constantinople - - - - -	1453
The Portuguese discover the Cape of Good Hope -	1481
Inquisition established in Spain - - - - -	1485
The Moors of Grenada driven out of Spain - - -	1492
America discovered by Columbus - - - - -	1492
The Portuguese discover Brazil - - - - -	1501
The Sultan Selim conquers Egypt - - - - -	1517
Philip II. ascended the throne of Spain - - - -	1556
King Sebastian of Portugal slain in battle against the Moors	1578
Philip II. seizes on Portugal - - - - -	1580
Mohammed III. ascends the Turkish throne - - -	1596
The Moorish population banished from Spain - - -	1620
Portugal becomes independent of Spain - - - -	1640
Charles II., king of Spain, died - - - - -	1700
Gibraltar taken by the English - - - - -	1704
Lisbon destroyed by an earthquake - - - - -	1755
King of Portugal goes to Brazil - - - - -	1807
Napoleon removes Ferdinand from the throne of Spain	1808
Inquisition abolished in Portugal - - - - -	1815
Revolution in Spain - - - - -	1820
Revolution in Portugal - - - - -	1820
Inquisition abolished in Spain - - - - -	1820
Massacre of the Janizaries in Turkey - - - - -	1826
Ferdinand VII., king of Spain, died - - - - -	1833

**CHAPTER CII. EUROPE continued.**—*Description of France. Its Climate. Cities. Manufactures. Manners and customs of the People.*



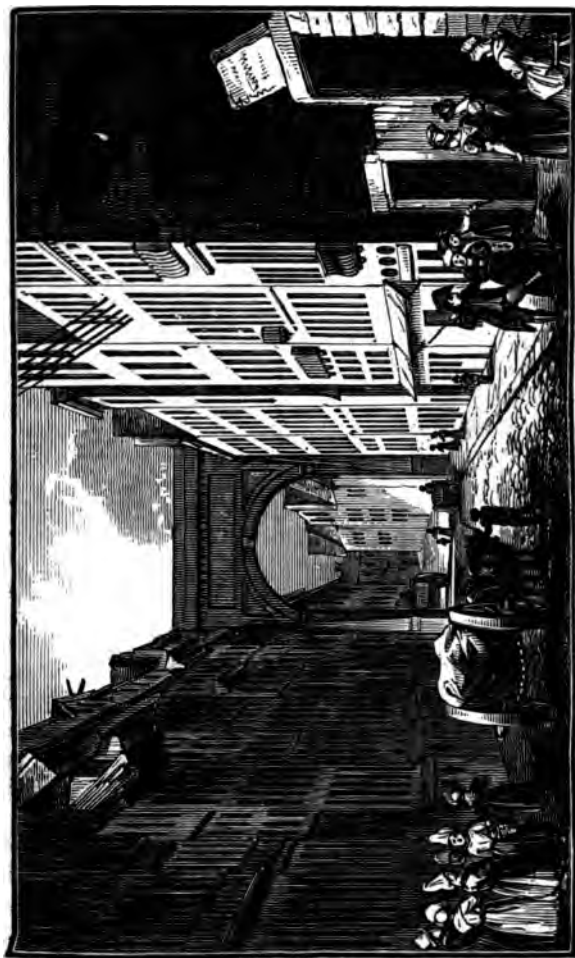
Modern French Diligence.

1. **FRANCE** lies in the western part of Europe, and contains about thirty-two millions of inhabitants. Paris, the capital, is a very fine city, surrounded with a wall of stone. It is full of large houses, beautiful public gardens, pleasant walks, and interesting places of amusement.

2. Beside Paris, there are a great many other large and handsome cities in France. Among these are Rouen, where the people manufacture a great deal of handsome jewellery; Lyons, where they make beautiful silks; Marseilles, where they deal in wines; and Bordeaux, in the midst of a country which produces fine grapes, and other delicious fruits.

3. The climate of France is generally milder than that of England; the soil is fruitful, and yields abundance of food for the numerous inhabitants. The country produces many kinds of fruits in great perfection, such as cherries, pears, plums, peaches, and figs; and it also yields immense

quantities of grapes, from which many kinds of choice wines are produced.



Street and Gate of Saint Denis, in Paris.

4. The people of France are very gay and cheerful; they live a great deal in the open air, and it is common in all parts of the country to see both men and women at work in the fields. They do not labour very hard, and during the holidays, of which they have a great many, they walk about the streets, and dance in the public gardens, or squares.

5. If the French are not the wisest people in the world, they seem to enjoy themselves better than most others. They are fond of music, and delight to get together, and talk about all sorts of things; they are very polite, and always treat strangers with particular civility. The gentlemen are very courteous to the ladies, and the ladies in return take every means in their power to make their society agreeable to the gentlemen.

6. The manufactures of France are numerous and valuable, and the people have an excellent taste in making jewellery, silks, clocks, watches, and many other ornamental things. These are sent to all parts of the world, and though they may not be considered very necessary, yet they give a great deal of pleasure, and thus have their use.

7. The French people are fond of dress, and the dress-makers of Paris set the fashions for the rest of the world. The milliners and mantua-makers of this city have more followers than any king that ever lived; for the gowns and bonnets of all the ladies of Europe and America are made according to their direction.

8. The French nation, on the whole, are a very interesting people. Though they might seem to be frivolous and thoughtless, yet France has produced many great men, and the history of the country abounds in records of splendid actions.

9. You might at first think them a nation of fiddlers, dress-makers, and dancing masters; but if you look deeper into their character, and read their history with attention,



you will see that perhaps they are the most warlike nation in Europe, and that if they spend their time in amusement, it is not because they are deficient in genius for the highest pursuits of the mind.

**QUESTIONS.** Where is France? Boundaries? Which way is France from Spain? From England? How would you go to France?—1. Population? Describe Paris. Direction from Madrid? Rome? London? What else of Paris?—2. What of Rouen? Of Lyons? Of Marseilles? Of Bordeaux?—3. Climate of France? Soil? Productions?—4. Character and manners of the French people?—5. What of the gentlemen? The ladies?—6. Manufactures of France? What is the use of the fancy articles manufactured in France?—7. What of the French as to dress? Milliners and mantua-makers?—8. What might seem to be the character of the French? What does their history display?—9. What of their talent for war? Their genius for other things?



Modern French Costumes.

CHAPTER CIII. EUROPE continued.—*About the Gauls and other tribes of Barbarians. How the southern parts of Europe were first settled, and how the northern parts were settled afterwards.*



Hut of uncivilized Northern Europeans.

1. In the course of this history, I have had frequent occasion to mention various northern tribes of Europe, called barbarians, and perhaps I shall not find a better opportunity than the present to give you some account of them. You remember that Greece was settled before any other part of Europe. The first inhabitants were the descendants of Japheth, and their descendants spread themselves over Greece, and probably other parts of Europe.

2. As the people increased along the shores of Asia and Africa, they sent colonies to countries on the opposite shores of the Mediterranean. Some settled in Greece, some in Italy, some in Spain, and these countries being warm, pleasant and fruitful, were soon filled with inhabitants. Dwelling upon the coast, they had a great many ships, and lived by commerce with other nations.

3. In this way, after many years, they grew rich, and built large cities, with good houses, temples and palaces. Such was the course of events in regard to all southern Europe, of which I have been telling you the story; but while these things were going on, various tribes were emigrating into the more northern portions of Europe.

4. Here the climate was colder, and the soil less fruitful; still, the woods were full of elks, rein-deer, fallow-deer, the roe-buck, wild bulls, wild boars, and many other animals. These supplied food for the inhabitants, and the chase furnished excellent sport to the adventurous men of those days.

5. Beside all this, in these regions unoccupied by man, whoever would come and take the land might have it. These circumstances invited the people to leave the soft, sunny regions of Greece, Italy, Spain, and also of Asia, for the colder and wilder realms of northern Europe.

6. Thus tribe followed tribe, and nation followed nation, until the whole country was occupied, from the Mediterranean on the south, to the Arctic Sea on the north.

7. Thus we see that the north of Europe was gradually settled by tribes that emigrated from the south of Europe, and from Asia. These might be compared to a vast stream that continued to flow on, growing wider and advancing farther, until at length the whole country was peopled. But these emigrants were savages, and of a warlike character; they therefore did not mingle into one great nation, but each tribe remained distinct, and as they increased in numbers, they increased in power.

8. After a while, something would happen to bring two tribes living near each other into a state of war; fierce battles would follow, and a great many would be killed. Sometimes one tribe would be completely vanquished, and they would all be slaughtered, or reduced to a state of slavery, or driven out of their country.

9. Among the most remarkable of these northern tribes

were the Gauls, who were the first known inhabitants of France; the Franks and Suevi, who inhabited Germany; the Goths and the Vandals, who inhabited Norway, Sweden, and Lapland, and afterwards established themselves in Germany; and the Huns, who lived in Hungary. There were still many other tribes, but it is not necessary to mention them here.

10. Well, you must now imagine all the north of Europe inhabited by these wild tribes; spending their time chiefly in the chase, or in war, or other hardy pursuits, and thus becoming bold, daring, and adventurous. Their numbers also increased, and some of them became powerful nations.

11. They were, however, generally restless, and, like beasts of prey, were constantly looking out for some object upon which they might fall and devour it. So things went on, till at length these barbarians fixed their attention upon the rich cities, the fertile plains, and vine-clad hills, of the south of Europe.

12. The Roman empire was now tottering to decay, and the Roman armies were no longer the dread of these tribes. About the year 400, they began to pour down their hordes upon the plains of Italy. Alaric, king of the Goths, laid Rome under contribution; and less than fifty years after, Attila, king of the Huns, threatened the same city with destruction. After this period, these restless invaders continued from time to time to attack the southern regions of Europe, till they made themselves masters of its finest portions.

13. As the northern barbarians of whom I have been speaking had no books, and wrote no histories, their early story is little known. After getting possession of Italy, Spain, and other southern portions of Europe, they settled in these countries.

14. For a time, literature and learning, the arts of poetry, painting, sculpture, and music, which had been cultivated by the Romans, were unknown in the countries

where they once flourished. But, by degrees, the new inhabitants became civilized and polished, and the modern nations, which now occupy these regions, may be considered as in part their descendants. It is now time to proceed with the history of France.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of Greece?—2. How were the shores of the Mediterranean settled? What of the people in these countries?—3. How were the northern portions of Europe settled?—4. Climate and soil of northern Europe? What furnished subsistence to the inhabitants?—5. What of the land? What induced the people to settle in northern Europe?—7. How was the north of Europe settled? To what may the emigration of the tribes be compared? What of these emigrants?—8. What of their wars?—9. Which were the most remarkable of the northern tribes?—10. Describe their mode of life.—11. What at length attracted their attention?—12. What of the Roman empire? When did the barbarians attack Italy? What of Alaric and Attila? What did the barbarians continue to do?—13. Where did the northern barbarians settle?—14. What of them for a time? What happened at length? What of the modern nations of the south of Europe?



Ancient Europeans tending Swine in the Forests.

CHAPTER CIV. EUROPE continued.—*The Gauls.*  
*Origin of the French nation.*   “

1. THE ancient name of France was Gaul, and the inhabitants, called Gauls, were one of those warlike tribes of which I have just been speaking. At a very early date, they appear to have been numerous and powerful. In the year 389 before Christ, they invaded Rome, under Brennus, and took that city, but were expelled by Camillus.

2. Under another Brennus they invaded Greece, as I have told you. In the time of Julius Cæsar, the Gauls had made some little progress towards civilization; but they were still a barbarous people, and retained many practices that belong only to savages. They had, however, many cities defended by strong walls.

3. When Cæsar entered the country, he found the Gauls sorely pressed by some of the German tribes. At first, he affected to be the deliverer of the Gauls from these troublesome enemies.

4. But the people soon discovered that Cæsar's real design was to conquer them. They then began to resist, and for nine long years they fought Cæsar and his armies with admirable skill and spirit. But the Romans were better versed in the art of war than the Gauls, their soldiers were better trained, and their implements of war were superior.

5. Notwithstanding all this, so brave and obstinate were the Gauls in the defence of their country, that it required all the genius of Julius Cæsar, one of the greatest leaders that ever lived, aided by the immense power of Rome, to subdue them.

6. Cæsar was occupied no less than nine years in conquering the Gauls, and it is supposed a million of men were slain in the bloody struggle. From the time of Cæsar's conquest, about fifty years before Christ, Gaul

was a Roman province, and the people gradually adopted the manners and customs of the Romans. Even their language became changed, and assumed a resemblance to the Latin. But between the third and fourth century, the Franks, a German tribe, whom I have mentioned, got possession of the greater part of Gaul.

7. It is said that the Franks who first established themselves in Gaul, were led by Pharamond. He died in 428, and was succeeded by his son Clodio, who was celebrated for the beauty of his hair. Clodio died in 448, and was succeeded by Meroveus; Meroveus died in 458, and was succeeded by Childeric. Very little is known of these kings, except the last.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What was the ancient name of France? Of the people? What did they do under Brennus?—2. When did they invade Greece? What of them in the time of Julius Cæsar? What of their cities?—3. What did Cæsar find on entering the country?—4. What did the people soon discover? What did they do? What of the Romans?—5. What of the Gauls? What was required to subdue them?—6. What was the consequence of this struggle between the Gauls and Romans? What of Gaul from this time? What of the Franks?—7. Pharamond? Clodio? Meroveus? What of these kings?

---

#### CHAPTER CV. EUROPE continued.—*About Clovis and little King Pepin.*

1. **CHILDERIC** is considered the founder of the French monarchy. He was succeeded by his son Clovis, who, when he was only nineteen years old, drove the Romans out of France, and afterwards gained a great victory over the Germans.

2. As Clovis had married a Christian princess, he attributed his success to the God whom she worshipped. He therefore determined to become a Christian himself, and *was baptized*, with three thousand of his subjects, on

Christmas day, in the year '496. After the death of Clovis, France was divided among several petty kings, who quarrelled among themselves, and caused great trouble to the nation. The wife of one of them was accused of murdering ten kings, or children of kings.

3. Little King Pepin, otherwise called Pepin the Short, thrust all the other kings from their thrones, and made himself sole ruler of France. He was a very small man, being only four feet and a half high ; but he had a mighty spirit in that little body.

4. Moreover, he had an enormous deal of strength. Knowing that some of his courtiers made fun of his little size, he resolved to show them that there was as much strength in him as there might be in a giant. He therefore invited them to see a fight between a lion and a bull.

5. The lion gave a tremendous roar, and leaped upon the bull's back, sticking his claws deep into the flesh, and the bull also roared with pain and terror, as well he might. Then little King Pepin, standing on tiptoe on his throne, to make himself as tall as he could, roared out to his courtiers, though not perhaps so loud as either the bull or the lion—

6. " Which of you all will make that lion let go his hold ? " The courtiers all stood silent and abashed ; for not one among them had any notion of venturing within reach of the lion's claws. " Then I'll do it myself ! " said King Pepin the Short. So the valiant little king leaped down from his throne, and drew a sword, perhaps almost as long as himself, and brandishing it in the air, ran up to the lion, who was still clinging to the mad bull's back.

7. When the lion beheld this terrible small champion, he doubtless opened his enormous jaws, as if he would snap him up at a mouthful. But little King Pepin made a blow at him with his sword, and struck him upon the neck.

8. Down fell the lion's head on one side of the bull, and down fell his body on the other ! And from that time



forward, the courtiers might as well have taken a roaring lion by the mane, as have laughed at little King Pepin.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Who was Childeric? What of Clovis?—2. Why did Clovis determine to be a Christian? When was he baptized? What of France after his death? What of the kings?—3, 4. Describe little King Pepin. What did he invite his courtiers to see?—5, 6, 7. Relate King Pepin's encounter with the lion.—8. How did his bravery affect his courtiers?



Childeric.

Clovis I.

Clotilda, wife of Clovis.

## CHAPTER CVI. EUROPE continued.—*The Reign of Charlemagne.*

1. KING Pepin the Little had a son, who was called Charlemagne, or Charles the Great. The epithet was given him because he was a mighty king and conqueror, but he also deserved it on account of his height, which is said to have been unusually great.

2. Charlemagne used to wear a sheepskin cloak, and

when he saw his courtiers richly dressed, would invite them to go hunting with him. On these occasions he took care to lead the way through all the thorns and bushes he could find, on purpose that his courtiers might tear their fine clothes in following him.

3. This king was continually at war. He subjugated the Saxons, and other tribes who lived in Germany, and likewise made conquests in Spain and Italy. At length, ruling over France, Germany, and other countries, he wished for the title of Emperor of the West.

4. Accordingly, he went to Rome, and knelt down at the high altar of the church as if to say his prayers. There was a large congregation in the church, who were much edified by the devout behaviour of Charlemagne, and while he was kneeling, the pope stole softly behind him, and placed the imperial crown upon his head.

5. This was the crown which all the old emperors of Rome had worn, and when the people beheld it on the head of Charlemagne, they shouted, "Long live the emperor!" Charlemagne pretended to be surprised and angry; but he took care to keep the imperial crown upon his head.

6. Charlemagne died in the year 814, when he was quite an old man. While he was alive, as I have mentioned, he wore a sheepskin cloak; but after he was dead, his attendants dressed him in robes of imperial purple.

7. They placed a throne of gold in his sepulchre, and set the dead body of the gray-bearded old emperor upon it. A sword was girded about his waist; he had a golden crown upon his head, a golden sceptre and shield at his feet, a golden chalice in his hand, and a Bible upon his knees.

8. Over the sepulchre, there was a magnificent triumphal arch, with an inscription to the memory of the mighty Charlemagne. And having wasted all this splendour upon the senseless corpse, the attendants shut up the tomb, and went to pay their court to Charlemagne's successor.

9. This was his son, entitled Louis the Mild. I know not wherefore he was called the Mild, for one of the acts of his reign was to put out the eyes of another king, whom he had taken prisoner. When Louis died, he left his dominions to his three sons, who immediately went to war with each other, and it is said that a hundred thousand men were slain in one of their battles.

10. Some of the succeeding kings of France were Charles the Bald, Louis the Stammerer, Charles the Fat, Charles the Simple, Louis the Foreigner, and Hugh Capet. These sovereigns performed no actions that need be recorded in my book.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Who was Charlemagne?—2. What of his dress? That of his courtiers?—3. What of Charlemagne? Over what countries did he reign? What did he wish?—4. What did he do? Describe his coronation.—6. When did Charlemagne die? How was his body dressed for his burial?—8. What was put over the sepulchre?—9. Who was Louis the Mild? What of him? What of his three sons?—10. Who were some of the succeeding kings of France?



Pepin.

Bertha, wife of Pepin.

Charlemagne.

CHAPTER CVII. EUROPE continued.—*About the Crusades, or Holy Wars.*

1. I MUST now give you some account of the Crusades, or Holy Wars, undertaken by the European nations for the recovery of Jerusalem, which was in the hands of the Turks. The Christians had a great reverence for this city, for here Christ preached, here he performed many miracles, here he was buried, and here he rose again from the dead.

2. On account of the pious reverence entertained for Jerusalem, which was called the Holy City, many Christian pilgrims went on foot to visit it. It was very common for the Roman Catholic priests to impose this pilgrimage on persons who had committed some sin, and they were made to believe that in this way alone they could receive pardon of God.

3. Now the pilgrims to Jerusalem were often treated with cruelty and scorn by the Turks, who held possession of Jerusalem and the country around it. The pilgrims returned to Europe, and gave an account of the treatment they received. This excited the indignation of the Christians, and they were easily induced to unite in a great effort for taking the Holy Land from the infidel Turks.

4. The pope of Rome at this time had vast influence, and he wished to acquire more. When this project was proposed, therefore, he gave it his sanction, thinking that he should extend his dominion over the Holy Land, if the country should be taken.

5. Peter the Hermit was the principal agent in exciting the people to the first crusade. He was a half-starved monk, and went about bareheaded, with a rope round his waist, and wearing a garment of coarse cloth. This was so short that it barely covered his body, leaving his arms and legs naked.

6. It might seem that such a figure as this would rather have excited ridicule than reverence. But Peter had been to Jerusalem, and had experienced the insults of the Turks. He therefore spoke of things he had seen, and the people listened with a willing sympathy.

7. Thus Peter went from city to city, and everywhere crowds came to hear him. There was soon such a state of excitement, that the princes assembled, and armies were speedily gathered for the enterprise. In the year 1096, Peter set out, in company with an army of two hundred thousand men. He occasionally bore a ponderous cross upon his shoulders, and all his followers wore crosses of red cloth upon their clothes.

8. But scarcely had this army reached Asia, when the Turkish sultan attacked them, and made a terrible slaughter; as a trophy of his victory he built a pyramid of the bones of the Christians. Other armies of crusaders afterwards met with similar misfortunes.

9. It is computed that eight hundred and fifty thousand Christians lost their lives in the course of this first crusade; and all this slaughter took place before they had even come in sight of Jerusalem.

10. There was another army, however, belonging to the first crusade, that had better success. This consisted of eighty thousand men, led by a French prince called Godfrey of Bouillon. He proceeded through Asia Minor, took several cities, and captured Jerusalem in 1099; the kingdom of Jerusalem was then founded, and Godfrey was elected king, but he refused the regal title, and called himself only "Baron of the Holy Sepulchre." From this period till the year 1187 the Holy City remained in the hands of the Christians, when it was again captured by the Turks, in whose hands it has since remained.

11. No less than five other crusades took place; the last commenced in 1248, and, like most of the others, proved

unsuccessful. The whole number of men who lost their lives in these wild expeditions, was not less than two millions.

12. Many of the crusaders were good and pious men, and some, perhaps, were wise ones. Several of the leaders were brave knights, and they went forth clad in bright armour, and mounted upon fine horses; but a large portion of the armies were of a different character. Some were half crazy people filled with a bigoted fury, some were needy and unprincipled adventurers, and a large portion were thieves and robbers, who joined the expeditions that they might share in the plunder of cities that should be taken.



A Crusader in Chain Armour,

13. But although the motives of many of the crusaders were selfish, though the great object of these expeditions was not accomplished, and though much slaughter and bloodshed flowed from them; still the half-barbarous

inhabitants of Europe received from the East many arts that tended to refine and civilize them. In this, and other ways, the crusades produced some good results.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What were the crusades? Why were they undertaken? Why did the Christians reverence Jerusalem?—2. What of pilgrimages to Jerusalem?—3. How were the pilgrims treated? What did they do? What was the consequence of their representations?—4. What of the pope of Rome?—5. Describe Peter the Hermit.—6. What of him?—7. What effect had his preaching? What took place in 1096?—8. Who attacked the army in Asia? What did the sultan do? What of other crusaders? 9. What of the first crusade?—10. What of the army under Godfrey of Bouillon? What title did he take? When did the Turks retake Jerusalem?—11. How many crusades were there? When was the first crusade began? The last? How many men lost their lives in the crusades?—12. What appears concerning many of the crusaders? Their leaders? What of a large portion of the armies?—13. What good results did the crusades produce?

---

#### CHAPTER CVIII. EUROPE continued.—*About the Feudal System.*

1. I SUPPOSE you think it is now time to proceed with the history of France; but do not be impatient. It is not right for one who undertakes to tell the history of mankind, to speak only of kings and the great battles which they fight. We must not forget to consider how the people lived, and what they were about while their rulers were thus engaged.

2. If I were only to speak of little King Pepin and Charlemagne, and the popes and other rulers, and tell you what they did, you might still be ignorant of what their subjects were doing. You might not know whether they were happy or unhappy, whether they were in a state of poverty or plenty, whether they were in the enjoyment of freedom, or suffering the miseries of despotism.

3. I trust you will therefore excuse me for talking a *little* about the Feudal System, Chivalry, and a few other

big words, which it is proper you should understand. I have told you that the northern tribes of Europe were fond of war, and of a restless, roving character; war was indeed the chief business of the men. A few of them were engaged in agriculture, but a large portion of them led the lives of soldiers, either wholly, or at such times as their services were required.



An ancient Feudal Castle.

4. A few were devoted to the building of houses, to the manufacture of armour, and such other articles as the simple manners of the people rendered necessary. But even these artisans occasionally bore arms, and went with their countrymen to the field of battle when needed.

5. But, as I have said before, the great business of society in these times was war, either for defence against the attacks of other tribes, or for the purpose of conquest.



The chiefs, or leaders, were generally the bravest and strongest men, those who would be most likely in a battle of hard blows to insure victory.

6. When a country was conquered, the lands, towns, cities, gold, silver, merchandise, horses, cattle, and all other property belonging to the conquered people, were considered the spoils of the victors. The people who were defeated were either killed, driven away, or reduced to a state of servitude.

7. Strange as it may seem, this making of war, and robbing people of their lands and possessions, was not only considered lawful, but it was reckoned grand sport. It is true that the soldiers had often hard fare and hard knocks; occasionally they were wounded, and many of them were slain; but when the battle was over, those who survived celebrated their victory with feasting and drinking, and other amusements suited to the tastes of barbarous men.

8. Between the intervals of fighting, they had mimic battles among themselves, or two stout fellows would fight with swords in the presence of the whole people. At other times, during a wet day, or a dull night, they would prolong their festivities by telling stories of the great deeds they had done, or seen, or heard of, or by singing ballads of bloodshed and battle.

9. It frequently happened that some person in the camp had a great talent for singing and story-telling; he therefore would be often called upon to exercise it. So he would amuse the company with wild legends of the chase, in which a king or prince had a terrible battle with a fierce boar or a rough bear.

10. Or he would tell of some chief who had performed wonderful deeds, or perhaps he would relate some superstitious tale of ghosts that walked abroad by moonlight, or of some murdered prince whose spirit often came at night to haunt the castle where he once dwelt.

11. Such were some of the amusements which repaid

these barbarians for the toils of war; but this was by no means all. The real object of most of the wars among these people was plunder; war took the place of trade and commerce among them, and the principal inducement to carry it on was to obtain the lands and the goods of other nations. It was, in short, a system of plunder, and the several tribes were in fact only so many bands of robbers.

12. When a country was conquered, the spoils were distributed among the victors according to their rank. The king, or chief, had a large share, the inferior chiefs had a smaller share, and the common soldiers had still less. The lands were divided in this way, but it was always understood that those who received the land were afterwards bound to go and fight whenever called upon by their chiefs.

13. The lands were not held in those times as they are now among us; but a large tract belonged to the king, and a smaller tract belonged to the inferior chiefs or barons.

14. The king or baron built upon his land an immense strong castle of stone; around it, the people, who were called his vassals, or slaves, built their little huts. These tilled the land, taking what was necessary for their own support, but giving the best of every thing to their liege lord.

15. Now what is meant by the Feudal System is this; that the vassals of a baron who lived upon his land were bound to do military service whenever the baron required it. So also the barons, under the feudal system, were required to do military service, bringing into the field all the men they could muster, whenever their king required it.

16. In return for these services, the lord of the manor, or owner of the land, was expected to protect his vassals in time of war, and as the castle was usually large and strong, the people fled to it whenever an enemy appeared in sight.

17. Here in the castle they would make the best defence in their power. Sometimes they would be besieged for months; but so long as the stores of provisions held out, the besieged inmates of the castle would hold their revels, tell their stories, and sing their songs, as merrily as at other times.

---

QUESTIONS. 2. Why must the history of the people not be neglected?—3. What of the northern tribes of Europe? What were the employments of the men?—5. What was the great business of society in these times? What of the chiefs?—6. Of a conquered country? The people?—7. How were war and robbery considered? The soldiers? The survivors?—8. What was done in the intervals of fighting?—9. What of story-telling?—11. What was the real object of war among these ancient nations? What of war? How might the tribes be considered?—12. What of the division of spoils? Of lands?—13. How were the lands held in these times?—14. What of a king or baron? The people or vassals?—15. What was the Feudal System? What were the vassals and barons required to do?—16. What was expected of the lord of the manor?—17. What of a besieged castle?

---

## CHAPTER CIX. EUROPE continued.—*About Chivalry, or Knight-Errantry.*

1. I HOPE you now understand how matters and things went on among the rude tribes of France, Germany, and most other northern countries of Europe, in early times; I hope also you understand what is meant by the feudal system.

2. If you will reflect a moment you will perceive that Europe, at this time, was divided among a great number of warlike tribes or nations, each tribe having a king, each king having under him several powerful barons, and each baron having many vassals.

3. You will remember that the kings and barons dwelt in strong stone castles, and even in England, but more especially in France and Germany, you may see many of

these still in existence, some of which were built more than a thousand years ago. Most of them are in ruins, but they are interesting on account of the tales and legends of the olden times which are connected with them.



A Knight-Errant in complete armour.

4. It is not certain when the feudal system commenced, but it appears to have been first in use among the German tribes, and was introduced into France by the Franks, who entered that country in the year 420 after Christ, and who laid the foundation of the French monarchy, about the year 486. It was in full force in the time of Charlemagne, and for some centuries after it formed the basis of all the governments of Europe.

5. Now I must tell you that, among the rough kings and barons of the feudal times, it often happened that private acts of violence and injustice took place. Sometimes a powerful baron would come suddenly upon a weaker one, seize his castle, and either murder him or shut him up in a dungeon ; and sometimes one of these barons

would carry off the beautiful daughter of another king or baron, and take her home to his castle.

6. Even in these rude times, such things were considered wrong, and sometimes a brave warrior, called a knight, would take it upon himself to redress these grievances. He would perhaps go and challenge the baron, who had been guilty of **injustice**, to come out and fight with him, or in some other way would endeavour to repair the injury done.

7. The people **applauded** these knights, and cheered them on to acts of **daring**, in the cause of justice and benevolence. Thus, by **degrees**, their numbers increased, and about the time of **the Crusades**, there appear to have been a great many of them.

8. **The Crusades themselves seemed to establish knight-errantry as a regular profession, and from that period we may consider it as one of the most remarkable institutions in Europe.**

9. When knight-errantry, or chivalry, **had become thus established, those who belonged to the profession were considered as under a religious vow to devote themselves to the cause of justice and humanity. If any person had suffered an act of injustice, they considered themselves bound to set the matter right; and if any person was in distress, they were under obligation to peril their lives for his relief.**

10. Besides this, the knights were required always to tell the truth, and always to perform their promises; they were expected to be full of generosity and courage, and never to be guilty of any act of meanness. They were, in short, expected to devote themselves to the cause of humanity, and remedy, as far as in their power, the injustice and violence which belonged to the age in which they lived.

11. Many of these knights spent their whole time in *idin about* the country in search of adventures. These

were called knights-errant. If, in the course of their travels, they heard of anybody in distress, they would offer their services for relief.

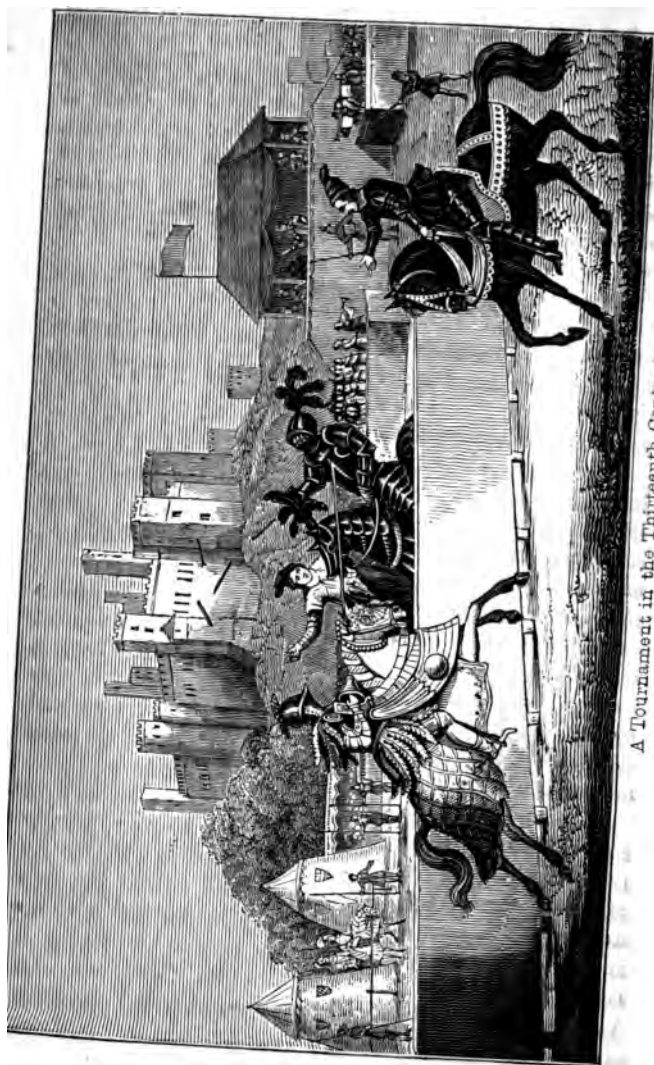
12. They were particularly devoted to the cause of ladies who had been stolen away, and shut up in castles, and, in behalf of these, they often performed wonderful feats of strength and valour. Sometimes, it is true, the knights acted wickedly, but, in so doing, they violated their vows.

13. If one knight-errant chanced to meet another, they usually went to fighting, either for sport or renown. Some of them acquired great fame, and a multitude of songs and ballads were composed in celebration of their deeds.

14. The knights were very particular to ride fine, strong horses; and some of these are almost as famous in the legends of chivalry as their riders. The knight was powerfully armed, his chief weapon being a long pointed lance. Beside this, he had a sword, dagger, battle-axe, and mace, which was a sort of heavy club.

15. In addition to these weapons for attack, he had a defensive armour, consisting of a shield of metal, a helmet of steel, with a vizor to cover his face, a body harness made of plates of steel, or sometimes a shirt of mail, consisting of light iron links, curiously wrought together, and fitting close to the body. Over all this, the knight wore a long flowing robe, which came down to his heels.

16. The horse also was carefully defended by mail or steel plates. His head, chest, and sides, were usually covered, and sometimes the whole body was shielded by glittering steel. Nothing indeed could exceed the care and preparation usually bestowed by the knights in training their horses, in selecting their armour, in having it carefully fitted, and in keeping it bright. They were also very attentive to their daily exercise, as well to preserve



A Tournament in the Thirteenth Century.

their health and acquire strength, as to keep themselves in perfect practice.

17. A knight was always attended by a squire, and sometimes by several. These accompanied their masters to battle, and were considered as learning to become knights themselves. As the institution of chivalry advanced, it became a matter of honour to be a knight, and therefore most kings, princes, and military leaders, took upon themselves the vows of knighthood. The celebrated leaders of the crusades, Richard of England, Godfrey of France, and others, were knights. In after-times, there were several orders of knights; those of each order taking upon themselves peculiar vows. Such were the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem, afterwards called the Knights of Malta, the Knights Templars, the Teutonic Knights, &c.

18. When society had become somewhat more civilized, it was the custom in different parts of Europe to have tilts and tournaments. These were occasions of great ceremony, and multitudes of people collected together to witness them. They were often splendid beyond description, and kings, princes, and fair ladies, delighted in these exhibitions. They consisted of encounters between celebrated knights, clad in complete armour, which took place in some open plain, surrounded with tents and pavilions filled with spectators. The victorious knights were honoured with applause from the people, and with marks of favour even from kings and queens.

19. Such was the institution of chivalry, and if I had time, I could fill a book with stories of knights. A multitude of tales, called Romances, were written in the age of chivalry, and these recounted the deeds, or pretended deeds, of celebrated champions. Some of them are very amusing, but they are nearly all filled with incredible fables.

20. Chivalry was at its height from the year 1200 to about 1400. From this latter period it rapidly declined,



and in the time of Elizabeth of England, that is, about 1600, it had ceased. If there were a few tilts and tournaments after this, they were only as relics of an age that had passed.

21. Thus I have told you about the Feudal System, the Crusades, and Chivalry; and I have told you of these things in connexion with the history of France, because the people of that country were largely concerned in all these matters.

---

QUESTIONS. 2. What of Europe in feudal times?—3. What must you remember?—4. What of the feudal system? Who introduced it into France? When? When was the foundation of the French monarchy laid? How long did the feudal system continue? Of what did it form the basis?—5. What happened in feudal times?—6. How were such things considered? What would a knight sometimes do?—7. What of the people? Knights?—8. Of the crusades? When did knight-errantry become a regular profession?—9. What of those who belonged to the profession?—10. What was required and expected of the knights?—11. Who were knights-errant? To whose service did they devote themselves?—12. What happened if two knights-errant met? What was done in celebration of their deeds?—13. What of their horses?—14. How was the knight armed?—15. What of the horse's caparison? Knight's armour? What of exercise?—16. What of squires? How was the profession of knighthood considered? Who were some celebrated knights in the crusades? What can you say of orders of knights?—17. What of tilts and tournaments? Describe them. What of the knights?—18. What of romances?—19. When was chivalry at its height? What of it after 1400? When did it cease?—20. Why is the story of the Feudal System, Chivalry, &c., told in connexion with the history of France?

---

## CHAPTER CX. EUROPE continued.—*King Philip and Pope Boniface. Wars of the French and English.*

1. I WILL now go on with my story about France. After Charles the Fat, Hugh Capet, and the other kings I have mentioned, there were many sovereigns, but I shall pass *them* over till I come to Philip the Fair, who began to

reign in 1285. He possessed great personal beauty, but had many bad qualities of mind and heart. The most remarkable event of his reign was a great quarrel with Pope Boniface.

2. This potentate was one of the haughtiest popes that ever wore the triple crown, and spoke to the sovereigns of Europe as if he were sovereign of them all, and king of kings. But Philip the Fair refused to acknowledge his authority. Pope Boniface excommunicated King Philip for his disobedience, and King Philip called Pope Boniface all the bad names he could think of.

3. One day, some of Philip's friends took Pope Boniface prisoner. They put him on a horse, without saddle or bridle, and made him ride with his face towards the horse's tail. The barbarous people of those days of course laughed at this, but poor Pope Boniface took the joke so much to heart, that, together with the loss of his treasures, it actually killed him. Philip the Fair survived him several years.

4. The French have always been a warlike people. They have been so often at war with England, that Frenchmen and Englishmen used to think themselves born to be each other's enemies, though this bad feeling is wearing away very rapidly.

5. On the death of Charles the Fourth, in 1328, Philip of Valois became king of France ; but Edward the Third, king of England, asserted that he himself was the rightful king of France, because his mother was the daughter of Philip the Fair. He undertook to enforce his claim by invading France with an English army.

6. King Edward challenged Philip of Valois to fight him in single combat ; but Philip preferred to meet him with an army. At the bloody battle of Cressy, in France, in 1346, the French lost the bravest of their nobles, and thirty thousand men.

7. In 1350, John the Good, son of Philip of Valois,

succeeded to the throne of France. The country was invaded by an English army under the eldest son of Edward the Third, who was called the Black Prince, on account of the colour of his armour.

8. King John of France, with sixty thousand men, encountered the Black Prince of England near Poitiers. The Black Prince had only eight thousand soldiers; but the English archers and cross-bow men let fly their arrows at the French, and made a dreadful havoc among them. King John was taken and kept prisoner four years in England.

9. John the Good was succeeded by his son, Charles the Wise. King Edward of England had now grown old, and his son, the brave Black Prince, was dead. The French therefore got back all the territories which the English had won of them, except the town of Calais.

10. But when Charles the Well-beloved was king of France, the English renewed the war. Henry the Fifth, now king of England, invaded France. At the battle of Agincourt he had but fifteen thousand men, while the French had nearly a hundred thousand.

11. Yet the English gained a glorious victory, with very little loss. On the side of the French, there were seven princes, the high-constable of France, and ten thousand gentlemen, killed, besides many prisoners. In 1420, the English king entered Paris in triumph.

12. But Henry, king of England, died soon afterwards; and then the French began to beat the English. The chief leader of the French at this time was a girl of eighteen, named Joan of Arc, or the Maid of Orleans. She was very beautiful. The French believed that Heaven had sent her to rescue their country from the English invaders; the English believed her to be a witch, and that the evil one assisted her in fighting against them.

13. For a considerable time it was found impossible *to withstand* holy Joan, the Maid of Orleans. She was

clad in bright steel armour, and rode in front of the French army, on a snow-white horse, and in her hand she carried a consecrated banner, on which was painted the image of our Saviour. But, at last, she was wounded and taken prisoner by the English, who condemned her to be burnt alive for witchcraft.

14. She was accordingly bound to a stake, in the market-place of Rouen, and the English army looked on, rejoicing, while the flames roared and whirled around her. When the fire had burnt out, there remained nothing but ashes and whitened bones, of the valiant Maid of Orleans.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. When did Philip the Fair begin to reign? What of him?—2. What of Pope Boniface? What took place between him and Philip the Fair?—3. What did Philip do to poor Pope Boniface? What effect had this treatment upon the pope?—4. What of the French? How did the French and English consider themselves?—5. When did Charles IV. die? When did Philip of Valois become king? What did Edward III. claim?—6. What did King Edward do? What of the battle of Cressy?—7. Who became king in 1350? Who was the Black Prince?—8. Who encountered the Black Prince? Describe the battle of Poitiers.—9. Who succeeded John the Good? Why were the French able to win back their territories from the English?—10. Who was the next king of France? What battle was fought with Henry V.?—11. Which side won the victory? What was the loss of the French? What took place in 1420?—12. What happened after the death of Henry V.? Describe the Maid of Orleans. What did the French and the English think of her?—13. How did she appear at the head of the army?—14. What was her sad fate?

---

#### CHAPTER CXI. EUROPE continued.—*The Reigns of several French Kings.*

1. BUT, though the Maid of Orleans was no longer their leader, the French were still successful, and the English lost nearly all that Henry the Fifth had won. The French monarch was called Charles the Victorious, on account of his many triumphs.

2. Yet he was an unhappy king. His son hated him, and attempted to kill him by poison. After the discovery

of this plot, the poor old king was afraid to take food enough to support life, lest he should take poison with it. So he wasted away, and died miserably.



Francis I.

Charles IX.

Henry IV.

3. His son, Louis the Eleventh, succeeded him in 1461. He was a crafty, treacherous, and cruel king. Once, when a nobleman was to be beheaded, Louis ordered his infant children to be placed under the scaffold, that they might be sprinkled with their father's blood.

4. One of the most famous of the French kings was Francis the First, who ascended the throne in 1515. He fought against the Swiss, and against the emperor of Germany; but the emperor took him prisoner at the battle of Pavia.

5. There was no war with England during the reign of Francis the First; but he once held an interview with the English king, near Calais. So much magnificence was displayed on both sides, that the place of meeting was called the Field of the Cloth of Gold.

6. In 1560, Charles the Ninth became king of France.

He was then a boy of ten years old. His reign was disgraced by one of the bloodiest scenes in history; it is called the Massacre of St. Bartholomew.

7. The Catholics (those who were attached to the pope of Rome) had conspired to murder all the Protestants, (those who did not follow the pope) throughout France. On the night of St. Bartholomew's day, 1572, their wicked project was put in execution. Some writers affirm that a hundred thousand Protestants were murdered.

8. The king himself sat at one of his palace windows, with a musket in his hand, and shot some of them. But he was soon called to receive the recompense of his crimes; he fancied himself to be haunted night and day by his victims, and died in the utmost misery in 1574.

9. The next king, but one, was Henry the Fourth, who ascended the throne in 1589. He was a good king, a brave warrior, and a generous man. His subjects loved him, and the French have always been proud of Henry the Fourth.

10. Yet the affection of his people could not save his life. One day he was riding through the streets of Paris in his coach, and seven courtiers were with him. Other vehicles were in the way, so that the coachman was compelled to stop the horses, and the king chose to alight.

11. There was a man near the coach, named Ravaillac, who was waiting for an opportunity to kill the king; and now, seeing him about to get out of the coach, he drew a poniard. With the first blow he wounded the king, and with the second killed him.

12. The murdered Henry was succeeded by his son, Louis the Thirteenth, but the government was chiefly directed by Cardinal Richelieu, an ambitious priest, who became more powerful than the king himself.

13. The next king was Louis the Fourteenth, whom the French call Louis le Grand. He was a very proud and haughty monarch, and endeavoured to make France the

greatest country on earth ; not that he really cared for the welfare of his subjects, but because he wished to exalt himself above all other kings.

14. Louis succeeded his father in 1643, when he was but five years old, and reigned no less than seventy-two years. He was continually at war, and in the early part of his reign, his armies achieved many splendid victories. But, in his old age, the Duke of Marlborough and Prince Eugene destroyed his troops, and reduced his kingdom to such distress, that the French people grew weary of their grand monarch ; and well they might be weary of him, for he had ruined his subjects, in order that he might have the means of going to war, for he cared more that he should have glory, than that they should have bread. He was a most bigoted papist, and cruelly persecuted his protestant subjects, who, flying to England and other countries, carried the most valuable manufactures of the country with them, and caused his name to be detested.

15. At last, in 1715, the old king died. As he had been so grand in his life-time, his courtiers deemed it proper that he should carry as much grandeur with him to the tomb as possible. They, therefore, prepared a magnificent funeral ; but wherever the procession passed, the people heaped curses on the royal corpse. Thus ended the glorious reign of Louis le Grand.

16. All the sons and grandsons of Louis le Grand had died before him ; he was therefore succeeded by his great-grandson, a child of five years old, who now became Louis the Fifteenth. Until the little king should become of age to take the sceptre into his own hands, the Duke of Orleans was declared regent of France. He was a profligate man, and instead of teaching the young king how to make his subjects prosperous and happy, set him an example of all sorts of wickedness.

17. Louis the Fifteenth reigned fifty-nine years, and died in 1774, as little regretted as Louis le Grand. He

was succeeded by his grandson, Louis the Sixteenth, who was then a young man of twenty.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the French people? The English? The French king?—2. What of Charles the Victorious?—3. What of Louis the Eleventh?—4. When did Francis the First ascend the throne? What of him?—5. Describe the interview at Calais.—6. When did Charles the Ninth come to the throne? Describe the massacre of St. Bartholomew.—8. When did Charles the Ninth die?—9. When did Henry the Fourth come to the throne? What of him?—11. How did he lose his life?—12. Who succeeded Henry the Fourth? What of Cardinal Richelieu?—13. Who was the next king? What can you say of Louis le Grand?—14. What of his wars? What of the Duke of Marlborough and Prince Eugene? What of the French people?—15. When did Louis le Grand die? Describe his funeral.—16. Who succeeded Louis the Fourteenth? What of the Duke of Orleans?—17. When did Louis the Fifteenth die?

---

## CHAPTER CXII. EUROPE continued.—*The French Revolution.*

1. LOUIS the Sixteenth was a man of good heart, kind disposition, and upright intentions; but he was little qualified for his situation. He married Marie Antoinette, the sister of the emperor of Austria, a woman of great beauty and accomplishments, but she was never a favourite of the French people.

2. Not long after they were crowned, the American revolution broke out, and the British colonies declared themselves an independent republic. The people of France took a great interest in the affairs of America; partly from enmity to England, and partly because the conduct of their rulers led them to think that a republic was a better kind of government than a monarchy.

3. The French are a people whose minds are easily excited, and whenever anything remarkable is going on among them, an Englishman would think that the whole



nation was almost mad. So it happened in this case. They now began to rave against the king, queen, and nobles, the priests, the gentlemen, and all others whom they had formerly respected; they even blasphemed against Heaven itself.

4. In 1789, the people of Paris captured and destroyed the Bastile, an old castle, wherein the kings of France had been accustomed to confine such of their subjects as offended them. Many a poor wretch had been thrown into the dungeons of the Bastile, and never again beheld the light of day. The destruction of the Bastile was a good thing; and so likewise were many other of the first movements of the French revolution; but when the people had once begun to change their ancient government, they knew not where to stop.

5. It was not long before blood began to flow, and no man or woman in the kingdom was now safe, unless they wore a red cap upon their heads, which was called the cap of liberty. At this period it was no uncommon thing to see a mob of men and women in the streets of Paris, carrying a bloody head upon a pole; and those who looked at the features would perhaps recognise the countenance of one whose power and wealth they had envied.

6. In a little while longer there were so many heads to be cut off, that the work could not be done fast enough in the ordinary way. It was therefore necessary to do it by machinery, and a horrible instrument, called the guillotine, was invented for the purpose. This was set to work upon the proud nobles, and the priesthood, and the beautiful ladies of France. Hundreds of their heads fell upon the pavement of Paris, and their blood ran like a river through the streets.

7. When many of the loftiest heads in the kingdom had been cut off, the people fixed their eyes on the head that wore a crown. "Off with the king's head too!" cried *they*. So they dragged the poor harmless king before the

National Convention, and he was forthwith sentenced to the guillotine.

8. As the king mounted the steps of the scaffold, he gazed round at the fierce and cruel multitude. It seemed like a dream, that they, his subjects, should be waiting there to see him die. Then he looked at the guillotine, and beheld it stained with the blood of the thousand victims who had been dragged thither before him. There stood a faithful priest beside him on the scaffold. Other priests, in those dreadful times, had abjured their God, but here was one who held fast his faith; other subjects had betrayed their king, but here was one who revered him most upon the scaffold.

9. He whispered consolation to the unhappy king, and pointed heavenward; the victim mustered his fainting courage, and laid his head upon the block: "Son of Saint Louis," said the priest, "ascend to heaven!" Down came the axe of the guillotine, and the head that had worn a crown was severed from the body! The blood of a kingly race gushed out upon the scaffold. Thus the crimes and misused power of many kings had brought vengeance on their innocent descendant.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of Louis the Sixteenth?—2. What of Marie Antoinette? When did the American revolution begin? What of the French people?—3. How do the French appear when anything remarkable is going on?—4. What was done in 1789? What of the Bastille? What of its destruction?—5. What were people obliged to wear upon their heads? What was common in Paris at this time?—6. Why was the guillotine invented? What use was made of it?—7. What of the king?—8. Describe his execution.

---

CHAPTER CXIII. EUROPE continued.—*Napoleon Buonaparte.*



Napoleon Buonaparte.

1. THE day of the king's execution was the 21st of January, 1793; and not many months afterwards, the queen was likewise beheaded, and their son soon died in prison: the survivors of the royal family sought refuge in foreign countries. France was now ruled by a succession of bloody monsters, who, one day, were sending crowds to the guillotine, and the next day were sent thither themselves.

2. In the mean time, war was breaking out on all sides. England, Austria, Prussia, Russia, Holland, and Spain, sent armies against France. The French raised a million of men, and bade defiance to all Europe.

3. In the French army there was a young lieutenant of artillery, named Napoleon Buonaparte. When the war began, he was an unknown and friendless youth; but he distinguished himself in every battle and every siege,

till, in a very few years, the whole world had heard of Buonaparte.

4. When he was only twenty-six years old, he conquered Italy. The next year he compelled the Emperor of Austria to make peace ; and in 1798, he invaded Egypt, and fought many battles in the sandy deserts, and among the pyramids.

5. The French were now tired of being governed by men whose only engine of government was the guillotine. They wanted a ruler who would deserve their obedience by his sagacity and energy, and not merely hold them in subjection by the fear of losing their heads. Napoleon Buonaparte was such a man. He was not a good man, nor a truly wise one. He was a selfish and ambitious despot ; but perhaps he was a more suitable ruler for such a people as the French, than if he had been of a different character.

6. He saw that the French were now so excited that it would be difficult, perhaps impossible, to restrain them. He thought it better that they should make war on foreigners than slaughter each other, and with the sword, rather than with the guillotine. So, partly because he could not help it, but chiefly because he was ambitious, Napoleon Buonaparte became a mighty conqueror.

7. In 1802, Buonaparte was elected consul of the French republic, for life ; and two years afterwards, he was proclaimed emperor, by the name of Napoleon. He had now more power than any of the ancient kings.

8. I cannot follow this great captain in his marches all over Europe, nor even number the victories which he won. Wherever he went, monarchs humbled themselves before him ; he drove them from their thrones, and placed his own brothers and chief officers there instead. He gave away royal diadems like playthings ; and he was called the Man of Destiny, because fate seemed to have ordained that he should always be victorious.

9. But, in 1812, the spell of his success began to be broken. He invaded Russia with a vast army, and penetrated to the city of Moscow, when the Russians set the city on fire. Winter was coming on, and the French soldiers having nowhere to shelter themselves, retreated towards Poland. On their way thither, they fought many battles with the Russians, and the weather was so dreadfully cold, that the bodies of the slain were frozen stiff, and the snow was crimsoned with their blood; and before they reached the frontiers of Poland, three-fourths of the army were destroyed.

10. The emperor Napoleon fled homeward in a sledge, and returned to Paris. He soon raised new armies, and was ready to take the field again. But all the nations of Europe were now allied against him, and, after a few more battles, he was driven from Germany into France. The enemy followed him, and compelled him to surrender the imperial crown of France in exchange for the sovereignty of the little island of Elba, in the Mediterranean; and the brother of Louis the Sixteenth was placed upon the throne, with the title of Louis the Eighteenth.

11. Napoleon went to Elba, and remained there almost a year. But in March, 1815, he suddenly landed again on the French coast. He was almost alone when he set his foot on the shore; but there were multitudes of his old companions throughout the country, who shouted for joy as they trampled on the white flag of the Bourbons, and in a few days, Napoleon's banner again waved triumphant all over France.

12. The nations of Europe now mustered their armies once more, and they were led by the Duke of Wellington. Napoleon marched into Flanders, or Belgium, to meet them, and he was followed by almost every young Frenchman that could shoulder a musket.

13. The armies met at Waterloo, on the 18th of June, 1815, where Buonaparte was utterly overthrown, and France

was overthrown with him. He was sent to die on the island of St. Helena, and Louis was again established on the throne.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. When was Louis the Sixteenth beheaded? Describe the French republic.—2. What countries now went to war with France?—3. What of Napoleon Buonaparte?—4. What acts did Napoleon perform?—5. What of the French people at this time? What of Napoleon?—6. What were his thoughts upon the French? What did he become?—7. What were the titles of Napoleon?—8. What happened wherever he went? What was he called?—9. What happened in 1812? What of the French army?—10. What of Napoleon? What happened to him? What of Louis the Eighteenth?—11. How long did Napoleon remain at Elba? What of him in 1815? Describe his landing in France.—12. Who led the nations of Europe? What did Napoleon do? Who followed him?—13. When was the battle of Waterloo fought? Fate of Napoleon?

---

#### CHAPTER CXIV. EUROPE continued.—*Recent affairs of France.*

1. LOUIS the Eighteenth was replaced on the throne, and died in 1824, and was succeeded by his brother, Charles the Tenth.

2. Charles the Tenth was bigoted and tyrannical; and after many quarrels with his subjects, in 1830 he forbade the printing of any newspaper that blamed his conduct and government.

3. The citizens of Paris immediately rose and attacked the royal troops; and, after three days of horrible slaughter, drove them from their posts, and compelled them to lay down their arms.

4. The king now offered to resign the crown in favour of his grandson, the Duke of Bourdeaux, a mere child; but the French would not receive him for their king. They drove Charles the Tenth and his family out of the kingdom, and by the advice of the Marquis La Fayette, chose Louis Philippe, duke of Orleans, as their king. Louis Philippe

was accordingly raised to the throne; and he is still King of the French.

QUESTIONS. 1. When did Louis the Eighteenth die?—2. What took place in 1830?—3. What of the people of Paris?—4. What did Charles the Tenth do? What did La Fayette advise? Who was made king? Who is still king?

## CHAPTER CXV. EUROPE continued.—*Chronology of France.*

	BEFORE CHRIST.
The Gæel, Gäil, Gaul, or Celts began to migrate into Europe from Asia, as is supposed, about - - - -	2000
General migration of the Gauls to different parts of Europe	397
Italy ravaged by the Gauls, and Rome taken - -	389
The Gauls make destructive incursions into Macedon and Greece - - - - -	280 to 278
A colony of Belgæ settled in France - - - -	200
The southern part of Gaul conquered by the Romans	128 to 122
Gaul invaded by Julius Cæsar - - - - -	58
— finally conquered by the Romans - - - -	25
	A. D.
Gaul invaded by the Franks and other Germanic tribes	400
Pharamond, a Frank, becomes king of France - -	418
Death of Pharamond - - - - -	428
Clodio died - - - - -	448
Meroveus, founder of the Merovingian race, died - -	458
Monarchy of France established by Clovis - - -	487
Clovis baptized - - - - -	496
Death of Clovis - - - - -	511
Pepin the Short, first of the Carlovingian race - -	751
Charlemagne crowned at Rome - - - - -	800
Charlemagne died - - - - -	814
Hugh Capet, first of the Capetian race, began to reign	987
Peter the Hermit heads the first crusade - - -	1096
Godfrey of Bouillon takes Jerusalem - - - -	1099
Crusade against the Albigenses - - - - -	1209
Death of Louis IX. at the siege of Tunis - - -	1270
Philip the Fair begins to reign - - - - -	1285
<i>Battle of Cressy</i> - - - - -	1346

	A. D.
John the Good ascends the throne	1350
Battle of Poitiers	1356
Battle of Agincourt	1415
Joan of Arc raises the siege of Orleans	1428
Henry VI. of England crowned at Paris	1431
Louis XI. ascended the throne	1461
Francis I. began to reign	1515
Charles IX. began to reign	1560
Massacre of the Protestants on St. Bartholomew's day	1572
Death of Charles IX.	1574
Henry IV. ascended the throne	1589
Henry IV. killed by Ravallac, a Jesuit	1610
Rochelle, the stronghold of the Protestants, taken	1628
Louis XV. died	1774
The Bastile destroyed	1789
Execution of Louis XVI.	1793
The French fleet defeated by Earl Howe	1794
Napoleon took possession of Egypt	1798
Napoleon gained the battle of Marengo	1800
Napoleon made consul	1802
Napoleon created emperor of France	1804
French and Spanish fleet defeated at Trafalgar	1805
Napoleon seizes on Spain	1807
Burning of Moscow	1812
Louis XVIII. becomes king	1814
Battle of Waterloo	1815
Death of Napoleon	1821
Death of Louis XVIII.	1824
Revolution of three days in France, Louis Philippe called to the throne	1830
Death of La Fayette	1834



CHAPTER CXVI. EUROPE continued.—*About Germany.*



The Town of Brunswick.

1. GERMANY lies to the east of France, and contains no less than thirty-six different kingdoms and states, besides Austria and Prussia, which are sometimes considered as making a part of Germany, and of which I shall tell you by-and-by. These thirty-six states and kingdoms contain about twelve millions of inhabitants; but they are all so connected one with the other, both in their history and their geography, that it requires great attention to get any clear idea of them.

2. The principal states of Germany are Bavaria, Wur-

temburg, Hanover, and Saxony. They are all independent of each other, yet they are leagued together under a sort of congress, called a diet, which meets at Frankfort, and to this diet the states send deputies. Our royal family came from Brunswick, which is one of the duchies of Germany.

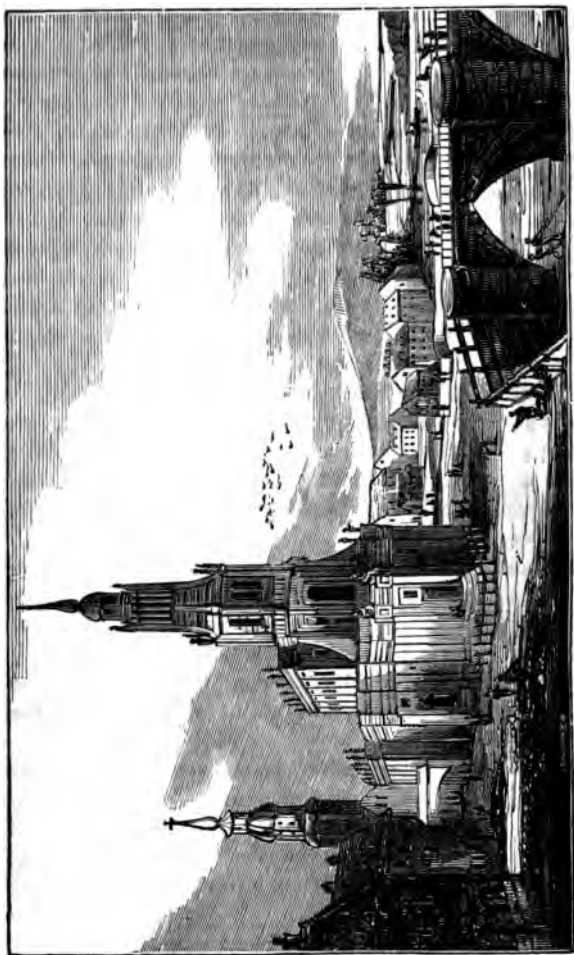
3. There are many fine cities and large towns in Germany. Among these the principal are Hamburgh, which carries on a good deal of commerce with this country; Munich, which is a very splendid city; Carlsruhe, which has its streets spread out from a centre, like the sticks of an open fan; Dresden, which is famous for the beautiful country around it: Frankfort, which is encircled by a belt of fine gardens and public walks; and Leipsic, where there is a great book-fair.

4. I could easily write a book about Germany, for it is full of curious and interesting things. In the cities, there are a great many churches in the Gothic style, which excite the wonder and admiration of a traveller, on account of their grandeur, and the skill with which many parts of them are carved.

5. In many of the towns there are very curious manufactures, particularly of musical-boxes, toys for children, and clocks of all kinds. The Germans are very ingenious in these matters, and sometimes they make clocks so curiously contrived, that at every hour a little bird will come out, flutter his wings, and sing a song, or perhaps tell the time of day.

6. If you ever travel in Germany, you will find that the people are very fond of music. All the boys and girls are taught music as a part of their education, and most of them can play upon some instrument. The flute is a great favourite, and is called the German flute, either because it was invented in Germany, or because it is more in use amongst the Germans than elsewhere.

7. In passing through Germany, you will often notice the ruins of castles, some of which were built a thousand



Dresden, the Capital of Saxony.

or twelve hundred years ago. These belonged to the barons who occupied the country in the old feudal times, of which I have told you in the history of France.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Where is Germany, and what does it contain? Population of the thirty-six states and kingdoms?—2. What are some of the principal kingdoms of Germany? How are they governed? How are they united? Where does the diet meet? What do the states send to this diet? From what duchy did our royal family come?—3. Describe some of the principal cities of Germany?—4. What of churches?—5. What are some of the manufactures?—6. What of music? The flute?—7. What of old castles?



Saxon Lady and Peasants.

---

## CHAPTER CXVII. EUROPE continued.—*About the ancient Tribes of Germany, Charlemagne, &c.*

1. In ancient days, Germany, as I have told you, was inhabited by numerous tribes of barbarians. Among these

were the Goths, Visigoths, Vandals, Suevi, Cimbri, Teutones, Heruli, Alemanni, and many others. As there was no Peter Parley among them to write their history in early times, we know little or nothing of them till two or three hundred years before Christ, when the armies of Rome approached their country.

2. At this time they were numerous, but they were mere savages. They were clothed in the skins of wild beasts, and seemed to delight only in war and plunder. In the time of Cæsar they were very powerful, but that famous conqueror marched against them, and, after many bloody battles, they were reduced to submission.

3. I have already told you that wherever the Romans extended their arms, they carried their arts. Thus the rude tribes of Germany became partially civilized ; many of the people exchanged their skins of beasts for the Roman toga or gown. They also learnt how to make better weapons of war, how to build better houses, and how to live more comfortably.

4. But you remember that five hundred years after Cæsar, the Roman empire was unable to keep these restless tribes of the north in subjection ; nay, Rome was now incapable even of defending herself.

5. The Germans soon discovered how matters stood. They knew that in Spain, Italy, and Greece, there were a great many rich cities and pleasant towns, and fruitful valleys, and they knew that in these countries the Romans had collected the wealth of the whole world. They thought it would be much better to go and live in palaces and fine houses, and have plenty of wine, and plenty of gold, silver, and jewels, than to live in their own less fruitful country, and earn their bread by toil, or by plundering each other.

6. Accordingly, some of them set out under their daring leaders, and marched into Italy. Others soon followed, and in the course of a few years, these hordes had settled *like swarms* of bees in all the southern countries of Europe.

7. But still many remained behind in Germany, and there increased, so that in the time of Charlemagne they were numerous and powerful ; but he conquered them, as I have said in the history of France. You will recollect that his empire included France, Germany, and other countries ; but shortly after his death, these several countries became separated again.

8. Lothaire became emperor of Germany in 841. The empire of Germany, thus established, was, however, composed of many separate sovereignties, each of which had its own ruler. In the year 912, it became the custom for these rulers to make choice of one of their number, and declare him emperor, and he then presided over the whole of Germany. Thus Germany was what is called an elective monarchy, and so it continued, even so late as the year 1806, when the emperor, Francis the Second, took the title of Emperor of Austria, in consequence of a treaty with Napoleon.

9. In 1056, Henry the Fourth was emperor. He had a quarrel with Pope Gregory the Seventh ; but the pope's power was so great, that he compelled the emperor to come to Italy to ask his pardon. When Henry arrived at the gate of the pope's palace, the weather was exceedingly cold, and there was snow on the ground. Pope Gregory was sitting by a comfortable fire, and he sent the emperor word that he would have nothing to say to him, till he had stood three whole days barefooted in the snow, without tasting a mouthful of food. This penance the poor emperor was compelled to undergo. On the fourth day, Pope Gregory gave him absolution for his sins, and allowed him to warm himself and eat his dinner.

10. Another emperor, Henry the Sixth, who reigned a hundred years afterwards, had a quarrel with Pope Celestinus. In order to make peace, he was persuaded to kneel down and kiss the pope's toe ; but no sooner had his lips touched the toe, than Pope Celestinus drew back his foot,

and kicked the emperor's crown off his head. This anecdote will give you some idea of the spirit and manners of these pretended successors of St. Peter.

11. In 1273, Rodolph of Hapsburgh, a native of Switzerland, was elected emperor of Germany. He was the ancestor of the present sovereigns of Austria, and most of the German emperors since his reign have been his descendants.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. How was Germany anciently inhabited? Mention some of the barbarous tribes.—2. What of them in ancient times? In the time of Cæsar?—3. What of the arts of the Romans? How did the rude tribes become partly civilized? What did they do?—4. What of Rome five hundred years after Cæsar?—5. What did the Germans soon discover? What did they think?—6. What did some of them do? What happened in a few years?—7. What of the barbarians that remained in Germany? What of Charlemagne? What did his empire include?—8. What of Lothaire? What of the sovereignties of Germany? What became the custom in 912? What of the emperor? What was the government of Germany?—9. When was Henry IV. emperor? What of the pope? What of the penance laid by the pope upon the emperor?—10. Relate the anecdote of Henry VI. and Pope Celestinus?—11. Who was chosen emperor of Germany in 1273? What of him?



Swiss Bridge.

CHAPTER CXVIII. EUROPE continued.—*Affairs of Switzerland.*

Swiss Cottage.

1. SWITZERLAND, as you know, is a mountainous little country, containing two millions of inhabitants, which is hemmed in between Germany, France and Italy. As I have many kind wishes for my young readers, I hope it may be their pleasant fortune some day or other to visit Switzerland. When you go there, you will find good roads, but I advise you to travel on foot. There are so many pleasant things to see, so many tall mountains looking like white clouds up in the sky, so many little blue lakes shining like mirrors among the hills, so many bright green valleys, so many old ruinous castles, in short, so many interesting things to see, that you will be stopping every moment, and a carriage would therefore be a great trouble.

2. I have been over this country myself, and I went on foot. Switzerland seemed to me like a little world of itself; every thing was strange, but still interesting.



Among such wild mountains, you would perhaps expect to meet with a wild and fierce people; yet the Swiss are a gentle and honest race.

3. But I must now proceed with my brief account of the history of Switzerland. This country was part of the possessions of the dukes of Austria, and when one of them, named Albert the First, became emperor of Germany, in 1298, he acted like a tyrant, and appointed governors who were even worse than himself. One of them, named Gesler, set his cap upon a pole, and ordered all the people to pay the same homage to it that they would to the duke himself.

4. The famous peasant, William Tell, would not pay homage to Gesler's cap. My readers have heard the story, how Gesler commanded Tell to shoot at an apple on his own son's head, and how Tell hit the apple without hurting his son.

5. At last the oppression of the governors drove the Swiss to take up arms against the emperor of Germany, and Tell was their principal leader. After sixty pitched battles with the emperor's troops, the liberty of Switzerland was established, and it became an independent republic.

6. A ballad popular in Switzerland asserts that William Tell is not yet dead, though it is nearly five hundred years since he was seen on earth. He is supposed to lie asleep in a cavern near the lake of Lucerne, with two other men who assisted in founding the republic. These three slumberers are called the Men of Grutli. If ever Switzerland shall be enslaved, it is fancied that they will start from their sleep, and come forth with their ancient garb and weapons, and rouse up the people to fight for their freedom.

7. Since the time of William Tell, Switzerland has generally been a free country; but during the French Revolution it was conquered; it has since been restored to

nominal independence, but its powerful neighbours interfere in all its affairs.



William Tell and his Son.

8. Many of the Swiss leave their beautiful, but poor country, to seek their fortunes in other lands. Some enter foreign armies as soldiers, and others wander all over Europe as attendants on travellers.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Where is Switzerland? Describe the appearance of the country.—2. What of the people?—3. What of Albert the First? What of Gesler?—4. What of William Tell?—5. How did Switzerland obtain her liberty?—6. What legend have the Swiss concerning William Tell and his two companions?—7. What of Switzerland since the time of Tell?—8. What of the Swiss people?



Costumes of Swiss Peasants.

## CHAPTER CXIX. EUROPE continued.—*Sequel of German History.*

1. I WILL now proceed with the history of Germany. Charles the Fifth was the most renowned of the emperors of Germany. He was likewise king of Spain, and ruler of the Netherlands, and part of Italy.

2. When this great potentate was fifty-seven years old, he grew weary of pomp and power: he therefore *resigned* his crown to his son Philip, and went to live *in a monastery* in Estremadura in Spain. He dressed

very plainly, and occupied himself in saying his prayers and working in a garden.

3. One day, he wrapt himself in a shroud and lay down in a coffin, stretching himself out as if he were dead, and then ordered his attendants to carry him to the tomb. The reader must not suppose that the emperor meant to be buried alive: he merely wished to keep himself in mind that his life must soon close. But the ceremony hastened his end; for it brought on a fever, of which he died, in 1558.

4. Ferdinand the Second, who began to reign in 1619, was called by the Catholics the Apostolic Emperor, because he was a bitter persecutor of the Protestant inhabitants of Germany. This gave rise to what is called the Thirty Years' War; the Protestants sought the aid of Gustavus Adolphus, the king of Sweden, who accordingly invaded Germany, and gained many victories, but was killed at the battle of Lutzen.

5. The subsequent history of Germany does not abound with the sort of events which my young readers would be desirous of knowing. Few or none of the later emperors performed any remarkable actions.

6. The emperor of Germany, as I have mentioned above, was generally a prince of the Hapsburgh family. The territories of Austria were enlarged by the successive emperors, and it finally became great and powerful.

7. In 1792, Francis the Second became emperor of Germany. He undertook a war against the French, but his armies were routed, and, in 1806, he was compelled to resign the title of emperor of Germany, and took that of emperor of Austria. His empire, at the time of his death, which happened in 1835, was one of the most powerful sovereignties of Europe, and deserves a separate chapter.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of Charles the Fifth?—2. Relate an anecdote of him.—3. When did Charles the Fifth die?—4. When did Ferdinand the Second begin to reign? What of him?

What were the Protestants forced to do?—5. What of the late emperors of Germany?—7. With what countries has Austria waged war?—8. Who became emperor of Germany in 1792? What took place in 1806? What of the Austrian empire?

---

CHAPTER CXX. EUROPE continued.—*About the Austrian Empire.*



The Wild Boar of Germany.

1. AUSTRIA is an extensive and powerful empire, lying south of Russia and Poland, and north of Turkey. On the west, it is bounded by the German states, Switzerland, and Italy.

2. The dukedom of Austria was formerly part of Germany, and is still considered as belonging to it; but of late years other countries have been added to the empire which do not belong to Germany; it now includes Hungary, Bohemia, part of Poland, part of Italy, and many *other states* which were formerly independent. Its *present population* is about thirty-two millions.

3. Vienna, the capital of the German part of Austria, is one of the most splendid cities in Europe, and is situated on the Danube, which is here a large river. In winter it is frozen over, and the people amuse themselves by sliding, skating, and driving upon it in sledges. The scene presented at such a time is very gay and pleasant.

4. In summer, the inhabitants resort to the public gardens, which are extensive and beautiful. Here are fine walks, where you may see people of all kinds. There are ladies and gentlemen taking the air, boys and girls scampering about, men with monkeys taught to dance, and a multitude of curious sports. The gentlemen of Austria are very fond of hunting wild boars, which are common in that country.

5. In the German part of Austria, which is the eastern portion, the inhabitants speak the German language, and have the manners and customs of Germany. The history of this country has been partly told: in early times it was occupied by tribes of barbarians; and at a later period it formed one of the states of the German empire.

6. At this time it was called an archduchy, and was governed by an archduke, who was, however, subject to the emperor. Rodolph of Hapsburgh succeeded to the government of the empire in 1273, as I have told you, and from him the subsequent sovereigns of Austria have descended. After his time, Austria rapidly increased in power, and at length its archduke was usually elected emperor of Germany.

7. It has since been engaged in many wars, particularly with Prussia, Turkey, and France. In 1683, the Turks pushed their arms into the heart of the empire, and laid siege to Vienna, but were finally driven back.

8. In 1809, Austria was involved in war with Buonaparte. She had well-trained soldiers and able generals, but the French emperor beat them in several pitched battles, and finally entered Vienna. Here he made peace

with the emperor, but took from him a large portion of his dominions.

9. These, however, after the fall of Napoleon, were recovered; and at the present day, Austria is considered as one of the leading powers of Europe.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Where does Austria lie? Its boundaries?—  
2. To what does Austria belong? What does it now include?—  
3. What of Vienna? What of the Danube? Amusements?—  
4. What of the public gardens?—5. What of the German part of Austria? What of it in ancient times? At a later period?—  
6. What was it called at this time? Who succeeded to the empire in 1273? What of Austria and its archduke?—7. What of the wars of Austria? What happened in 1683?—8. What happened in 1809? What did Buonaparte do?—9. How may Austria be considered at the present day?



Austrian Peasants.

CHAPTER CXXI. EUROPE continued.—*About Hungary, Bohemia, the Tyrol, &c.*



Hungarian and Bohemian Peasants.

1. I MUST now give you a very brief account of some of the dependencies of Austria.

2. Hungary is an extensive country, and includes several provinces. Buda, the capital, is a fine city, situated upon the Danube. The climate of Hungary is pleasant, and the soil yields very fine grapes, of which some choice wines are made. The mountains afford considerable quantities of gold and silver. The nobles live in great splendour, but the great body of the people are little better than their slaves.

3. The original inhabitants of Hungary consisted of several fierce tribes, who appear to have come from Asia into Europe at a very early date, by crossing the Altai Mountains. They probably resembled those Tartar tribes called Turks, who destroyed the Saracen empire.



4. The most famous of the Hungarian tribes were the Huns. An army of these, you will recollect, was led into Italy by the fierce and bloody Attila, about 450. He had already fought many battles, and made the Greek empire tributary to him: he now crossed the Alps, and poured down upon the plains of Italy, spreading terror and desolation among the inhabitants. He approached the city of Rome, but was compelled to retire. He died in 451.

5. For many years, Hungary was the scene of perpetual wars. Its rulers did not acquire the title of king till the time of Stephen, who died in 1038, after a reign of forty-seven years. The country was often the scene of war with the Turks, and its brave inhabitants were called the bulwark of Christendom. In 1563, Hungary became a part of the Austrian empire, and continues so at the present day.

6. Bohemia is a country surrounded by mountains, containing about four millions of inhabitants. It is rich in mines of silver, tin, and precious stones. Many of the present inhabitants are Jews; but there are also a great many of those strange, wandering people, called Gipsies.

7. This country derives its name from a tribe of Celts from Asia, who settled there about 600 years before Christ. About 450 years after Christ, it appears that the Celts had been driven out, for the people at that time were Germans, under the government of a duke. Charlemagne rendered the country tributary, but it afterwards became a kingdom. In 1526, it was annexed to the house of Austria, and has continued so ever since.

8. There are many other provinces belonging to the Austrian empire, as Moravia, Transylvania, Dalmatia, Croatia; but there is nothing very remarkable to be said about them. I have already given you some account of Venice, and if I had room, I would tell you of the brave Tyrolese, who live in the mountains between Italy and

Germany; and of whose chief, the gallant Hofer, you have no doubt heard. But I must now proceed to the history of Prussia, the other great power of Germany.

---

QUESTIONS. 2. What of Hungary? Its capital? Climate and soil of Hungary? Mountains? Inhabitants?—3. What of the original inhabitants? Their origin? Whom did they probably resemble?—4. What of the Huns? What of Attila? When did he die?—5. What of Hungary for many years? What of Stephen? What took place in 1563?—6. What of Bohemia? Population? Mines? Inhabitants?—7. What of a tribe of Celts? Who occupied the country in 450? What of Charlemagne? What took place in 1526?—8. Other provinces? Where do the Tyrolese live?

---

## CHAPTER CXXII. EUROPE continued.—*About Prussia.*

1. THERE are five great powers in Europe: Great Britain, France, Russia, Austria, and Prussia. Of these Prussia is the least considerable, that is, it has the fewest people, the least wealth, the smallest number of soldiers, and therefore the least power. Yet it is still an extensive country, and has about twelve or thirteen millions of inhabitants.

2. The kingdom of Prussia consists of two separate tracts of territory. The larger of the two is bounded north by the Baltic, east by Russia, south by Austria, and west by Germany. The smaller portion is a part of Germany, lying along the river Rhine, and is bounded on the north and east by Holland and Belgium. In this part is situated the city of Cologne, famous for its cathedral, and its scented water called Eau de Cologne.

3. The capital of Prussia is Berlin, situated on the river Spree. The city is twelve miles in circumference, and is surrounded by a wall. It has a splendid palace where the king resides, a fine university where a great many young men are educated, and several places of public

amusement, and is, on the whole, one of the handsomest cities in Europe.

4. Beside Berlin, there are many other fine cities in



The Tower at Cologne.

**Prussia.** Among these are Potsdam, where there is a royal palace; and Dantzic, a wealthy town, the chief seaport of Prussia, which is strongly fortified, and has a large garrison.

5. The inhabitants of Prussia are chiefly of German origin, and speak the German language. They are industrious, and, a multitude of schools having been established by the government among them, they are tolerably well educated; but the government is a despotism.



Prussian Peasantry.

6. Beside the German population, Prussia has a great many Jews. There are also the remains of the Vandals, and other tribes that settled in the country long ago, who still speak their original languages; these people are generally very ignorant, and appear unwilling to be taught.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What are the five great powers of Europe? Which is the least? What of it? Its inhabitants?—2. How is

the kingdom of Prussia divided? Describe the two portions.—  
3. Capital of Prussia? What of the city?—4. What of Potsdam?  
Dantzic?—5. What of the inhabitants of Prussia? Schools?—  
6. What of the Jews? Ancient tribes?

---

CHAPTER CXXIII. EUROPE continued.—*History of Prussia.*

1. PRUSSIA was formerly inhabited by a nation called Borussi, who were idolaters, against whom a crusade was carried on by the Teutonic knights. Their grand master, at the time of the Reformation, took the title of Margrave of Brandenburg, and afterwards of Duke. Prussia did not become a kingdom till the year 1701.

2. Frederic William the First, who ascended the throne in 1713, was a very singular monarch. He used to wear an old blue coat, which was ornamented with rows of copper buttons, reaching from his chin half-way down his legs; and whenever he had a new coat, he made the tailor sew on these same old copper buttons.

3. He prided himself greatly on a regiment of his guards which consisted of very tall men, some of whom were between six and seven feet high. These gigantic fellows were hired from all parts of Europe; and if those whom he wanted from among his own subjects would not come of their own accord, the king made them come by force.

4. Frederic William was in the habit of walking about the streets of Berlin, with a cane in his hand, and if he happened to see any idle people, he would give them a sound threshing, and he treated his own children worse than any one else, frequently starving as well as beating them.

5. When this ill-tempered old king died, his son Frederic came into possession of an enormous quantity of treasure, as well as an army of sixty thousand men. He

soon found uses enough for his money and his soldiers, in a war with Austria, Russia, and France.

6. The war between Prussia and these three powers began in 1756, and was called the Seven Years' War. Saxony and Sweden joined the enemies of Frederic, and at one time he seemed on the point of losing all his dominions; but he was assisted by England, and finally brought the war to an honourable close. He was then the most celebrated sovereign of his time, and is known in history by the title of Frederic the Great.

7. He was almost as peculiar in his dress as his father had been. He always wore a uniform, consisting of a blue coat faced with red, and a yellow waistcoat and breeches, but his clothes were often torn, and generally soiled with snuff. He wore a very large cocked hat, and a long cue behind.

8. When Frederic the Great was grown an old man, he used to sit in an easy chair, wrapped in a large cloak, and appeared to take no pleasure in his palace, or in all the pomp and power of his kingdom. He seemed very sad, and might be heard muttering to himself—"A little while longer, and I shall be gone!" He died in 1786, at the age of seventy-five.

9. He was succeeded by his nephew, Frederic William the Second, who reigned eleven years. The next king was Frederic William the Third, the present monarch. He had a large army, and thought himself powerful enough to withstand the emperor Napoleon. But at the battle of Jena, in 1806, Napoleon defeated the Prussian army, and killed or wounded twenty thousand men, and forty thousand were taken prisoners. Frederic William was then deprived of a great part of his territories. After the battle of Waterloo, and the final defeat of Napoleon, the losses of Prussia were repaired.

10. Frederic William has shown himself sincerely desirous to promote the good of his subjects; he has greatly

exerted himself to diffuse the blessings of education, and he declared that there should be a Bible in every cottage in his kingdom, and I believe that is now the case.

QUESTIONS. 1. Ancient inhabitants of Prussia? Teutonic knights? When did it become a kingdom?—2. What of Frederic William the First? When did he ascend the throne? Give an account of him.—5. Who succeeded him? In what wars did he engage?—6. What war began in 1756? What kingdoms joined the enemies of Frederic? What was he called?—7. What was the dress of Frederic the Great?—8. What of him when he had grown old? When did he die?—9. What two kings succeeded him? What of Frederic William the Third? What took place at the battle of Jena?—10. What of the Prussian king? What took place after the battle of Waterloo?—11. What else can you say of this king?

#### CHAPTER CXXIV. EUROPE continued.—*Chronology of Germany, Austria, Hungary and Prussia.*

	BEFORE CHRIST.	A. D.
The Celts settled in Bohemia	600	
Russia possessed by the Venedi	320	
Switzerland subdued by Cæsar	57	
Pannonia, now Hungary, conquered by the Romans	11	
Dacia conquered by Trajan		103
The Romans expelled from Germany		290
Pannonia conquered by the Huns		376
Germany conquered by the Huns		432
Attila leads the Huns into Italy		450
The Celts driven from Bohemia		450
Charlemagne conquers Germany		802
Hungary annexed to the German empire by Charlemagne		804
Switzerland became part of the kingdom of Burgundy		888
Emperors first chosen in Germany		912
Hungary becomes an independent kingdom		920
Stephen, the first Christian king of Hungary, begins to reign		997
Henry IV. emperor of Germany		1056
Bohemia becomes a kingdom		1099
Prussia conquered by the Teutonic knights		1226
Rodolph of Hapsburgh becomes emperor of Germany		1273
Switzerland revolts against the dukes of Austria		1307

	A.D.
William Tell died - - - - -	1354
Matthias Corvinus, king of Hungary, takes Vienna -	1485
Louis, king of Hungary, defeated and killed by the Turks -	1526
Bohemia united to Austria - - - - -	1526
Charles V., emperor of Germany, died - - - - -	1558
Ferdinand II. of Germany began to reign - - - - -	1619
The Turks lay siege to Vienna - - - - -	1683
Prussia becomes a kingdom - - - - -	1701
Hungary annexed to the German empire - - - - -	1739
War between Austria, Russia, France, and Prussia -	1756
Francis II. becomes emperor of Germany - - - - -	1792
Switzerland conquered by the French - - - - -	1798
Napoleon defeats the Prussians at Jena - - - - -	1806
Vienna taken by the French - - - - -	1809
Death of Francis II. emperor of Austria - - - - -	1835

CHAPTER CXXV. EUROPE continued.—*Description of Russia.*



A Russian Travelling Carriage.

1. THE Russian empire, like that of Turkey, lies partly in Europe and partly in Asia. The whole of the northern part of Asia belongs to Russia; and this is thinly scattered



over with a great number of different tribes, who chiefly wander about from place to place in search of food for their cattle.

2. Siberia is the name of a large portion of northern Asia. It is a bleak, cold region, the people are poor, and the lower orders of the natives dress in the skins of wild animals, and for the most part live in miserable huts. It is to this country that state prisoners are banished by the emperor.

3. I will now tell you of that part of Russia which lies in Europe. It is a vast territory, and embraces more land than all the other kingdoms of Europe, and the population is not less than sixty millions.

4. You will see by this that the emperor of Russia is a very powerful ruler. He reigns over his subjects according to his pleasure, there being no law superior to his will.

5. He has a great many palaces in different parts of his dominions, but he resides chiefly at St. Petersburg; he has an immense army, and is always surrounded with a great many soldiers.

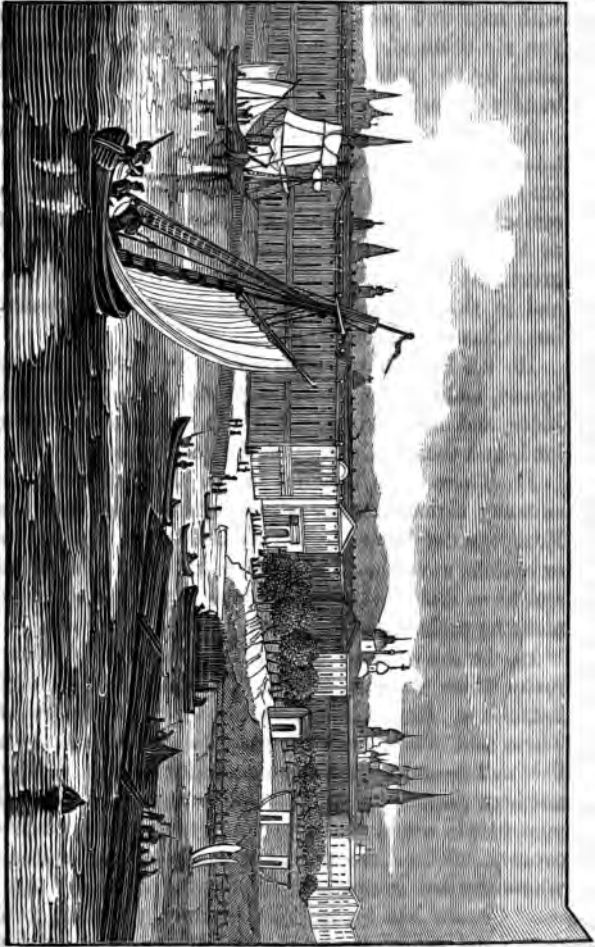
6. By looking to the map, you will see that Russia in Europe extends from the Northern or Frozen Ocean on the north, to the Black Sea on the south, a distance of nearly two thousand miles; on the east, it is separated from Asia by the Ural Mountains and the river Volga; on the west, it is bounded by the Gulf of Finland, the Baltic Sea, Prussia, Austria, and Turkey.

7. In such a vast territory as this, you may well suppose that the climate is various. Along the borders of the Frozen Ocean, the lakes are covered with ice for nine months in the year. In the middle parts of Russia, the winter is very severe; in the southern parts, the climate is warm and pleasant. Here corn and grapes grow in abundance.

8. The capital of Russia is St. Petersburg, situated on the river Neva, which flows into the Gulf of Finland. It is

a splendid city, and contains about half a million inhabitants. There is no place in the world where you would

The City of Saint Petersburg.



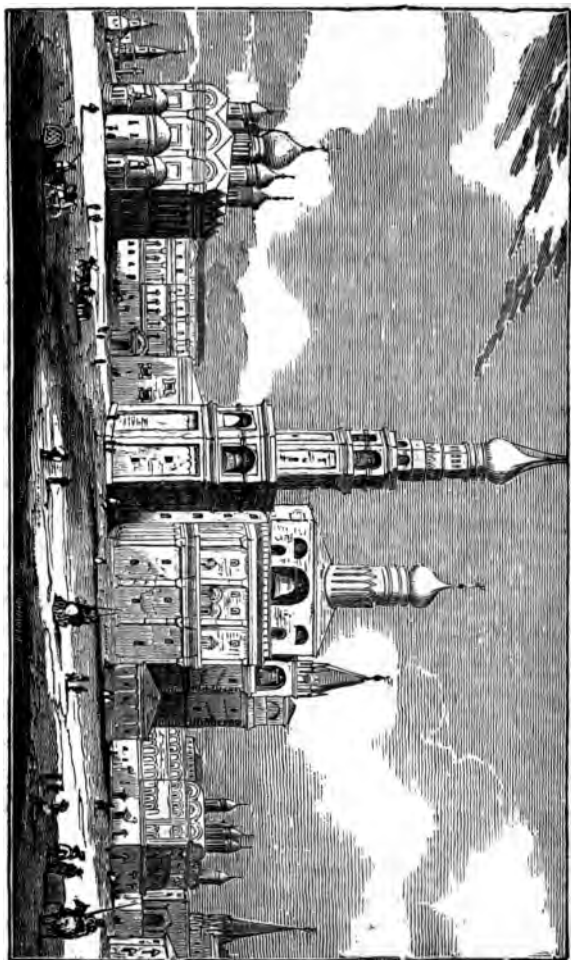
see more strange sights than in St. Petersburg. In the streets, you see a great many soldiers gaily dressed, gilt coaches, drawn by three or four horses, beggars covered with rags, and people dressed in all the strange fashions you can think of. There are a great many palaces, inhabited by the nobility, some of whom keep two or three hundred servants.

9. Moscow is next to St. Petersburg in size, and contains about four hundred thousand inhabitants. It was once the capital of the empire; and contains, among other remarkable buildings, the Kremlin, the palace of the Czars, as the emperors were formerly called. But in 1812, a great part of it was burnt, in order to drive out the French, and in this way a great part of Moscow was destroyed, but it has since been rebuilt.

10. St. Petersburg carries on a great deal of commerce by sea, and many of our ships go there to get hemp, tallow, hides, and other things. But Moscow is situated far inland, and therefore carries on no trade by sea.

11. There is no monarch in the world who reigns over so many various nations as the emperor of Russia. In his European dominions, he has at least sixty different tribes or nations under his sway, who speak different languages, and have different modes of life. In his Asiatic dominions he probably has as many more.

12. In the northern part of European Russia, there are many tribes of short, swarthy people, called Laplanders, Samoides, &c. These live almost in a savage state. Those that dwell near the sea live almost entirely upon fish, and resemble the Esquimaux Indians that occupy the northern parts of America. One would suppose that these poor people would lead a very miserable life in their cold country, where three-fourths of the time it is winter, and where the sun is not seen for months together; but our *great Creator* has made them as much attached to their *native land* as other people, and they appear quite con-



Part of the Palace of the Kremlin, at Moscow.

tented. They have no books, but they pass away their long winters in sleeping, smoking, and telling long stories of witchcraft, with which they are plentifully provided.



Modes of living and of travelling among the Lapplanders

13. They have no history, for they seem to keep no more record of what passes among them than a hive of bees. One generation succeeds another, and so things pass on from age to age; as they are peaceable in their dispositions, they have no great battles to tell of. Thus they go on, living now as their great-grandfathers lived before them. They acknowledge the authority of the emperor, and pay a tribute of furs, but in other respects they do pretty much as they please.

14. In the provinces bordering on the Black Sea, and also on the banks of the river Don, in Asia, is found a fierce race of people, called Cossacks, who serve in the Russian armies without pay, for the sake of plunder. They are mounted on small but hardy horses, and armed with pistols and long lances, with which they made most terrible slaughter among the French army in its retreat from Moscow.

15. Besides these tribes, there are many Jews, several millions of Poles, a great many Germans, and some gipsies in Russia. In the cities, the people are little interfered with, and each man pursues what occupation he pleases. But the country people who till the land are held in a state of bondage similar to that of the vassals in old feudal times; they are called boors, are in a sad state of ignorance and poverty, and belong either to the emperor or to the nobility.



A Russian Sledge.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of the Russian empire? What of northern Asia? Tribes?—2. To what country is the name of Siberia given? What of the country? People? State Prisoners?—3. What of Russia in Europe? Its population?—4. What of the emperor of Russia?—5. What is the extent of Russia in Europe? Boundaries?—6. Climate of Russia in Europe? Productions?—7. What of St. Petersburg? What may you see in the streets? Palaces?—8. What of Moscow? What was done in 1812?—9. What of the commerce of St. Petersburg? That of Moscow?—10. What of the various nations subject to Russia?—11. What tribes live in the north of Russia? Whom do they resemble? What of their employments? Their life?—12. What of the Cossacks? What of the other inhabitants?—13. What of the boors?

---

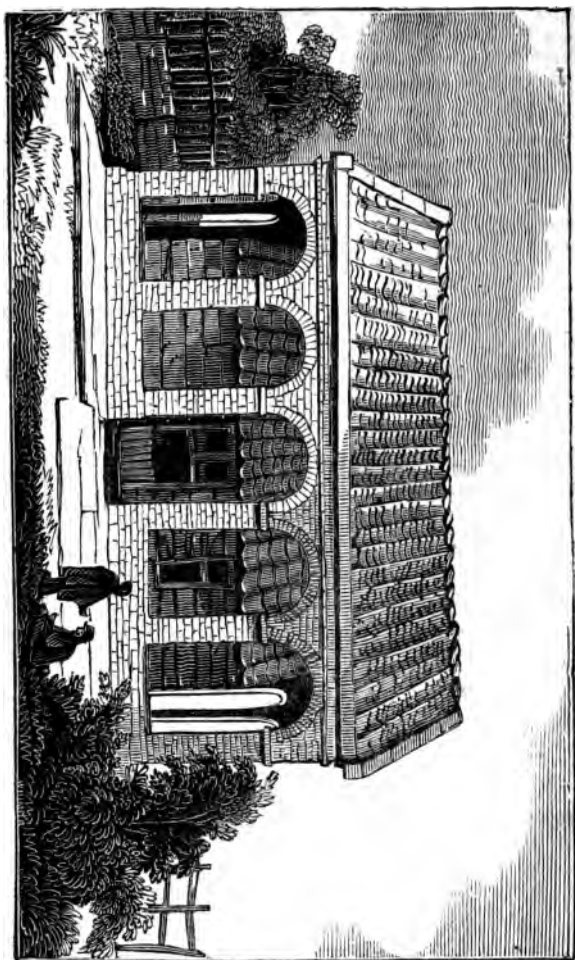
## CHAPTER CXXVI. EUROPE continued.—*The Reign of Peter the Great.*

1. **ALTHOUGH** Russia is such an immense empire, its history will not detain us long, for it was a country of barbarians till within little more than a hundred years, and cannot be said to have taken rank among civilized nations till Peter the Great ascended the throne.

2. Peter was a very wonderful man, and though he had great success in his attempts to civilize his subjects, he seems never to have been civilized himself, but continued somewhat of a barbarian all his life.

3. Peter ascended the throne in 1696, and two years after he determined to leave Russia, and travel over Europe, that he might introduce the arts of civilized life among his people. He did not go to any of the universities, nor apply himself to the study of the dead languages, that not being the sort of knowledge he wanted. The first thing he did was to go to Holland, and learn the trade of a ship-carpenter; the house is still standing in which he used to live while there. He afterwards came to England.

4. Besides learning the business of ship-carpentry, he took lessons in other branches of mechanics, and also in



House in which Peter the Great lived while in Holland.



surgery; in short, he neglected no kind of knowledge which he thought would be useful to himself or his subjects.

5. In a little more than a year, he heard that his sister was endeavouring to usurp the throne. This intelligence compelled him to break off his studies and labours, and hasten back to the city of Moscow, and on arriving there, he put many of the conspirators to death, confined his sister for life, and massacred a large body of guards, called Strelitzes, who had favoured her pretensions. From this time he was so much occupied in war, and in taking care of the empire, that he never had leisure to proceed further with his education; but he had already learnt a great deal, and the effect of his knowledge was soon seen in the improvement of Russia.

6. Peter used to rise at five in the morning, and busy himself all day about the affairs of government; but in the evening, when his work was over, he would seat himself beside a large bottle of brandy, and drink till his reason was quite gone.

7. This habit, together with the natural violence of his temper, rendered him almost as dangerous to his friends as to his enemies. He was aware of this, and often said that he had corrected the faults of Russia, but that he could not correct his own. Peter was in the habit of beating those who offended him with his cane, not excepting the highest noblemen, or even the empress Catherine, his wife.

8. Peter divorced his first wife, and shut her up in a nunnery, and fearing that his son Alexis would, if he became emperor, restore the former state of things, he had him tried for treason, and put to death in prison. He himself died soon after, and although he had many faults, and was guilty of many cruel actions, his memory is revered in his own country, which owes its present greatness to his exertions.

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the history of Russia?—2. What of Peter the Great?—3. Describe the manner in which Peter set about acquiring knowledge.—6. In what vice did Peter indulge?—8. What was the fate of Peter's son? The character of Peter?

---

CHAPTER CXXVII. EUROPE continued.—*The Successors of Peter the Great.*

1. PETER died in 1725, at the age of fifty-three, and was succeeded by his wife, the empress Catherine. She had been a country girl, and Peter had married her for the sake of her beauty. In some respects, Catherine was a good sort of woman; but, among other faults, she was rather too fond of wine.

2. She reigned only about two years, and was succeeded by her husband's grandson, named Peter the Second. He died in 1730, and left the throne to Anne Ivanowna, his niece. The empress Anne was a good sovereign, and performed many praiseworthy acts.

3. The successor of Anne was the princess Elizabeth, a daughter of Peter the Great. She mounted the throne in 1740, and reigned twenty-two years. Her successor was Peter the Third, a weak and indolent prince, who began to reign in 1762, and, like Peter the Great, had a wife named Catherine. They had not long sat together on the throne, when she contrived to depose Peter, and made herself sole ruler of Russia, and he was afterwards murdered. Catherine was endowed with great talents: and she may certainly rank next to Peter the Great, for the improvements she effected among her subjects. Some people called her Catherine the Great Man; for many of her great qualities were rather those of a man than a woman.

4. In 1796, when she died, Catherine was on the point of driving the Turks from their territories; if she had succeeded in doing so, she would have governed the whole of

the vast region between the Mediterranean Sea and the Arctic Ocean. But death hurried the great empress away, in the midst of her projects, and she was succeeded by her son Paul, who was then forty-three years old.

5. Paul had been treated with great harshness by his mother, and when he ascended the throne, many of his acts betokened insanity. This, in a country like Russia, where the sovereign's will is the supreme law, produced so much alarm, that some of his nobles formed a conspiracy against him, and murdered him in his palace, on the 24th of March, 1801.



Russian Priest, Lady, and Peasants.

6. Paul was succeeded by his eldest son, Alexander, who took a very prominent part in opposition to Napoleon, and marched with the other allies of England to Paris, in 1814. On his return to Russia, he exerted himself to introduce among his subjects many of the improvements in arts and manufactures, which he had observed in other countries, and established a very powerful navy. He died

at Taganroc, in Southern Russia, on the 1st of December, 1825.

7. On the death of Alexander, his elder brother Constantine, having renounced his claim to the throne, Nicholas, his next brother, succeeded, and is the present emperor.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. When did Peter die? Who succeeded him? What of the empress Catherine?—2. How long did she reign? Who succeeded her? When did Peter II. die? Who succeeded him? What of the empress Anne?—3. Who succeeded the empress Anne? What of her? When did Peter III. begin to reign? What of his wife? What can you say of her?—4. What had Catherine nearly accomplished? When did she die?—5. Who succeeded her? What of the emperor Paul?—6. Who succeeded him? What of Alexander?—7. Who is the present emperor of Russia?

---

#### CHAPTER CXXVIII. EUROPE continued.—*About Sweden.*

1. THE Swedish territories at present comprise Sweden, Norway, and part of Lapland. These are bounded north by the Arctic Ocean; east by Russian Lapland, the Gulf of Bothnia, and the Baltic; south by the Baltic, the Categat and the Skager Rack; and west by the North Sea.

2. Sweden is a cold and mountainous country, celebrated for its iron, of which large quantities are brought to this country. The people are industrious, bold, frank, and independent. The cattle are few, and of small size, and a large part of the inhabitants live upon milk, cheese, and fish.

3. Stockholm, the capital, is a large city; there is a celebrated university at Upsal; and Bergen and Gottenburg are well-known sea-ports.

4. The Swedes are a sensible people, and are disposed to make the best of everything. When their long winter

goes away, they celebrate the return of spring by great rejoicings. They love their country, and insist that it is the pleasantest part of the world. The lower sort of natives dress in sheep-skins, and live in a homely sort of way, but are polite, honest, and friendly.



Swedish Carriage.

5. Not much is known about the early history of Sweden. In ancient times it was under the government of Denmark: and about the end of the fourteenth century, a Danish queen, named Margaret, ruled over Denmark, Sweden, and Norway.

6. In 1518, the Danish king, Christiern, caused ninety-four Swedish senators to be massacred in the city of Stockholm. Gustavus Vasa, the son of one of these senators, incited the Swedes to revolt against Denmark. The king of Denmark sent an army to put down the rebels. But the ships in which the Danish soldiers had embarked, got embedded in the ice, on the coast of Sweden, and the inhabitants skated off from the shore, and set the ships on fire. Gustavus Vasa succeeded in freeing his country, and was chosen king.

7. The next sovereign of Sweden who need be mentioned, was Gustavus Adolphus. He began to reign in 1611, at the age of eighteen. This king was a great warrior, and vanquished the best generals in the service of the emperor of Germany. In 1632 he won the battle of Lutzen, but was killed at the moment of victory.

8. Gustavus Adolphus left a daughter named Christina, who was then only six years old. She was thought to possess remarkable talents, and great pains were taken with her education; but she was neither a good woman nor a good queen.

9. After reigning a considerable time, queen Christina became weary of the cares of government. She therefore abdicated the throne, and set out to seek a residence in some pleasanter country than Sweden. But her conduct was so bad, that all the kings of Europe were ashamed to have such a woman in their dominions. At last, she adopted the Catholic religion, and the pope permitted her to reside in Rome.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What do the Swedish territories comprise?—2. What of Sweden?—3. The capital? Other towns?—4. What of the Swedes? Dress? Manners?—5. History of Sweden? What of Queen Margaret?—6. What was done in 1518? What of Gustavus Vasa? What of the king? The ships? What of Gustavus Vasa?—7. Who was king of Sweden in 1611? What of Gustavus Adolphus? In what battle did he die?—8. What of Queen Christina? Where was she permitted to reside?

---

## CHAPTER CXXIX. EUROPE continued.—*Charles the Twelfth and his Successors.*

1. THE most famous sovereign that Sweden ever had, and one of the most famous in the world, was Charles the Twelfth.

2. He began to reign in 1697, at fifteen years of age. From his youth upward, he thought of nothing but being

a soldier. When he was only about seventeen years old, Peter, the czar of Russia, and the kings of Poland and Denmark, made war upon him.

3. Charles beat them all in the first campaign. When he heard the bullets whistling by his ears, he showed great delight, and exclaimed, "That shall be my music!" and, as long as he lived, he never wished for any other music. Charles the Twelfth was a scourge to all Europe, and to his own kingdom more than to any other. He delighted in war for its own sake, and not for any good which he expected to gain by it. During the first few years of his reign, Charles was constantly successful, and might have made peace on advantageous terms, but nothing short of the entire conquest of Russia would satisfy him.

4. He invaded that country in 1708, and the next year was totally defeated at Pultowa, where his whole army was destroyed, except three hundred men, who made their escape with him into Turkey. They were kindly received, and Charles induced the Turks to make war on Russia. His subjects earnestly entreated him to return to Sweden, but he feared to trust himself in Germany, the princes of which country he had greatly offended.

5. The Turks at last wished him to leave their country, when he refused, unless supplied with a large sum of money; twice the sum he asked was sent to him, but he still refused to set out. When means were taken to compel him, he had the madness to fortify his house, and defend it, with only forty men, against the Turkish army, which he did till the house was burnt over his head.

6. Being made prisoner, he feigned sickness, and actually kept his bed for ten months. At last, however, he left Turkey, in the year 1714, with only one attendant, and travelled in disguise through Germany to Stralsund, a town on the Baltic, then besieged by the Danes. Here *he remained* till the place was reduced to a heap of ruins,

when he made his escape across the Baltic in an open boat, and reached Sweden, fourteen years after he had left it.

7. He found his kingdom in a most deplorable state, but his only care was to raise fresh armies. The country, however, could furnish no more, and he was compelled to agree to a peace which stripped Sweden of territories she had conquered a hundred years before.

8. Charles could not long remain inactive, and in 1718, in the depth of winter, he invaded Norway, where he was killed, at the siege of Fredericksthall, it is believed, by one of his own officers: his head was shattered by a ball, and his sword was found half drawn from the scabbard. Some historians call him a hero, but he seems better entitled to the appellation of madman.

9. One of his successors, named Gustavus the Third, was shot at a masquerade, in 1792; and Gustavus the Fourth behaved in such a manner that his subjects were compelled to dethrone him. This took place in 1809.

10. The next king was Charles the Thirteenth. The emperor Napoleon caused a French general, named Bernadotte, to be declared Crown Prince of Sweden, and heir to the throne. In 1818, when Charles the Thirteenth died, Bernadotte succeeded him, and took the title of Charles John the Fourteenth.

QUESTIONS. 1. Who was the most famous of the kings of Sweden?—2. When did he begin to reign? What did he principally think of when a boy? Who made war upon him?—3. What anecdote can you tell of him? What can you say of him? What of Charles the Twelfth for the first few years of his reign? When was the battle of Pultowa? Where did Charles fly?—4. What was his conduct there?—6. When did Charles return to Sweden?—7. In what condition did he find his kingdom?—8. How did he meet his death? What do historians think of Charles the Twelfth?—9. Who succeeded him? When did Gustavus the Third die? When was Gustavus the Fourth dethroned?—10. Who was the next king? What of Napoleon? When did Bernadotte succeed to the throne? What title did he assume?





by the sea. The people have a great many cattle, and they seem very fond of tilling the soil. Copenhagen, the capital, has one hundred and twenty thousand inhabitants, and the whole population of the kingdom is about two millions. The Danish language is spoken both in Denmark and Norway.

8. The three kingdoms of Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, were anciently called Scandinavia. In very early times they were occupied by tribes of Finns and Germans; afterwards the Goths conquered these countries. They were led by Odin, of whom many marvellous tales are told, and who seems to have been worshipped as a kind of Jupiter, among these northern tribes. Skiold, the son of Odin, is said to have been the first king of Denmark.

9. All that we really know of Denmark at this early period is, that the people were composed of wild, adventurous warriors, who were considered by the more southern nations of Europe as pirates. About the time that the Roman empire fell, the Danes, Swedes, and Norwegians were known by the general name of Northmen.

10. These bold freebooters sallied forth in their little vessels, and made conquests in different countries. Some of them settled in England, some in that part of France then called Neustria, now, from them, Normandy, and some of them reached Spain and Italy.

11. In 920, the several Danish tribes appear to have been united under one government. Canute conquered England and a part of Scotland in 1016, and subdued Norway in 1030. Since his time, Denmark has been engaged in several wars, but its history offers but little that is interesting.

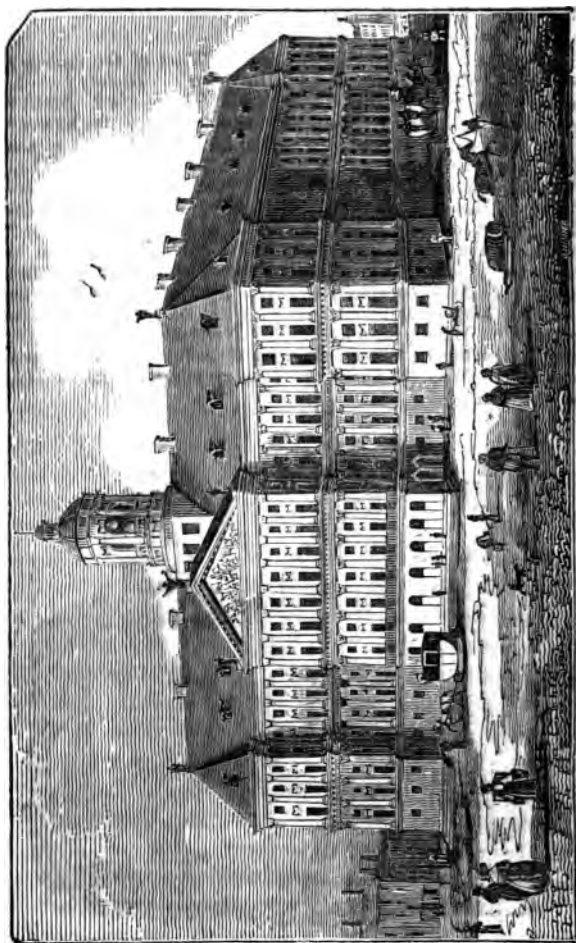
12. The island of Iceland is situated in the Northern Ocean, and belongs to Denmark; it is very mountainous and barren, and contains Mount Hecla, a celebrated volcano, and the Geysers, or boiling springs. The inhabitants

are fifty thousand in number, and are honest, pious, and much attached to their country.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Where is Lapland? What of the climate? —2. What of the Laplanders? Reindeer? History? —3. Where is Norway? What of the country? The people? Butter? —4. What of Bergen? Its population? What of the houses? Are fires frequent? What of the watchmen? —5. What of the early inhabitants of Norway? What was done in 860? —6. When was Norway conquered, and by whom? When did it become independent? What of it in 1397? In 1814? —7. Where is Denmark? What of it? What of Copenhagen? Its population? Population of the Danish kingdom? What language is spoken in Norway and Denmark? —8. What three countries were called Scandinavia? Who occupied it? Who led these tribes? Who was the first king of Denmark? —9. What of Denmark at this early period? What people were called Northmen? —10. What of these freebooters? Where did they settle? —11. What took place in 920? What of Canute? History of Denmark? —12. What of Iceland?



Danish Peasants.



Palace of Amsterdam.

CHAPTER CXXXI. EUROPE continued.—*Brief notices of several Kingdoms and States.*



Dutch Costumes.

1. THERE are several countries of Europe, of which my limits will not permit me to give a separate history. Some of them have been spoken of in connexion with other kingdoms, and the rest must be briefly noticed in one chapter.

2. If I had time, I could tell a long story about Holland, a country once covered by the sea, which is now walled out by a vast dyke. The people of Holland are called Dutch, and are known all the world over as great smokers. They are, however, an industrious people, and I know of nothing more comfortable than the inside of a thrifty Dutchman's house in his own country. Amsterdam, the capital, contains two hundred thousand inhabitants.

3. In Belgium, the people, strange as it may seem, have a mixture of Dutch and French manners. They smoke a great deal of tobacco, yet speak the French language. The country is pleasant, some parts are very beautiful, and many of the cities are highly interesting.

The principal are Brussels, Antwerp, Ghent, and Liege; Bruges is one of the most important towns.

4. The Netherlands, now divided into the kingdoms of Holland and Belgium, were formerly one country. The whole territory is bounded on the north by the North Sea, east by Germany, south by France, and west by the British Channel and the North Sea. These countries had formerly princes of their own, but in the sixteenth century they belonged to Spain.

5. In 1581, the seven northern provinces revolted against Philip of Spain, and formed themselves into a republic, which was then called Holland. During the seventeenth century it was a very powerful nation, especially by sea, and second only to England.

6. The remaining provinces of the Netherlands were long under the government of Austria. In 1810, the whole of the Netherlands were united to France, but in 1814 were formed into a separate kingdom. In 1830 there was a revolution, the union was dissolved, and the southern provinces now compose the kingdom of Belgium, of which Prince Leopold, uncle of Queen Victoria, is the sovereign.

7. Poland was once a nation of Europe, but it is now no longer so. It was bounded north and east by the Russian dominions, south by Austria and Turkey, and west by Prussia. The crown was elective, which gave rise to civil wars, and in 1772, the sovereigns of Russia, Prussia, and Austria, seized upon Poland, and divided the greater part of its territories among themselves; in 1795 they seized the remainder. The inhabitants of the Russian portion have since struggled bravely to regain their freedom, but in vain. The country has been laid waste by the fierce armies of Russia; the progress of civilization, and the arts of peace, have been arrested by internal wars, and a semi-barbarous character has been thereby imparted to the unhappy natives of this ill-fated land. Many of the noblest and the best among them have been slain in war,

or have fallen victims to the vengeance of an enraged conqueror; others have fled into voluntary exile, and of these a great number have taken shelter in our own country, where they have been bountifully relieved both by the government and the people.



Poles.

8. I have already given you a short account of the states of Italy; but it may be well, however, to repeat a few things here. The republic of Venice, as you may recollect, was founded in the fifth century. It at first comprehended only some marshy islands, at the head of the Gulf of Venice, but afterwards, a considerable tract of territory on the mainland was annexed to its government. It carried on an extensive commerce; and, in the thirteenth century, was a very powerful state. It was customary for the Doge of Venice, who was the chief ruler, to espouse the sea as a wife, with pompous ceremonies. Venice has long been going to decay, and is now under the government of Austria. The city of Venice is, however, the admiration of all travellers.

10. *Genoa*, on the north-western coast of Italy, formerly

resembled Venice in its government, although it never was so powerful; in 1815 it was annexed to the kingdom of Sardinia. Sardinia is an island in the Mediterranean Sea, and has been a kingdom since the year 1720. Besides Genoa, it possesses Piedmont and Savoy, in Italy.

11. The kingdom of Naples is generally called the kingdom of the Two Sicilies. Its territories comprise all the south of Italy, besides the islands of Sicily, and some small islands in the neighbourhood. The sovereigns of Naples are a branch of the royal family of Spain.

12. In 1806, the emperor Napoleon gave the kingdom of Naples to one of his most distinguished generals, Joachim Murat. King Joachim was expelled in 1815, and the Two Sicilies were restored to the old king, Ferdinand; the next year, Murat was taken prisoner and shot, while attempting to regain the kingdom.

QUESTIONS. 2. What of Holland? The people? What is the population of Amsterdam?—3. What of the people of Belgium? The country? The cities?—4. What of Holland and Belgium? How is the territory bounded? To whom has it belonged at different times?—5. What took place in 1581? When was Holland very powerful?—6. What of the remaining provinces of the Netherlands? What took place in 1810? In 1830?—7. What of Poland? Its boundaries? What took place in 1772? In 1795? What of the Poles?—8. What of Venice?—9. When was it powerful? What was an annual ceremony? What of Venice now?—10. What of Genoa? Sardinia? Since when has it been a kingdom? What territories belonged to it?—11. What is the kingdom of Naples generally called? What of its territories?—12. What of Napoleon? King Joachim? King Ferdinand?

## CHAPTER CXXXII. EUROPE continued.—*Chronology of Russia, Sweden, Lapland, Norway, Denmark, Holland, Belgium, &c.*

	A. D.
Venice founded	421
Kingdom of Sweden began	481
The first king reigns in Denmark	714
Venice becomes an independent republic	809
Iceland discovered by the Norwegians	860



	A. D.
Christianity introduced into Russia	955
Canute, king of Denmark, conquered England	1016
Norway conquered by Canute	1030
Russia conquered by the Poles	1058
Russia conquered by the Crim Tartars	1237
Norway united to Denmark	1397
Russia becomes independent of the Tartars	1462
Massacre of the Swedish senators	1518
Gustavus Vasa ascended the throne of Sweden	1528
The grand duke of Russia takes the title of czar	1553
Moscow burnt by the Tartars	1571
Republic of Holland founded	1581
Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, began to reign	1611
Battle of Lutzen, and death of Gustavus Adolphus	1632
Peter the Great begins to reign	1696
Charles XII. of Sweden began to reign	1697
Peter the Great defeats Charles XII. at Pultowa	1709
Charles XII. returns to Sweden	1714
The czar of Russia takes the title of emperor	1721
Peter the Great died	1725
Peter II. died	1730
Elizabeth ascends the throne of Russia	1740
Peter III. ascended the throne	1762
First partition of Poland	1772
Gustavus III. of Sweden assassinated	1792
Russia declared war against France	1792
Catherine II. died	1796
Paul, emperor of Russia, murdered	1801
Battle of Copenhagen	1801
Copenhagen bombarded by the English	1807
Joachim Murat made king of Naples	1808
Gustavus IV. of Sweden dethroned	1809
Netherlands united to the French empire	1810
The city of Moscow burnt	1812
Norway transferred to Sweden	1814
Genoa annexed to the kingdom of Sardinia	1814
The kingdom of the Netherlands established	1814
Alexander, emperor of Russia, dies	1825
Nicholas ascends the throne of Russia	1825
Attempted revolution in Poland	1830
Revolution in Netherlands : divided into Holland and Belgium	1830
Citadel of Antwerp taken by the French	1832

CHAPTER CXXXIII. EUROPE continued.—*Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland.*

1. THE united kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland comprises England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland. The first three of which form the island of Great Britain, which is separated on the south from France by the British Channel, and on the east from Belgium, Holland, and Germany, by the German Ocean, or North Sea. On the west it is divided from Ireland by St. George's Channel.

2. These two islands are small in extent, but they contain upwards of twenty-five millions of inhabitants. Besides this, the country has colonies in various parts of Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, so that the sovereign rules over about one hundred and fifty millions of people, and Great Britain may thus be considered the richest and most powerful kingdom on the face of the globe.

3. London is the largest and finest city in Europe, and contains nearly two million of inhabitants; it is situated on the river Thames, across which there are four handsome stone bridges, and two iron ones. London has no wall around it like Paris, Berlin, and most large cities on the Continent, but it is encircled by a beautiful country, dotted with villages, villas, and country-seats.

4. London seems like a world of itself; you might walk about for a year, and go into some new street every day. In some parts of the city there are such streams of people, that it always seems like a fair. The shops are filled with beautiful things, and the streets are crowded with coaches and carriages of all sorts.

5. London being the residence of the court, contains two royal palaces. That of St. James's is an old building, altogether destitute of external beauty or grandeur, but internally well adapted to the pomp and circumstance of a court. A new palace, with greater pretensions to beauty, was commenced building by George the Fourth, on the

site of Buckingham House, and is hence called Buckingham Palace. That king died before its completion; and although the finishing and furnishing of it was proceeded

Waterloo Bridge, London.



with during the reign of William the Fourth, it remained unoccupied until the accession of our present Queen Victoria, who took up her residence there a few months after she came to the crown.

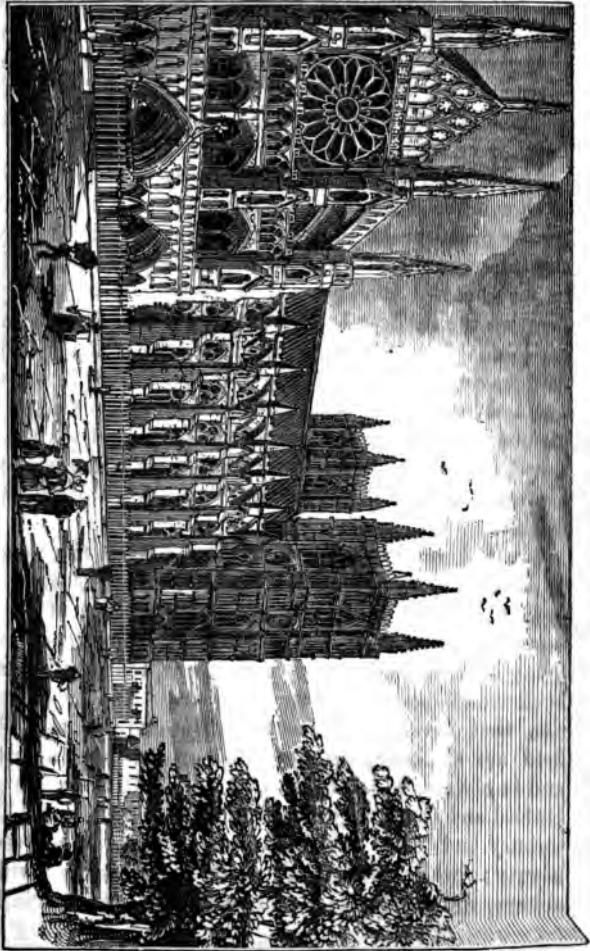
6. London is also the seat of government; and not far from the royal residence are the two houses of Parliament. These were never remarkable for architectural beauty, but in the year 1834 they were almost wholly destroyed by fire. At present the buildings are only fitted up in a temporary manner, until new and splendid edifices, worthy of being places for the reception of the legislature of this great nation, can be erected. The works are commenced, and a very few years will suffice for their completion.

7. But the pride and glory of the western portion of London, wherein the palaces and the parliament houses are situated, is Westminster Abbey. This fine old gothic edifice abounds in architectural details of the most rich and beautiful description, too numerous and extensive to be described in this little book; but all young persons who have the opportunity of visiting it, and inspecting its venerable contents, should by no means omit doing so. In this Abbey the sovereigns of Great Britain are crowned, and within its walls are buried many of its monarchs. It abounds too in splendid monuments to the memory of the great, the wise, and the good, among their subjects, during several centuries.

8. Westminster Hall, another building of high antiquity, is situated in the immediate neighbourhood of the Abbey. In this hall the grand banquet on the coronation of our sovereign takes place, and within the immediate precincts of the hall are the chief courts of law.

9. As in the western part of London are situated, in addition to the royal palaces and houses of Parliament, the various offices belonging to the government, so in the eastern are the principal establishments connected with the trade and commerce of the country. Among these

are the Bank of England, the Royal Exchange, the East India House, numerous banking houses, offices of insurance companies, and many others of a similar kind. The



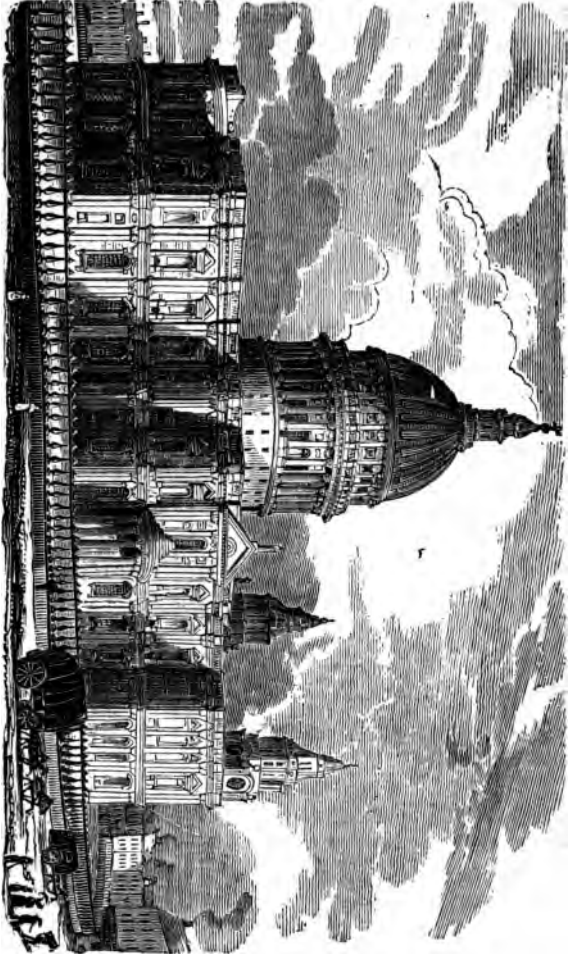
Westminster Abbey.

vast docks, wherein are congregated ships from all parts of the civilized world, freighted with the productions of nature and art, from the four quarters of the globe, are at the eastern extremity of London. The celebrated Tower of London, whose history is connected with that of some of the most memorable events in the history of England, is situated on the banks of the Thames, a little below London bridge, the last of the bridges which cross that noble river.

10. London contains a great number of churches, some of them of considerable antiquity, and many distinguished for the grandeur of their architecture, and the beauty of their decorations. I cannot even attempt to name them in my confined limits, but I must not omit specially to mention the justly-celebrated and truly grand cathedral of St. Paul. This noble structure is of comparatively modern date, having been finished only in the year 1723. It is of vast size and height, and contains some fine monuments to the memory of distinguished persons. Our great naval hero, Lord Nelson, was buried here with great pomp, and over his tomb is a noble monument beautifully executed in marble.

11. If I were to attempt to tell you of all the wonders of London, I should need a much larger book than my present, though that gives you some account of all the countries of the world. And besides London, there are so many other fine cities and large towns, that another large book would be required for them also. But I must mention that Liverpool, Manchester, Birmingham, and Sheffield, are the great seats of those manufactures of cotton and hardware, which are so well known in every country. Oxford and Cambridge are famous universities, and Canterbury and York have cathedral churches of surpassing beauty; while noblemen's seats, noble castles, ruined abbeys, thriving towns, and neat villages, are met with in every direction.

St. Paul's Cathedral.



12. Wales is a mountainous country, lying on the west of England. The people use the Welsh language, though they generally understand English; they are very indus-

trious, and live in a comfortable manner. Snowdon, the highest mountain in South Britain, is in Wales; at its foot stands Carnarvon Castle, built by Edward the First. The Welsh mountains produce coal, tin, iron, and copper, and feed vast numbers of sheep and small horses.

13. Scotland is also a land of mountains. In the southern part the people speak the English language; but in the Highlands of the north, the inhabitants speak Gaelic, which would be as strange to you as the language of an Arab. The capital of Scotland is Edinburgh, a fine city, with a castle and a royal palace, called Holyrood House. Besides this, there are many fine towns in Scotland. Glasgow is a large city, and celebrated for its manufactures.

14. Ireland is a rich and fertile island, containing seven millions of people. The Irish are a very interesting people, full of wit and hospitality; they are generally very poor, but, by their lively disposition and cheerful turn of mind, they seem to soften the evils which they suffer. Dublin is the capital of Ireland, and some of its streets are magnificent, but in many portions of it the inhabitants exhibit a most distressing picture of the effects of ignorance and improvidence, and beggary is common in all parts of the kingdom.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What is embraced in the kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland? What of the island of Great Britain? What of the British Channel? German Ocean? Ireland?—2. Population of Great Britain and Ireland? Colonies of Great Britain?—3. Population of London? The Thames? Bridges? Country around London?—4. Describe the appearance of London.—5. St. James's Palace. Buckingham Palace. 6. Houses of Parliament.—7. Westminster Abbey. 8. Westminster Hall.—9. Commercial establishments. Docks. The Tower.—10. Churches. St. Paul's cathedral. Nelson's monument.—11. What of Liverpool? Manchester? Birmingham? Sheffield? Oxford? Cambridge? Canterbury? York? What are met with all over the country?—12. Where is Wales? What of the people? Snowdon? Carnarvon? What does Wales produce?—13. What of Scotland? Language? What of Edinburgh? Glasgow?—14. What of Ireland? What of the Irish people? What of Dublin?



CHAPTER CXXXIV. EUROPE continued.—*Origin of the British nation. The Druids.*



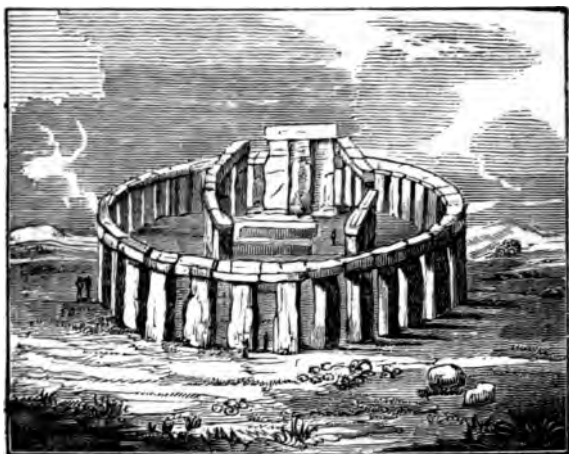
Celtic Inhabitants of Britain.

1. It is supposed that Great Britain was originally settled by a colony from Gaul. These were **Gauls, or Celts**, and their descendants are found, at this day, in Ireland and Wales, and the Highlands of Scotland. Some of these still speak the ancient Gaelic or Celtic language.

2. Very little was known about this island till the time of **Julius Cæsar**, who invaded England in the year 55 before the Christian era. The country was then called **Albion, or Britain**. It was inhabited by barbarians, who wore the skins of wild beasts, and had their bodies painted; their weapons were clubs, spears, and swords, with which they bravely withstood the Roman invaders.

3. The ancient Britons, like the other northern nations of Europe, were idolaters; their priests were called **Druids**. Their places of worship were in the open air, and were

formed of huge stone pillars, standing in a circle ; a large stone in the middle was used as an altar, and human victims were often sacrificed upon it. One of these temples, called Stonehenge, is yet standing on Salisbury Plain, and although some of the stones have fallen, it is one of the most interesting objects in the country. A learned antiquarian has given us a view of the temple as it may be supposed to have originally appeared.



Stonehenge restored.

4. The druids considered the oak a sacred tree, and set a great value on the mistletoe, a plant which sometimes grows on the oak ; wherever they found the mistletoe, they held a banquet beneath the spreading branches of the oak on which it grew.

5. The druids incited the Britons to oppose the Roman power ; they fought fiercely, and the country was not entirely subdued till sixty years after the Christian era. Suetonius, a Roman general, then cut down the sacred groves of oak, destroyed the temples, and threw the druids

into the fires which they had themselves prepared for his troops.

6. The Scots, who inhabited the northern part of the island, were a fierce people, and were still unconquered. To prevent them from making incursions into Britain, the Romans built a wall from the river Tyne to the Frith of Solway, some remains of which may still be traced.



A Romanized Briton.

7. The Britons remained quietly under the government of Rome for more than four centuries after the Christian era; adopting, during this period, many of the Roman customs. They never attempted to free themselves; but, at last, the Roman empire became so weak, that the emperor Valentinian withdrew his troops from Britain.

8. The inhabitants had grown so unwarlike, that, when the Roman soldiers were gone, they found themselves unable to resist the Scots and the Picts; they therefore,

about the year 448, obtained the assistance of a warlike tribe of people from Germany, called Saxons, who drove



Saxons.

back the Scots and the Picts into their own part of the island; but instead of returning to Germany, they took possession of Britain by the right of the strongest, and divided their conquests into seven small kingdoms, which were called the Saxon Heptarchy.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the Gaels or Celts?—2. When did Caesar invade England? What was Great Britain then called? What of the people?—3. Religion of the ancient Britons? Who were the druids? What of their places of worship?—4. How was the oak considered by the druids? The mistletoe?—5. When was the country entirely subdued? What of Suetonius?—6. What of the Scots? What did the Romans do?—7. How long did Rome govern Britain? What of the emperor Valentinian?—8. Whose aid did the Britons ask against the Scots? What did their allies do? How was Britain then divided?

CHAPTER CXXXV. EUROPE continued.—*Saxon and Danish Kings of England.*



A Saxon King and his Armour-Bearer.

1. In the year 827 of the Christian era, all the seven kingdoms of the Saxon Heptarchy were united into one, under the government of Egbert; he was therefore, as he styled himself, the first king of all England.

2. Egbert was a native of England, but he had been educated in France, at the court of Charlemagne, and was therefore more polished and enlightened than most of the Saxon kings. During the reign of Egbert, and for many years afterwards, the Danes made incursions into England, and sometimes overran the whole country.

3. Alfred, who ascended the throne in 872, fought fifty-six battles with them, by sea and land. On one occasion,

he went into the camp of the Danes in the disguise of a harper, took notice of everything, planned an attack upon the camp, and then, returning to his own men, led them against the Danes, whom he completely routed.

4. This king was called Alfred the Great ; and he had a better right to the epithet of Great than many other kings who have borne it, for he made wise laws, and instituted the custom of trial by jury ; he likewise founded the University of Oxford. After his death, the Danes again invaded England, when there was no Alfred the Great to oppose them ; they were accordingly victorious, and three Danish kings governed the country in succession.



Danish Chieftains.

5. Canute the Great was the first. One day, when he was walking on the sea shore, his courtiers, in order to

flatter him, called him king of the sea, and told him that he had but to command, and even the waves would obey him. Canute, wisely determined to reprove their flattery, desired a seat to be brought and placed on the sands; then, seating himself, stretched out his sceptre over the waves, in a commanding manner. "Roll back thy waves, thou sea!" cried Canute; "I am thy king and master! How darest thou foam and thunder in my presence?" But the waves still came roaring and foaming onward, tossing their salt spray over Canute and his company. The king then turned to the flatterers and said, "How foolish and how presumptuous it is, for any mortal being to pretend to exercise a power which God has not bestowed upon him!"



A Saxon Ship.

6. In the year 1041, after the death of Canute's two sons, the Danes were driven out of England, and Edward the Confessor, the heir of the former Saxon princes, was placed upon the throne. At his death, in 1066, Harold, who was also a Saxon, became king; but he was the last of the Saxon kings, for no sooner had he assumed the

crown, than William, duke of Normandy in France, pretending that King Edward had bequeathed the kingdom to him, invaded England, at the head of sixty thousand men.

7. Harold led his army against the Norman invaders, and encountered them at Hastings; for a long time the victory was doubtful, till at last Harold, who, according to the Saxon custom, fought with his head bare, was struck by an arrow, which penetrated his brain. The Duke of Normandy then gained the victory, and became king of England, and was called William the Conqueror.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Who was the first king of England? What kingdoms did he govern?—2. What of Egbert? What of the Danes?—3. When did Alfred ascend the throne? What did he do?—4. Why was he called Alfred the Great? What of the Danes after his death?—5. Tell the story of King Canute and his courtiers?—6. What of Edward the Confessor? When did Harold become king? Who now invaded England?—7. Where was the battle fought between Harold and William? Who became king of England?

---

#### CHAPTER CXXXVI. EUROPE continued.—*From William the Conqueror to King John.*

1. WILLIAM the Conqueror reigned about twenty years; he cruelly oppressed the Saxons, and divided their lands among his Norman followers. He was succeeded by his second son, William Rufus, or the Red, so named from the colour of his hair. Rufus was very fond of hunting, and one day, while he was chasing a deer in the forest, one Walter Tyrrel discharged an arrow, which accidentally struck the king in the breast, so that he fell from his horse and died on the spot.

2. This took place in the year 1100, and William Rufus was succeeded by his brother Henry, who was called Beaucerk, or Excellent Scholar, because he was more learned than was usual in those days. On the death of



Henry, in 1135, the throne was usurped by his nephew Stephen of Blois; but he died in 1154, and was succeeded by Henry the Second, who was grandson to the former Henry.



A Norman Archer.



A Norman Soldier.

3. In those days the popes possessed great power over all Europe, and they and their cardinals were insolent and oppressive to kings as well as their subjects. King Henry unfortunately had a quarrel with Thomas à Becket, the archbishop of Canterbury, who, being supported by the pope, treated the king with great insolence. Henry exclaimed that he had no faithful subjects, or they would not suffer him to be thus insulted; so, in the hope of pleasing the king, four of his knights went to Canterbury, and murdered Becket at the foot of the altar. This bloody deed, however, was a cause of great trouble to King Henry, for the pope threatened to excommunicate him, and only pardoned him on condition of his going barefoot to Becket's tomb, and submitting to be scourged by the monks.

4. Henry's sons most undutifully made war upon their

father, and their conduct is said to have broken his heart. During the reign of this king, Ireland was conquered and annexed to the realm of England; it had previously been divided into several separate kingdoms.

5. Richard Cœur de Lion, or the Lion-hearted, second son of Henry, was crowned king in 1189. He was a valiant man, possessed prodigious strength, and delighted in nothing so much as war and battle. He went to the crusades, and after gaining great renown in Palestine, was, on his way back, taken and imprisoned for two years by the Duke of Austria. He obtained his release by paying a heavy ransom, but soon afterwards, while besieging a castle in France, was killed by an arrow from a cross-bow.

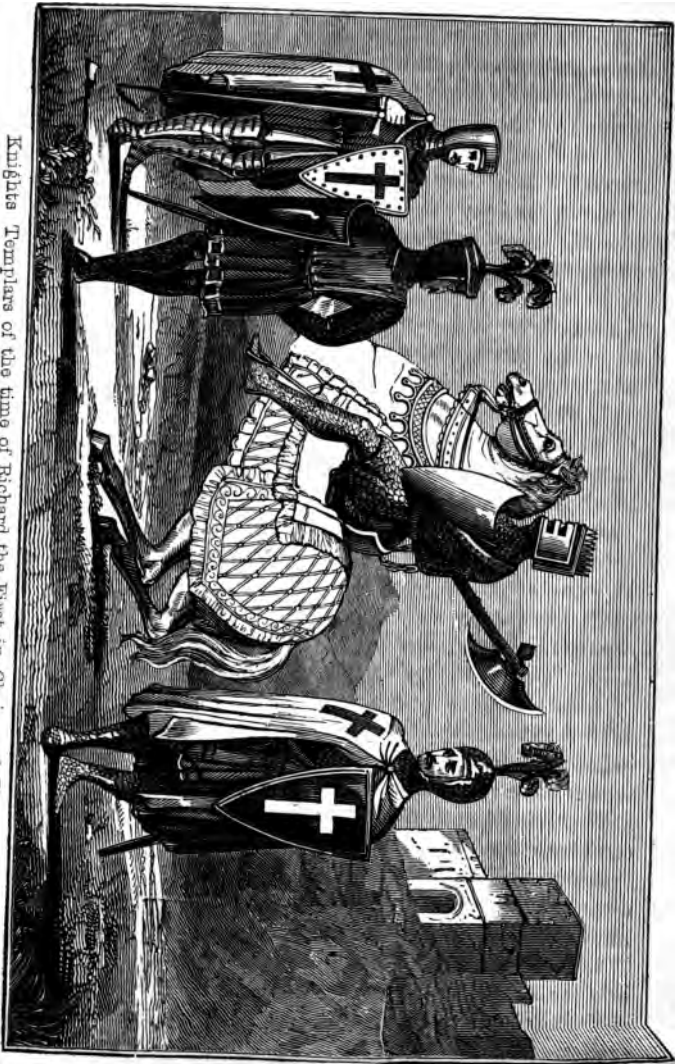
6. The next king was Richard's brother John, surnamed Lackland, which epithet was bestowed on him because he lost the territories which the English kings had hitherto possessed in France. John was one of the worst kings that ever reigned in England, and among other crimes he murdered his nephew, Arthur of Bretagne, who was the rightful heir to the crown.

7. The barons of England were so disgusted with the conduct of John, that they assembled at Runnymede, and compelled him to sign a written deed, called Magna Charta. This famous charter was dated the 19th of June, 1215; it is considered the foundation of English liberty, for it deprived John, and all his successors, of the despotic power which former kings had exercised.

8. King John died in 1216, and left the crown to his son, who was then only nine years old. He was called Henry the Third. His reign, which lasted fifty-six years, was disturbed by a civil war, in which the king, his son, and his brother, were made prisoners.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Who succeeded William the Conqueror? What was the fate of William Rufus?—2. When did Henry Beaulark begin his reign? When did Stephen succeed to the throne? When did he die? Who succeeded him?—3. Who murdered Thomas a



Knights Templars of the time of Richard the First, in Chain and Plate Armour.

Becket?—4. What of Henry's sons? What of Ireland?—5. When did Richard become king of England? What of him? How was he killed?—6. Why was John called Lackland? What of him? His crimes?—7. Who signed Magna Charta? How is it considered?—8. When did King John die? What of Henry the Third?



Anglo-Norman Lady of the  
Twelfth Century.



Soldier of the  
Twelfth Century.

## CHAPTER CXXXVII. EUROPE continued.—*Reigns of Edward I., II., and III., and Richard II.*

1. THE next king, Edward the First, ascended the throne in 1272. The people gave him the nickname of Longshanks, because his legs were of unusual length. He was a great warrior, and fought bravely in Palestine, and in the civil wars during his father's reign.

2. Edward conquered Wales, which had hitherto been a separate kingdom; he attempted to conquer Scotland likewise, but did not entirely succeed. The illustrious Wallace resisted him, and defeated his troops in many battles; but, at last, he was taken prisoner and carried in chains to London, and there executed. Edward now mustered an immense army, with which he had resolved to

subjugate Scotland, but he was seized with a fever and died, before he could cross the border.

3. His son, Edward the Second, ascended the throne in 1307. He led an army of a hundred thousand men into Scotland; but he was not such a warrior as his father. Robert Bruce encountered him at Bannockburn, with only thirty thousand men, and gained a glorious victory, which set Scotland free.

4. Edward the Second reigned about twenty years. He was a weak and unfortunate king: his own wife made war against him, and took him prisoner, and by her instigation, he was cruelly murdered in prison.

5. His son, Edward the Third, began to reign in 1327, at the age of fifteen. He had not long been on the throne, before he showed himself very unlike his father; he defeated the Scots at Halidown-hill, and afterwards invaded France. I have spoken of his French wars, in the history of France.

6. The king's son, surnamed the Black Prince, was as brave as his father; he was also as kind and generous as he was brave. He defeated King John of France, and took him prisoner, but he did not exult over him: when they entered London together, the Black Prince rode bare-headed by the side of the captive monarch, as if he were merely an attendant, instead of a conqueror. This brave prince died in 1376, and his father lived only one year longer.

7. The next king was Richard the Second, the son of the Black Prince, a boy of eleven years old. When he grew up, Richard neglected the government, and cared for nothing but his own pleasures.

8. During his reign, a rebellion broke out, headed by a blacksmith, named Wat Tyler: the rebels had also other leaders, nicknamed Jack Straw and Hob Carter. They marched to London with a hundred thousand followers, and did a great deal of mischief.

9. The king, attended by a few of his nobles, rode out to hold a conference with Wat Tyler, in Smithfield. The rebel treated King Richard with great insolence, and even threatened him with his sword. William Walworth, the Lord Mayor of London, was standing near the king, and he was so offended at Wat Tyler's insolence, that he uplifted a mace, or club, and smote Wat to the ground; a knight then killed him with his sword.

10. When the rebels saw that their leader was beaten down and slain, they gave an angry shout, and were rushing forward to attack the king's party; but King Richard rode boldly to meet them, and waved his hand with a majestic air.



Soldier and Gentleman of the Fourteenth Century.

11. "Be not troubled for the death of your leader!" he cried; "I, your king, will be a better leader than Wat Tyler!" The king's words and looks made such an impression, that the rebels were easily persuaded to disperse.

12. Notwithstanding his promise to the rebels, King Richard was not a good ruler. His subjects grew more

and more discontented; and his cousin, the Duke of Lancaster, formed the project of making himself king. Richard was dethroned, and imprisoned at Pontefract Castle, where he was either killed or starved to death.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. When was Edward the First crowned? What did the people call him? What of him?—2. What of Wales? Who resisted Edward in Scotland? Fate of William Wallace? Death of Edward the First?—3. What of Edward the Second? What of Robert Bruce? Battle of Bannockburn? How was Scotland set free?—4. What happened to Edward the Second?—5. What of Edward the Third? When did he begin to reign?—6. What of the Black Prince? How did he treat John of France?—7. What of Richard the Second?—8, 9. What of Wat Tyler's rebellion? What did William Walworth do?—11. What of the rebels when Wat Tyler was killed? What did Richard do?—12. Who dethroned him? His fate?

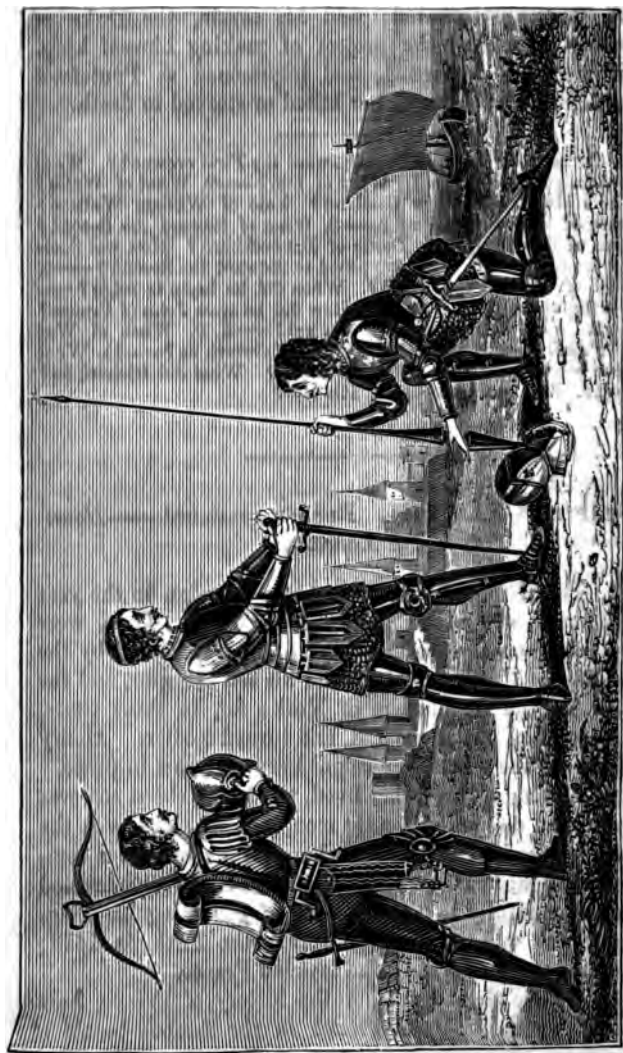
---

#### CHAPTER CXXXVIII. EUROPE continued.—*House of Lancaster.*

1. THE Duke of Lancaster began to reign in the year 1399, and was called Henry the Fourth. There were two rebellions against this king. One was headed by the Earl of Northumberland and his son Hotspur, and the other by the Archbishop of York; for, in those times, bishops often put on armour, and turned soldiers. Henry conquered the rebels, and reigned several years in peace.

2. As long as his father lived, the king's eldest son was a wild and dissipated young man, but no sooner was the old king dead, than Henry's character underwent a complete change; he threw off his dissipated habits, and devoted himself carefully to the business of governing his kingdom. He was crowned, as Henry the Fifth, in 1413; and two years afterwards he invaded France.

3. I have already told, in the history of France, how Henry vanquished the French in the famous battle of



Crossbow-man, Knight, and Lancer, of the time of Henry the Fifth



Agincourt, and how he afterwards became master of the whole kingdom of France. His death took place in 1422, in the midst of his triumphs, at the age of thirty-four.

4. His son, Henry the Sixth, was but nine months old at his father's death. The affairs of his kingdom were ably managed while he was a child by his uncles, the Dukes of Bedford and Gloucester; but when he became of age, he showed himself utterly unfit to govern, and all the conquests that his father had made in France were speedily lost. This made the king very unpopular, and the Duke of York took advantage of it to make his claim on the crown. You may recollect that the Duke of Lancaster had unlawfully taken the crown from Richard the Second; but he and his son reigned without much opposition, because they were warlike men, and could have defended themselves with their swords.

5. Henry the Sixth, on the contrary, was soft, meek, and peaceable, without spirit enough to fight for the crown which his father had left him. The heirs of Richard the Second therefore thought this a proper time to get back their lawful inheritance, and the Duke of York was the nearest heir.

6. He took up arms in 1455, and if there had been nobody but Henry the Sixth to resist him, he might have got the crown at once; but Henry's wife, whose name was Margaret, and many of the nobility, took up arms for the king, while other noblemen lent assistance to the Duke of York.

7. The king's friends, the Lancastrians, wore red roses as a badge, or cognisance, as it was called, and those of the Duke of York, or Yorkists, a white rose. From this circumstance, their contests were called the Wars of the Roses.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Who was Henry the Fourth? When did he begin to reign? What rebellions were there against this king? —  
2. What of Henry the Fifth? When did he invade France? —

3. When did Henry the Fifth die?—4. What of Henry the Sixth? The Duke of York? What of the Duke of Lancaster? His son Henry the Fifth?—5. What did the heirs of Richard the Second do?—6. When did the Duke of York begin the war? Who took up arms for Henry?—7. What did the followers of the king wear? Those of the Duke of York? What were their contests called?

---

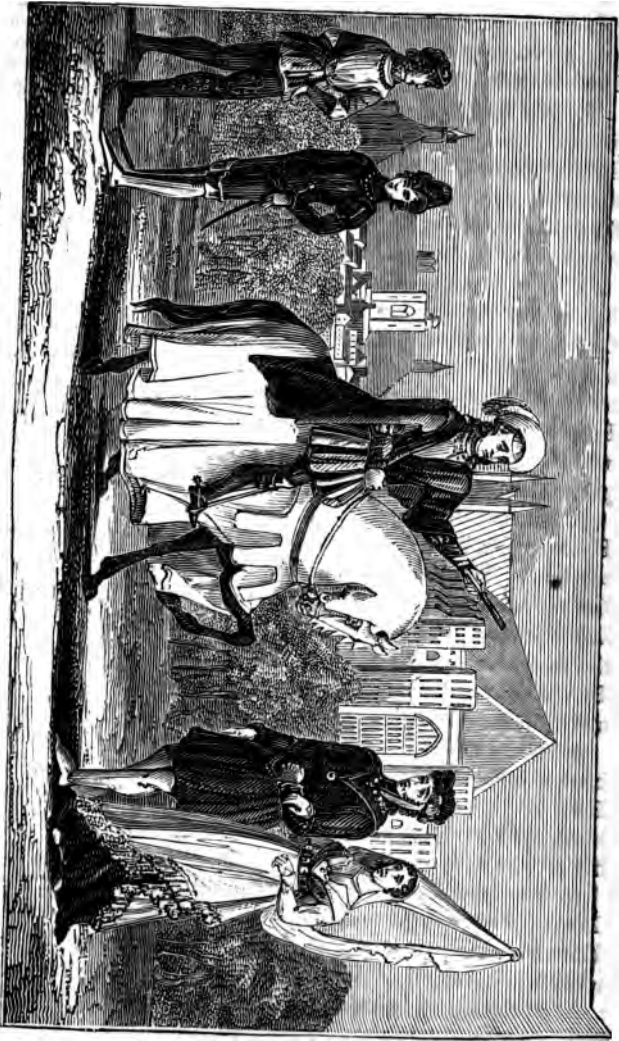
CHAPTER CXXXIX. EUROPE continued.—*Wars of the Roses.*

1. THE wars of the roses lasted thirty years; sometimes the white rose was triumphant, and sometimes the red. The most celebrated general in these wars was the Earl of Warwick, and it was chiefly by his means that the Yorkists gained a decisive victory at Towton, in which nearly forty thousand of the Lancastrians were killed. The young Duke of York was then proclaimed king, under the name of Edward the Fourth.

2. This was in 1461, but, not long afterwards, the Earl of Warwick quarrelled with King Edward, and quitting the party of the Yorkists, compelled Edward to flee over to France; he then took King Henry the Sixth out of prison, and placed him on the throne again.

3. As the Earl of Warwick showed himself so powerful in pulling down kings and setting them up again, he gained the name of the King-maker. But he was soon after killed at the battle of Barnet, while fighting bravely for the Lancastrians, and then the white rose flourished again.

4. Henry the Sixth, and his son, Prince Edward, were both murdered in 1471, and Edward the Fourth became the undisputed King of England. He had fought bravely for the crown, but now that he had got firm possession of it, he became idle and voluptuous. He was also cruel and tyrannical; having resolved to put the Duke of Clarence, *his brother*, to death, he gave him the choice of dying in



Costumes of the Reign of Richard the Third, with the long-toed shoes.

whatever manner he pleased, and Clarence, who was a great lover of good liquor, chose to be drowned in a hog-head of wine.

5. Edward the Fourth died in 1483. He left two young children, the eldest of whom now became King Edward the Fifth. But these poor children had a wicked uncle for a guardian, Richard, Duke of Gloucester, who, from his deformity, was called Crookback, and he determined to make himself king.

6. The Tower of London was then a royal palace, and before they were crowned, the kings usually resided there. One night, while the king and his little brother were asleep in each other's arms, some ruffians were sent by their uncle, who smothered them with the bolsters of the bed, and then buried them at the foot of a staircase, where some bones, supposed to be those of the murdered princes, were discovered two hundred years afterwards.

7. Thus crookbacked Richard became King of England. He committed other dreadful crimes for the sake of getting the crown, but he did not keep it long. Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, was now the only remaining heir of King Henry the Sixth. The French supplied him with the means of making war against Richard; he landed in England when Richard had been king about two years, and gained a victory at Bosworth.

8. When the soldiers of Richmond examined the dead bodies that lay in heaps on the battle-field, they found King Richard amongst them, with the crown upon his head. They put it on the head of Richmond, and hailed him King Henry the Seventh.

9. The new king married a daughter of Edward the Fourth, and at their wedding, they each wore a red rose intertwined with a white one; for by their marriage, the rival houses of York and Lancaster were united, and the wars of the roses were now ended.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. How long did the wars of the roses last? What of the Earl of Warwick?—2. When was Edward IV. made king? What did Warwick do?—3. What was he called? How was he killed? When did the party of the white rose flourish again?—4. What of Edward IV.? What of Henry VI. and his son? How did he treat his brother?—5. When did he die? What children did he leave? What of the Duke of Gloucester? What crime did he commit? Did he become king?—6. Who gained the battle of Bosworth?—7. How was Richard found? Who did Henry VII. marry? Why did they wear white and red roses?

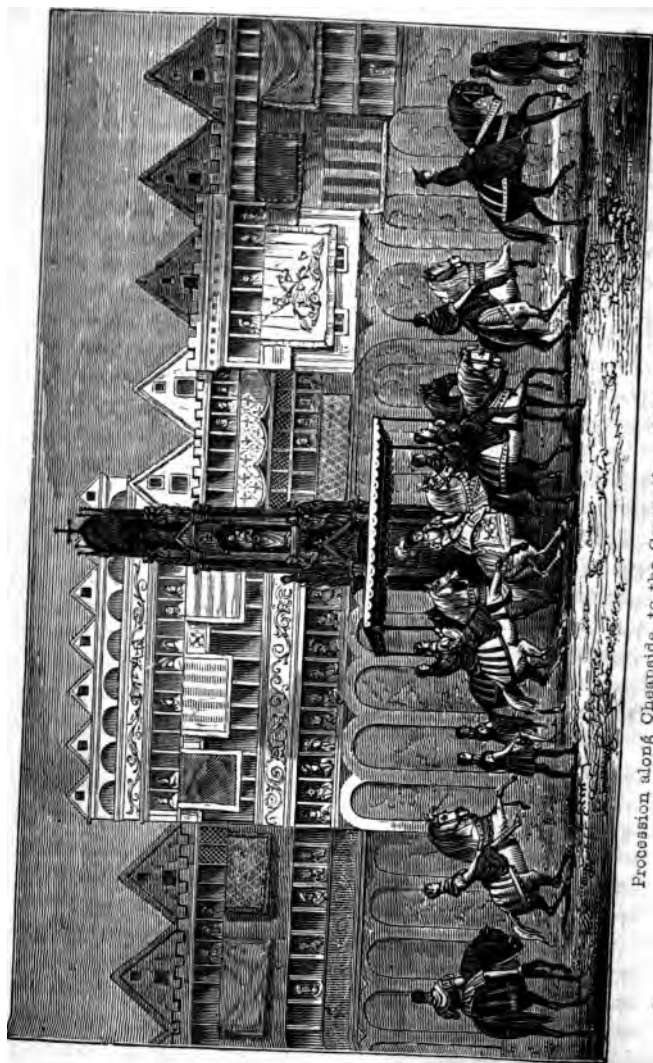
CHAPTER CXL. EUROPE continued.—*The House of Tudor.*

1. ~~Henry~~ the Seventh began his reign in 1485. He was a crafty king, and cared much more for his own power and wealth than for the happiness of his subjects. But, for his own sake, he desired to reign peaceably, without foreign wars or civil commotions.

2. During his reign, two impostors appeared in England, each of whom pretended to be a person who had a better right to the crown than Henry the Seventh had. One was Lambert Simnel, the son of a baker; but he called himself a nephew of Edward the Fourth. The other, Perkin Warbeck, asserted that he was the Duke of York, the brother of Edward the Fifth, and had made his escape from the Tower, instead of having been murdered, as was generally supposed.

3. Many knights and noblemen of England were led into rebellion by each of these impostors, but finally they were both taken prisoners. Perkin Warbeck was hanged, and Lambert Simnel was made a scullion in the king's kitchen.

4. Henry the Seventh died in 1509. He had been a great hoarder of money, and put all that he could lay his hands on into his own purse. A sum equal to five millions of money at the present day, was found in his palace, after his death.



Procession along Cheapside, to the Coronation of Edward the Sixth.

5. His son, Henry the Eighth, began to reign at the age of eighteen. He was a haughty, stern, hard-hearted; and tyrannical king. He had six wives; one died a natural death, he was divorced from two, had two others beheaded, and one outlived him.

6. The reign of Henry the Eighth was chiefly remarkable on account of the Reformation in England; by which is meant the substitution of the Protestant for the corrupt Roman Catholic church. Until this period, the pope of Rome had claimed authority over England, and in the early part of his reign Henry wrote a book in favour of the pope, from whom in return he received the title of Defender of the Faith, which is still used by the sovereign, though happily in a very different sense.

7. He died in 1547, at the age of fifty-six. One of his last acts was to cause his brother-in-law, the Earl of Surrey, to be beheaded; the earl's father, the Duke of Norfolk, would also have fallen a sacrifice, though the only offence they had given was, that a portion of their coat of arms, which they had borne without offence for many years, resembled the royal arms, but the king himself died on the day intended for the execution, and thus the duke was saved. The celebrated reformers, Cranmer, Latimer, and Ridley, lived during his reign.

8. His son, Edward the Sixth, was but nine years old when he ascended the throne. He seemed likely to be a very different king from his father, but lived only to the age of sixteen.

9. Edward was succeeded, in 1553, by his sister Mary, who bears the dreadful title of Bloody Queen Mary. Being a Roman Catholic, she caused persons to be burnt alive who denied the authority of the pope, and many bishops and godly ministers thus perished at the stake. Lady Jane Grey and her father, and her husband and his father, were also put to death by her.

10. But her victims were happier than the Blood-

Queen Mary; for she knew that every body hated her, and, after a reign of only five years, she died of mere trouble and anguish.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. When did Henry VII. begin to reign. What of him?—2. What of two impostors? Their names? Who did they pretend to be?—3. What became of them?—4. What of the riches of Henry VII.?—5. When did Henry VIII. begin to reign? What of him? What of his wives?—6. What great event occurred in his reign? What is meant by the Reformation? Who had claimed authority over England? Why was the king called Defender of the Faith?—7. When did Henry VIII. die? What was the last act of his reign?—8. What of Edward VI.?—9. When did Mary begin to reign? Why is she called Bloody Mary?—10. How long did she reign?

---

## CHAPTER CXLI. EUROPE continued.—*The reign of Elizabeth.*

1. THE famous Elizabeth, sister to Mary, who became queen in 1558, was a Protestant. She was truly a great queen, and England was never more respected than while this mighty woman swayed the sceptre. But she had many failings, and, among others, prided herself too much upon her beauty.

2. Many princes and great men desired to marry Elizabeth, but she chose to remain sole mistress of her person and her kingdom; and as she herself refused to take a husband, it made her very angry whenever any of the ladies of her court got married.

3. Philip the Second, King of Spain had asked her hand in marriage, but was refused. He afterwards attempted to invade England, with a large naval force, named, by the representative of the Pope, the Invincible Armada. But on its way to England, this great fleet was overtaken by a furious storm, which dispersed it, and destroyed some of the ships, and the English fleet conquered the remainder.





Queen Elizabeth.

4. Some of the actions of Queen Elizabeth were too much like those of Henry her father. When Mary, Queen of Scots, fled into England for protection, Elizabeth caused her to be imprisoned during eighteen years, and after these long and weary years, the poor queen was tried and condemned to die. Elizabeth signed the death-warrant, and the unfortunate Mary was beheaded.

5. The Earl of Leicester was a favourite with the queen for many years, and, after his death, she took great notice of the Earl of Essex, but he presumed upon her favour, and having many enemies at court, he was committed to the Tower, and beheaded.

6. When the Earl of Essex was dead, Queen Elizabeth bitterly repented of her cruelty. She was now old, she had outlived every one for whom she had any regard, and she died shortly afterwards.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. When did Elizabeth ascend the throne? What was her religion? What of her?—2. Why did she not marry? What made her angry?—3. What of Philip of Spain? What of the Invincible Armada?—4. What was one of the worst actions of Queen Elizabeth? What was the fate of Mary Queen of Scots?—5. What of the Earl of Leicester? What of the Earl of Essex?—6. How did Elizabeth feel after his death?

---

## CHAPTER CXLII. EUROPE continued.—*The House of Stuart.*

1. ELIZABETH was succeeded by James Stuart, King of Scotland; he was the sixth James that had ruled over that kingdom, but was James the First of England, and began to reign in 1603. James inherited the English crown, because he was the grandson of a daughter of Henry the Seventh; his mother was Mary, Queen of Scots, whom Elizabeth had beheaded.

2. The whole island of Great Britain was now under one government. This event put an end to the wars

which had raged between England and Scotland during many centuries ; but it was a long time before the English and Scotch became reconciled to each other.

3. King James was a weak and superstitious prince. He was, however, very learned, and wrote several books, and delighted to talk Hebrew, Greek, and Latin ; so much so that his courtiers were often puzzled to understand him. He loved to be compared to Solomon, and it must be owned that he possessed a sort of cunning which greatly resembled wisdom.

4. In the days of James occurred the celebrated Gunpowder Plot. The Roman Catholics had laid a plan to blow up the parliament house, at a time when the king, lords, and the members of parliament, would be assembled there. But King James discovering the plot, set people on the watch, and they caught a man, named Guy Fawkes, in the cellar, wherein thirty-six barrels of gunpowder were concealed. Fawkes revealed the names of eighty of his accomplices ; he was executed, and they were all pursued and put to death.



Lady and Gentleman of the time of Charles the First.

5. James, with many faults, had one good quality; he hated war, and his reign was therefore peaceable. He died in 1625, and was succeeded by his son Charles the First.

6. Till the reign of Charles the First, the parliament had hardly ever opposed the wishes of the sovereign; but now there were continual disputes between the king and his parliament; and when he dissolved one parliament, he found the next equally unmanageable.

7. Matters went on in this way, till at length the quarrel grew too violent to be settled by mere words, and both parties then betook themselves to their weapons. The king was supported by a great majority of the nobility and gentry of England and Scotland, and by the English bishops and clergy. Charles's party called themselves Cavaliers. The cavaliers dressed magnificently, and wore long hair, hanging in locks down their temples; they drank wine, and sang songs, and rode as gaily to the battle-field as they would to an entertainment.

8. Some few of the nobility and gentry took the side of the parliament; but its adherents were chiefly mechanics, tradesmen, and common people. They wore their hair cropped close to their heads, from which their enemies gave them the nickname of Roundheads. The roundheads wore steeple-crowned hats and plain garments; they sang psalms, and spent much of their time in praying and preaching among themselves. They were a stern and prejudiced set of men, and when once they had made up their minds to tear down the throne, it must be done, though the realm of England should be rent asunder in the struggle.

9. The civil war began in 1642; many battles were fought, and rivers of English blood were shed on both sides. It was not long before Oliver Cromwell began to be a famous general, on the side of the parliament. He pretended to fight only for religion and the good of the

people; but he was an ambitious man, and meant to grasp the kingly power himself.

10. Cromwell gained one battle after another, and rose from step to step, till there was no man so powerful as himself. Finally, in 1645, he defeated the king's army at the bloody battle of Naseby. King Charles afterwards surrendered himself to the Scots, and they delivered him to the parliament.



English Soldiers of the Civil Wars.

11. The parliament brought the king to trial as a traitor, for taking up arms against his people. The court that tried him consisted of a hundred and thirty-three persons, and though the king refused to acknowledge their authority, they declared him guilty, and sentenced him to lose his head.

12. On the thirtieth of January, 1649, King Charles was brought to the scaffold; it was erected in front of his palace at Whitehall, and was covered with black cloth; in

the centre of the scaffold stood a block, and by the block stood an executioner, with an axe in his hand, and a black mask over his face. The steel-clad soldiers of Cromwell surrounded the scaffold. But the king walked to his death with as firm a step as when he went to his coronation. "They have taken away my corruptible crown," said he, "but I go to receive an incorruptible one."

13. When King Charles had knelt down and prayed, he cast a pitying glance upon the people round the scaffold; for he feared that direful judgments would come upon the land which was now to be stained with its monarch's blood. He then calmly laid his head upon the block; the executioner raised his axe, and smote off the king's head at a single blow; then lifting it in his hand, he cried aloud, "This is the head of a traitor!" But the people shuddered; for they doubted whether it was the head of a traitor, but they did know that it was the head of a king.

QUESTIONS. 1. When did James the First begin to reign? Who was he?—2. What put an end to the wars between England and Scotland?—3. What of King James?—4. What plot had the Roman Catholics laid? How did James discover the plot? What of Guy Fawkes?—5. What good quality did James possess? When did he die? Who succeeded him?—6. What of the parliaments during the reign of Charles the First?—7. How was the king supported? What were the king's party called? Describe the Cavaliers.—8. Who were on the side of the parliament? What of the Roundheads?—9. When did the civil war begin? What of Oliver Cromwell?—10. When was the battle of Naseby fought?—11. What was done to King Charles?—12. Describe the execution of Charles the First. In what year did it take place?

---

### CHAPTER CXLIII. EUROPE continued.—*The Commonwealth.*

1. THE throne of England was now vacant; the king, indeed, had left a son, but if he had shown himself in London, he would soon have died the same death as his father. The young prince was defeated in battle, and compelled to fly, and at one time his enemies pressed him

so hard, that he climbed up among the thick branches of an oak, and thus saved his life.



Lady and Cavalier of the time of the Commonwealth.

2. The government at this period was called the Commonwealth. There was no king, no lords, no bishops, nothing but the House of Commons, or the lower house of parliament; all the real power of the kingdom was possessed by Oliver Cromwell, because he was at the head of the army.

At length the parliament wished to make themselves independent of Cromwell, but he led three hundred soldiers into the hall where they were sitting, told them that the country was tired of them, that they were traitors, murderers, thieves, and drunkards, and bade them begone, when his soldiers immediately cleared the house. When they were gone he summoned another parliament, the principal man in which was a cobbler, named Praise-God Barebone; this name sounded so well, that it was bestowed on the whole parliament.

as if the people were mad with joy; he was crowned in 1660, by the title of Charles the Second.

10. Many of the persons who had assisted in dethroning and beheading the king's father were hanged, and the body of Oliver Cromwell was taken out of the grave and hung upon the gallows, and afterwards buried beneath it.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of King Charles's son?—2. What was the government called at this time? Who had all the power?—3. Describe the dispersing of the parliament by Cromwell. What parliament was then called?—4. What of it?—5. When was Cromwell proclaimed Lord Protector? How long did he hold the office? What was his character?—6. What fears deprived him of peace? When did he die?—7. Who succeeded him? What of Richard Cromwell?—8. What did General Monk do?—9. What of the banished prince? When was Charles the Second crowned?—10. What of the body of Cromwell?

---

#### CHAPTER CXLEIV. EUROPE continued.—*The Restoration, and the Revolution of 1688.*

1. CHARLES the Second had lived a careless and vicious life during his banishment, and his habits did not improve, now that he was on the throne; for he spent whole days and nights in drinking and all sorts of profligate pleasures.

2. In the year 1665, there was a great plague in London, of which nearly a hundred thousand persons died. The next year, a terrible fire broke out, which consumed a great part of the city; but neither of these calamities made any impression on the king.

3. He suffered the nation to be ruled by unprincipled and wicked men, and entered into secret alliances with the enemies of his country. This monarch died in the year 1685, and was succeeded by his brother James the Second.

4. James was a Roman Catholic; and, from the moment that he ascended the throne, he thought of nothing but how to bring Great Britain again under the power of the



pope of Rome. This of course rendered him hateful to his subjects, who gloried in being a Protestant people.



Charles the Second and his Queen. .

5. He had not been on the throne more than three years, when, as he had forfeited his right to the crown by his popish propensities, some of the greatest men in England determined to get rid of him. They invited William, prince of Orange, to come over from Holland to their assistance, and they promised to make him king.

6. This prince, himself, had no direct title to the crown, but he had married Mary, the daughter of James the Second. No sooner had he landed in England, than all the courtiers left King James, and hurried to pay obeisance to the Prince of Orange, and he and his wife were crowned in 1689, as King William and Queen Mary. James made his escape into France, and some of his adherents afterwards endeavoured to set him on the throne again, but without success.

7. This change of government of which I have been speaking is generally called the glorious Revolution of 1688. Some constitutional regulations were now adopted,

in order to restrain the royal power ; and all the other descendants of James, except the Princess Anne, a Protestant, were excluded from the throne.

8. King William was a great general, and carried on a war against France with success. He was very fond of hunting, and this amusement hastened his death ; for he was thrown from his horse, in the year 1702, and died in about a month. His queen had died some years before him.



Gentleman of the time of William the Third. "

9. Anne, another daughter of the banished James, now ascended the throne, and the reign of this queen was a glorious one for England. The renowned Duke of Marlborough gained many splendid victories over the French ; but the chief glory of the age proceeded from the great writers who lived in her time.

10. Queen Anne reigned twelve years, and died in 1714, at the age of forty-nine. She was the last sovereign of England who belonged to the family of the Stuarts, which, as you remember, began to reign in England in 1603.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of Charles the Second during his banishment?—2. What of the plague? The fire of London?—3. When did Charles the Second die? Who succeeded him?—4. What did James wish to do?—5. What did some of the great men do? Whom did they invite from Holland?—6. What title had William to the throne? When was he crowned? What of King James?—7. What of the Revolution of 1688?—8. When did William die?—9. What of Anne? Her reign? What of the Duke of Marlborough? What was the chief glory of Anne's reign?—10. When did Anne die? When did the Stuarts begin to reign?

---

CHAPTER CXLV. EUROPE continued.—*The House of Hanover.*



Officer and Serjeant of the time of George the First.

1. **KING JAMES** died in France, in the year 1701. He left a son, whom Louis the Fourteenth caused to be proclaimed King of England; but the people of England were determined not to have a Roman Catholic king, and

called him the Pretender. The nearest Protestant heir to the throne was the Elector of Hanover, a German prince, whose mother was a grand-daughter of James the First. He was now about fifty-five years old.

2. He was accordingly proclaimed King of England, by the title of George the First, and with him began the dynasty of the House of Hanover. He could not speak a word of English, and knew nothing about the kingdom which he was to govern, and he spent much of his time in his native country, for he dearly loved Hanover. He died in 1727, and was succeeded by his son, George the Second, who was likewise a native of Germany.

3. During part of George the Second's reign, England was at war with Spain and France. The king commanded his army in person, and the English were victorious in the battle of Dettingen, but they lost the battle of Fontenoy.



Costumes in the time of George the Second.

4. In 1745, the grandson of James the Second, assisted by the King of France, attempted to regain the crown of England. He landed in Scotland, and marched into England with a small army of Highlanders, but he was at last defeated, and forced to fly; and many of his adherents were beheaded or hanged.

5. In 1755, another war broke out with France, and some of the principal battles were fought in America. The city of Quebec and the Canadas were conquered by the English during this war. Shortly after this event, George the Second died, at the age of seventy-seven.



Costumes in the time of George the Third.

6. His grandson, George the Third, began to reign in 1760, when he was about twenty-one years old. The events of his long reign were far too numerous and important for me to attempt any account of them; they must be studied in the history of our country, and the young reader cannot do better than go to the Rev. Mr. GLEIG's *Family History of England*, for this purpose. George the Third died at Windsor Castle in 1820, in the eighty-second year of his age.

7. The son of George the Third was, in 1811, declared Prince Regent in consequence of his father's affliction, and on his father's death, in 1820, he was crowned as King George the Fourth.

8. During his regency, England combatted the power of Buonaparte, and in 1815 that famous conqueror was finally overthrown. The other events of his reign are so recent, that they scarcely yet belong to history. He died

in 1830, and was succeeded by his brother, William the Fourth. On his death, in 1837, the crown descended to Her present Majesty, Victoria.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. When and where had James the Second died? What did the English call James's son? Who was the nearest Protestant heir to the throne?—2. Who was George the First? What of him?—When did George the Second come to the throne?—3. With what countries was England at war during this reign? What battle did the English gain? What did they lose?—4. What took place in 1745? What of the war in 1755?—5. What of Quebec and the Canadas?—6. When did George the Third begin to reign? When did he die?—7. When was George the Fourth crowned?—8. What events took place during his reign? When did he die? Who succeeded him? Who succeeded King William the Fourth.



Windsor Castle, from the River Thames.

---

## CHAPTER CXLVI. EUROPE continued. *The Story of Wales.*

1. IF you ever go to Wales, you will hear many of the people speaking quite a different language from that used in England; the names of the inhabitants are also very different from English names. What do you think

of Llewelyn ap Griffith ap Jones, and Catesby ap Catesby? Such names are common in Wales.

2. Many of the people speak English, but some of them use the same language that was spoken by their ancestors, which is nearly the same as the original language of Ireland and the Highlands of Scotland. This seems to show that the people are of the same stock as the Irish and the Scotch Highlanders.

3. The early history of Wales is involved in obscurity. When the Romans came to Britain, the Welsh mountains were inhabited by a rough people, who gave terrible blows with their clubs; they defended their mountains so fiercely, that the Romans never got possession of the country.

4. When the Saxons came, they subdued all England, and a small portion of Wales; but the greater part held out against them to the last. Thus the Welsh maintained their independence, as well against the Saxon as the Roman invaders. Their princes lived in strong stone castles, but the common people lived in huts made of branches of trees wattled together like hurdles.

5. In these ancient times there was a strange set of men in Wales, called Bards, who sung songs, and told stories, about the brave deeds of the Welsh princes and heroes; the people loved to listen to these men, for their tales related to fierce war and bloody battles, of which such rude nations are ever fond.

6. Some of these bards were wonderfully clever at singing and story-telling; they were often taken into the castles of the princes, and here they led a merry life, between singing and feasting. In order to keep up their influence, they pretended to be prophets, and both the people and the princes believed they could foretel future events; perhaps, too, the bards believed it themselves, for nothing is more easy than self-deception: at all events, the people paid them the greatest reverence.

7. The kings of England did not like the independence

of the Welsh, and sent many armies against them; but the mountaineers set them at defiance, until about the year 1283. Edward the First was then King of England, and Llewelyn Prince of Wales.

8. The songs of the Bards were always in praise of valour, and therefore they incited the Welsh princes to the boldest deeds. Llewelyn had been told by one of these bards, that he should become master of the whole island of Britain.

9. Accordingly, when the army of Edward the First came against him, instead of suffering the invaders to waste their strength in the mountains, he rashly led his little army against the English, and was defeated and slain. He was succeeded by his brother David, but he too was taken, and barbarously executed as a traitor, for having dared to defend his country.

10. King Edward saw that his conquest would never be complete while the Bards remained alive to stir up the people to resist his arms; he therefore caused them all to be assembled and put to death. These barbarous acts caused him to be hated by the people, but his son, the next king, was born in Wales, and received the title of Prince of Wales, and they appear to have liked him a little better. From this time, the eldest son of the King of England has been called Prince of Wales.

11. Thus, with the death of David, ended the line of Welsh princes, and thus ended the independence of Wales. Since that time, the Welsh have been a part of the British nation, and they now rear cattle, and work the coal and iron mines, and the slate quarries, with which their country abounds, instead of fighting, as their fathers did in the times of Llewelyn.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the names in Wales?—2. Their language? Of what stock are the Welsh people?—3. What of the early history of Wales? The ancient inhabitants?—4. What of the Saxons? What of the Welsh princes?—5, 6. What of



the bards?—7. What did the kings of England do?—Who was Prince of Wales in 1283?—8. What did the Bards do? What did one of them tell Llewelyn?—9. What did Llewelyn do? His fate? Who defeated him? What of his brother David?—10. What did king Edward do to the bards? Where was the next king of England born?—11. Since when have the Welsh become a part of the British nation? What of the Welsh people now?

---

CHAPTER CXLVII. EUROPE continued.—*The Story of Scotland.*



Edinburgh Castle.

1. THE first inhabitants of Scotland appear to have been Celts, and probably were the same as the early Britons and the Irish. They defended themselves successfully

against the Romans, who never advanced farther north than the Grampian hills. The Roman generals caused a wall to be built from the Forth to the Clyde, and another afterwards from the Solway Frith to the river Tyne, to prevent their ravaging the southern provinces.

2. Thus the Scots were shut up in their own country, but they contrived to get over the wall pretty often. About three hundred years after Christ, a tribe of Goths, called Picts, came over from the continent, and settled in the Lowlands, where they lived by agriculture; but the Scots dwelt in the mountains, carrying on war, and subsisting by the chase.

3. Thus the nation became divided into Highlanders and Lowlanders, and thus, to some extent, the people remain to this day. They live peaceably now, but in early days they were deadly enemies. I cannot undertake to tell you of their battles, for indeed we know but little about them.

4. In 839, it is said, Kenneth the Second, who was a Highland leader, subdued the Picts, and became the first king of all Scotland. From his time to that of Edward the First of England, nothing very particular is related of them.

5. I have told you in the history of England how King Edward, who subdued Wales, made war upon the Scotch, put Wallace to death, and had prepared a great army for the total subjugation of Scotland, when he died. I have also told you how his son, Edward the Second, was beaten by Robert Bruce, at the glorious battle of Bannockburn; this event occurred in 1314, and secured the freedom of Scotland.

6. From this time, the history of Scotland tells of little but civil wars and bloody battles with England, till the time of James the Fifth. He assumed the reins of government in 1513, at the age of thirteen years. He lost the confidence of his army, and they deserted him in

the hour of need. This broke his heart, and he died at the age of thirty-one.

7. His daughter, an infant at the time of his death was the beautiful and unfortunate Mary Queen of Scots, as she is called, and whom I have mentioned in the history of England. She was educated in France, and was not only very handsome, but very accomplished. While she was yet very young, she married the son of the King of France, and on his death, which happened soon after, she returned to Scotland to assume the government.

8. But beauty, accomplishments, and power, cannot insure happiness. Mary's kingdom was in a troubled state; the people were divided among themselves, and Mary found it impossible to govern them. At length they took up arms against her, and her army being defeated, she fled for England, and implored the protection of her cousin, Queen Elizabeth.

9. This was as disastrous a step as remaining in Scotland could possibly have been. The claim of Mary to the English crown was, by a large party in the state, thought to be preferable to that of Elizabeth, who, in addition to her dread of her on that account, hated her as a rival in personal beauty; and she repaid Mary's confidence, by confining her for eighteen years, and at last putting her to death.

10. The son of Mary, James the Sixth of Scotland, succeeded his mother; and after the death of Elizabeth, he became king of England also, under the title of James the First. Though he lived in England, he did not forget Scotland; he was a learned man, and he caused schools to be established in every parish of his native country, where all the boys and girls might learn to read and write. These schools are continued to this day.

11. From the accession of King James, in 1603, Scotland has formed part of the British dominions, although it had a separate government till the year 1707, when

it was formally united to England. After James the Second was driven from the throne, the Scottish nation raised two formidable insurrections in favour of his family, in 1715 and 1745; since the suppression of the last of these the country has been tranquil, and all national jealousies have disappeared.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the first inhabitants of Scotland? What did the Roman generals do?—2. What of the Picts? The Scots?—3. How was the nation divided? How did they live in the early times?—4. Who was king of Scotland in 839?—5. What can you tell of Edward the First? Of Edward the Second? When was the battle of Bannockburn? Its effects?—6. How long were the Scots at war with the English? When did James the Fifth begin to reign? His fate?—7, 8, 9. Tell the story of Mary of Scotland.—10. Who succeeded Mary? What did James do?—11. What of Scotland since 1603? When did the union with England take place? When were the rebellions?

---

#### CHAPTER CXLVIII. EUROPE continued.—*About Ireland.*

1. THE history of Ireland, or “Green Erin,” as it is called, is full of interesting matter, and I am sorry that I can only bestow upon it one brief chapter.

2. The first inhabitants, like the Britons, were hardy Celts, who fought with clubs, and seemed to love fighting better than feasting. They are supposed to have been Gauls, the same race that colonized England and Scotland. They were divided into many tribes, and their leaders were called kings. These were constantly quarrelling with each other, and the land was a scene of bloodshed. The early Irish, like the other Celtic tribes, were devoted to the religion of the druids; but, about the year 550, a Christian missionary came into the country from Scotland, whose name was Patrick.

3. He seems to have been a wise and good man, and the people were by him persuaded to adopt Christianity, and under its influence they gradually became civilized.

4. In the sixth century, the Irish were a civilized and even learned people ; several of the kings, between whom the island was divided, are known to have endowed colleges and schools for the free education of all who chose to resort to them, and from these schools were sent forth missionaries to the barbarous and idolatrous Saxons, who were at that time settled in England. In the ninth century, however, the Danes began to infest Ireland, and their ravages, and the civil wars which arose in consequence, replunged the island into its original barbarism. In this state it remained till the reign of Henry the Second of England, when one of the Irish princes being driven from his dominions, repaired to Henry, and became his vassal ; on which he was allowed the assistance of some English adventurers to reinstate him. Ireland, up to this time, had not submitted to the papal authority, and the pope now saw an opportunity of reducing it to obedience, by making a gift of the country to the English king. This he did, and Henry accordingly invaded Ireland, and conquered it, the natives being too much divided among themselves to oppose him.

5. From this period the history of Ireland may be said to cease. The invaders settled on the sea-coast, and built strong fortresses, by means of which they were enabled to maintain their ground ; and the frequent attempts of the Irish to expel them brought great calamities on both parties for many ages ; but the great numbers of English and Scotch who obtained a settlement in Ireland during the civil wars under Cromwell, and those in favour of James the Second, at length firmly established the English interest, and in the year 1800, the Act of Union with Great Britain was passed.



Nelson's Pillar, and the Post Office, Dublin.

QUESTIONS. 1. What is Ireland called? Who were its first inhabitants?—2. What of the Celts? Religion of the early Irish? What took place in 550?—3. What of Patrick? What influence civilized the people?—4. State of Ireland in the sixth century? In the ninth? What of the pope? Henry the Second?—5. What of Ireland since that time?

---

### CHAPTER CXLIX. EUROPE continued.—*Various Matters.*

1. I HAVE now told you something about England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland. I have told you something about our kings, and the battles that have been fought; but it is impossible to do justice to so great a subject in this little book.

2. Therefore there are a great many interesting stories that I have been obliged to omit. If I had time, I would give you a more particular account of the Celtic religion taught by the druids, which was very curious, together with the manners of these Celts in other respects, which you would find very amusing.

3. I would tell you of Odin, or Woden, the Scandinavian hero, who established a strange mythology, which pervaded the northern nations of Europe, and was, for a time, the religion of some of the inhabitants of Britain. I would tell you how Christianity was introduced into England sixty years after Christ; and how at first the people built rude churches of wood, and how they afterwards constructed those fine Gothic churches wherein divine service is now performed.

4. If I had time, I would tell of the gipsies, a strange race of people to be found in most countries of Europe, but particularly in England, Spain, Hungary, and Bohemia; who wander from place to place, having no fixed homes; who come from some far land, but whether from Egypt or Asia, nobody can tell; who continue from age

to age the same, while the nations among which they wander rise and fall, flourish and decay.

5. If I had time, I would tell you some curious stories about a famous robber of the name of Robin Hood, who lived in the woods, and performed strange things; I would also tell you of many celebrated people more worthy of being remembered than this freebooter.

6. I would tell you, also, of the great and good people who founded and endowed churches for the worship of God; colleges for the education of the clergy; schools for the benefit of the community at large; hospitals for the lame and the sick; and almshouses for the old and the infirm.

7. I would tell you, too, of the great writers who have been permitted by a kind providence to contribute their stores of learning, and the emanations of their enlightened minds, to the edification of the people at large; and more particularly would I tell you of the translators of the Holy Scriptures, to whose knowledge of the dead languages we are indebted for that great blessing, the authorised version of the Bible in our native language. But all these, and many other matters of a similar kind, I must leave for the present.

---

QUESTIONS. 3. Who was Woden? What did his mythology become? When was Christianity introduced into England?—  
4. What of the gipsies? Where do they live?—6, 7. What other important matters could be mentioned?

---



CHAPTER CL. EUROPE continued.—*Chronology of Great Britain.*

	BEFORE CHRIST.
England invaded by Cæsar - - - - -	55
	A. D.
England finally subdued by Claudius - - - - -	44
Christianity introduced into England - - - - -	60
Scotland received the Christian faith - - - - -	203
The Saxons invited to England - - - - -	448
Patrick visits Ireland - - - - -	550
Edwall, first king of Wales - - - - -	690
The Danes first land in England - - - - -	787
Egbert, first king of England - - - - -	827
Kenneth II. first king of all Scotland - - - - -	839
Alfred ascends the English throne - - - - -	872
The Danes conquer England - - - - -	877
Recovered by Alfred - - - - -	880
Alfred the Great died - - - - -	900
Massacre of the Danes in England - - - - -	1002
Canute invaded England - - - - -	1015
The Danes driven out of England - - - - -	1041
Harold became king of England - - - - -	1066
William the Conqueror ascends the throne - - - - -	1066
Death of William Rufus - - - - -	1100
Death of Henry I. - - - - -	1135
Griffith, last king of Wales, died - - - - -	1137
Death of Stephen - - - - -	1154
Conquest of Ireland by Henry II. - - - - -	1172
Richard I. ascends the throne - - - - -	1189
Magna Charta granted by King John - - - - -	1215
Henry III. became king - - - - -	1216
Edward I. ascended the throne - - - - -	1272
Wales annexed to the crown of England - - - - -	1283
Sir William Wallace executed - - - - -	1305
Battle of Bannockburn - - - - -	1314
Death of Edward II. - - - - -	1327
Battle of Cressy - - - - -	1346
Battle of Poitiers - - - - -	1356
Edward the Black Prince died - - - - -	1376
Henry IV. - - - - -	1399
Henry V. - - - - -	1413

	A. D.
Henry V. died - - - - -	1422
Wars of York and Lancaster began - - - - -	1455
Edward IV. - - - - -	1461
Henry VI. murdered - - - - -	1471
Edward V. - - - - -	1483
Battle of Bosworth - - - - -	1485
Henry VII. died - - - - -	1509
James IV. king of Scotland, killed at the battle of Flodden	1513
Henry VIII. died - - - - -	1547
Edward VI. died - - - - -	1553
Elizabeth ascended the throne - - - - -	1558
Destruction of the Spanish Armada - - - - -	1588
James I. ascends the throne - - - - -	1603
The Gunpowder Plot - - - - -	1605
The present translation of the Bible finished - - - - -	1611
Charles I. - - - - -	1625
Civil war began - - - - -	1642
Battle of Naseby - - - - -	1645
Charles I. beheaded - - - - -	1649
Cromwell made Lord Protector - - - - -	1654
Cromwell died - - - - -	1658
Charles II. - - - - -	1660
Great plague in London - - - - -	1665
Fire of London - - - - -	1666
The Popish Plot - - - - -	1678
James II. - - - - -	1685
William and Mary crowned - - - - -	1689
Anne ascended the throne - - - - -	1702
Battle of Blenheim - - - - -	1704
Union with Scotland - - - - -	1707
George I. - - - - -	1714
George I. died - - - - -	1727
Rebellion in Scotland - - - - -	1745
War between England and France - - - - -	1755
Accession of George III. - - - - -	1760
Beginning of the American War - - - - -	1775
Union with Ireland - - - - -	1800
Battle of Waterloo - - - - -	1815
George IV. - - - - -	1820
William IV. ascended the throne - - - - -	1830
Queen Victoria ascended the throne - - - - -	1837

CHAPTER CLII. EUROPE continued.—*Review. The Dark Ages. Important Inventions, &c.*



An English Church in very early times.

1. SUCH is my brief story about the most interesting quarter of the globe, Europe. I hope I have told you enough to excite your curiosity, and to lead you to read larger works than mine, about the nations I have mentioned, and I can assure you you will find the subject very interesting, and worthy of your careful study. I have room now only to mention a few things that have been omitted in the progress of my story.

2. You will remember that Greece was settled before any other portion of Europe, and that the Greeks speedily became a polished and powerful people. You will remember that Rome became a mighty empire, and extended

its sway over nearly all parts of the world that were then known.

3. You will remember that between four and five hundred years after Christ, the Roman empire was dismembered, and that the northern tribes of Europe spread themselves over Spain, Italy, and Greece. Thus the arts, learning, and refinement, which had been cultivated in these countries, were for a time extinguished, and all Europe was reduced to a nearly barbarous state.

4. This period is called the Dark Ages, because the nations were generally ignorant and barbarous. So things continued for nearly a thousand years, when the light of learning began to return. Since that time, society has advanced in civilization, till it has reached a higher state of improvement was ever before known.

5. The history of the church of Christ is a subject at which I have been able only to take an occasional glance. After our Saviour's death, in the year 31, his apostles proceeded to spread the Gospel throughout different countries. Paul was the most active and successful of these missionaries; he went several times through Asia Minor, travelled to Greece, and finally to Rome; everywhere preaching the truths of the Christian religion. He was put to death at Rome, in the year 61.

6. At first, the Christians were persecuted by the Roman emperors, but the Gospel continued to flourish, until it pervaded most parts of the Roman empire. It was introduced into Britain in the year 60, and into most other parts of Europe at an early period. But it was not till the year 311, that the Emperor Constantine became a Christian, and established Christianity in his empire.

7. From this period it advanced rapidly. The mythology of Greece and Rome gave way before it; the horrid sacrifices and gloomy superstitions of the Druids, and the mysterious rites of Odin, were soon forsaken for the religion of the Cross.

8. In the course of time, the popes of Rome, finding th Christian religion thus pervading the world, pretended to place themselves at the head of it, that they might thus obtain an influence over mankind: they gradually acquired immense power, which they often used to the worst purposes.

9. In process of time, their authority was lessened, and a large part of the people of Christendom protested against their authority, and were thence called Protestants: at the present day, the pope has but little power.

10. I have mentioned the Inquisition, in the history of Spain. This was a secret court, whose business it was to arrest and bring to trial those who were suspected of not being true followers of the Popish religion.

11. It appears that this institution was first established in the south of France, by Pope Innocent the Third, in the year 1215. From that time it was gradually extended to other countries, and at length was introduced into Spain, in 1481, and to Portugal soon after; and as the people of those kingdoms were generally very ignorant and bigoted, it here acquired its greatest power, and became the most cruel and bloody tribunal that has been known upon the face of the earth.

12. It was for many years a favourite instrument by which the pope of Rome carried on his schemes of tyranny. It was introduced into most countries of Europe where the Catholic religion prevailed, but no where did it exercise its terrible power with such cruel despotism as in Spain, where it was not abolished till the year 1820, and King Ferdinand afterwards attempted to revive it.

13. I have not had an opportunity to mention the abbeys and monasteries which formerly existed in this country, as they still do in some parts of Europe, but these institutions deserve notice. It appears that in most countries there have ever been some people who retire from *the active business of life*, and shut themselves up for

religious contemplation. Such has long been the case in Asia, and among the worshippers of Brahma, Fo, Buddha, the Grand Lama, and Mohammed, they are still found; such was also the case among the idolaters of Egypt, Greece and Rome; such was the case among the ancient Jews, and such has been the case among the followers of Christ, from very early ages.

14. The first monastery was founded by St. Anthony, in Upper Egypt, in the year 305. This consisted of a number of huts, in which several hermits dwelt, devoting themselves to penance and prayer. Another monastery was established in France, in the year 360, by St. Martin.



Remains of Battle Abbey, in Sussex.

From this time, these institutions were multiplied, and became established in all Christian countries. From the eighth to the fifteenth century, they received great encouragement, and many splendid edifices were erected.

15. Some were called abbeys, and some monasteries; many of them were filled with monks and friars, and others with nuns. The splendid remains of many of these edifices are still to be found in England, France, Germany, and other parts of Europe. At first, the inhabitants of monasteries lived in a simple manner, and devoted themselves to religious contemplations, but in after times, the abbeys and monasteries became the seats of voluptuousness. None were permitted to enter them but the monks and nuns; these, therefore, while they pretended to be engaged in religious duties, screened from the eyes of the world, often gave themselves up to luxurious pleasures.

16. These institutions were, however, greatly encouraged by the popes, and it was not until the monstrous corruptions of the Catholic religion brought on the Reformation, in the sixteenth century, that monastic institutions began to decline. They were abolished in England in 1539, and in France in 1790; in several other countries they have ceased, but still continue in Italy, Spain, and Portugal.

17. The Greeks and Romans were armed with swords, spears and battle-axes, and they carried shields for defence; they had also bodies of troops armed with bows and arrows, and others with slings, which served for musketry, and their heavy battering-rams, and enormous catapults and balistas, which threw stones and darts of immense weight, supplied the place of cannon. The troops of Egypt, Carthage and Persia, were armed in a similar manner. In the year 1330, gunpowder was invented, and cannon began to be used about the same time; they were first employed by the English at the battle of Cressy, in 1346; on which occasion, King Edward had four pieces of cannon, which greatly aided in gaining the victory.

18. From this time, fire-arms were rapidly introduced, and soon the whole art of war was changed. Bows and arrows, spears and shields, were thrown aside, and contending armies, instead of coming up close to each other, and fighting hand to hand, learned to kill each other at a distance.

19. One of the greatest discoveries of modern times is that quality of the mariner's compass by which it always points to the north pole. This useful instrument, which enables the seaman to traverse the trackless deep, appears to have been in use in Europe as early as 1180, but it was known to the Chinese many ages before.

20. But a still more important invention was that of printing, in 1441. Previous to that time, all books were written with the pen. A copy of the Bible was worth as much in ancient times as a house or a farm is now.

QUESTIONS. 2. Which of the countries of Europe was first settled? What of Rome?—3. What happened five hundred years after Christ?—4. What period was called the Dark Ages? When did learning begin to revive?—5. When did our Lord die? What of the apostles?—6. How did the Romans at first treat the Christians? When was Christianity introduced into Britain? What took place in 311?—7. What of the progress of Christianity?—8. What of the popes?—9. Who were called Protestants? What of the pope at the present day?—10. What of the Inquisition?—11. By what pope was it sanctioned? When? When was it established in Spain and Portugal? What did it there become?—12. Into what countries was the Inquisition introduced? Where was its power most cruelly exercised?—13. What appears to be the case in most countries? Mention some instances.—14. Who founded the first monastery? What of monasteries from this time?—15. Who inhabited them? How did the monks and nuns formerly live? How in later times?—16. By whom were these institutions encouraged? When did monastic institutions begin to decline? When were they abolished in England? In France? Where do they still exist?—17. What of war in early times? Arms? When was gunpowder invented? When were cannon first used by the English?—18. What happened from this time?—19. What is a great discovery of modern times? When was the mariner's compass first used?—20. When was printing invented? How were books formerly produced?



CHAPTER CLII. AMERICA.—*About America.*

Puri Indians of South America.

1. WE have long been occupied with the three great divisions of the eastern continent, Asia, Africa and Europe. Let us now leave these countries, cross the Atlantic, and go to the continent of America.

2. This continent, as you will see by the map, consists of two parts, North and South America. These are united by a narrow strip of land, called the isthmus of Darien, about sixty miles in width; at the narrowest part it is but thirty-seven miles. This vast continent is about ten thousand miles in length, and is nearly equal in extent to Asia; its population is estimated at forty millions.

3. The northern part of America is excessively cold. Whether it is there bounded by the sea, or whether it extends to the north pole, we cannot tell. Greenland, the coldest inhabited country on the globe, was formerly considered a part of the American continent, but is now *thought* by some geographers to be an island.

4. The countries in North America are Greenland, the Polar Regions, inhabited by the Esquimaux and other tribes of Indians, British America, Russian America, the United States, California, Mexico, and Guatemala.

5. Between North and South America are a number of beautiful islands, called the West Indies. South America is divided into Venezuela, New Grenada, Equator, Peru, Bolivia, Chili, and the United Provinces; these are republics. Brazil is a kingdom; and Patagonia, at the southern end of South America, is a land thinly settled by uncivilized tribes.

6. I have said that it was extremely cold at the northern part of North America. In this dreary region no trees are to be found, no plants flourish; for nine months in the year the sea is frozen, and scarcely a living thing is able to dwell there. Even in summer, nothing is seen but now and then a lonely white bear, or a solitary reindeer feeding upon moss.

7. As you proceed south, you meet with dwarf willow and birch trees, and some hardy plants. Still further south, the vegetation improves, wild animals become abundant, and wild birds are seen swimming in the waters, or hovering in the air. Here you meet with tribes of Esquimaux and Indians.

8. When you get to Canada, you find a fruitful country. When you get as far south as the United States, the climate becomes pleasant. In the West Indies, around the Gulf of Mexico, and throughout all the northern parts of South America, the climate is that of perpetual spring or summer.

9. As you go further south, it grows cold, and when you get to Cape Horn, you will find it a frozen country, where winter reigns three-fourths of the year. The wild animals of America are very numerous. The bison, musk x, wild goat, wild sheep, antelope, many kinds of deer, everal kinds of bears, wolves, foxes, and many smaller

quadrupeds, together with birds of many kinds, are natives of America.



The Musk Ox.

10. Few domestic animals were found when the country was first discovered. It is said that the Newfoundland dog, and one or two other species, are natives of America ; but cattle, sheep, horses, asses, mules, goats, poultry, and cats, were originally brought from Europe. The domestic turkey, goose, and duck, are native birds.

11. The people of America may be divided into two great classes. First, the Indians, who were found scattered throughout the American continent when it was first discovered ; these consisted of many tribes, living separately, and speaking different languages. And second, the descendants of the Europeans who have settled in the country at various times. To these we may add several millions of negroes, who have been brought from Africa as slaves, or their descendants.

12. America is remarkable for three things : it has the *largest* lakes, the longest rivers, and the longest chain of

mountains, to be found in the world. The largest lake is Lake Superior; the longest river is the Mississippi; and the longest chain of mountains is that which extends nearly the whole length of the continent, being called the Andes in South America, the Cordilleras in Guatemala and Mexico, and the Rocky Mountains in the United States.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 2. What does the continent of America consist of? What of the isthmus of Darien? Extent and population of America? —3. What is known of the northern part of America? What of Greenland? —4. Countries of North America? —5. What of the West Indies? Divisions of South America? Brazil? —6. What of the northern part of North America? —7. What of vegetation as you proceed south? —8. What of Indian tribes? What of the climate as you proceed towards South America? —9. What of Cape Horn? Animals of America? Birds? —10. What animals were found there? What of cattle? Native birds? —11. Describe the two classes of people in America. —12. For what is America remarkable? What of Lake Superior? The Mississippi? The Andes?

---



The Esquimaux Dog.

CHAPTER CLIII. AMERICA continued.—*The first Inhabitants of America.*



Monumental Idol in Easter Island.

1. WHEN the traveller visits such fine cities as Quebec, Montreal, Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, and New Orleans, and beholds so vast an extent of country dotted all over with cities, towns, and villages, he can hardly believe that three hundred and fifty years ago, the whole continent of America was unknown to the inhabitants of Europe, Asia, and Africa.

2. Such, however, is the fact. The country was, indeed, inhabited by many tribes of Indians, but these people had no books, and knew nothing of the rest of the world; where they came from, or when they first settled in America, no one can certainly tell.

3. It appears that the northern portions of North America are inhabited by a race of people called Esquimaux, who differ from all the other native inhabitants, and bear some resemblance to the Laplanders; it seems likely, therefore, that these polar regions were settled by

people who came from Europe in boats, many centuries since.

4. That such a thing is possible, appears from the fact, that the Norwegians are known to have discovered Iceland in the eighth century, and colonists from Iceland settled in Greenland in the tenth century. It appears, then, that portions of America were actually visited by these northern Europeans, who possessed no other than small vessels, and little knowledge of the art of navigation.

5. But how did the other Indians get to this country? In the northern part of the Pacific Ocean, America and Asia come very near together; they are separated only by Behring's Straits, which are but eighteen miles wide.

6. Across this narrow channel, the people of the present day, living in the neighbourhood, are accustomed to pass in their little boats. There is reason to believe, then, that many ages since, some of the Asiatic tribes of Tartars wandered to Behring's Straits, and crossed over to America; these may have been numerous, and consisting of different tribes; and a foundation may thus have been laid for the peopling of the American continent.

7. That such was the fact, there is little reason to doubt. There is considerable resemblance between the American Indians and some Asiatic tribes, and they appear to possess some singular customs known in Asia; thus it would seem that Asia, which furnished the first inhabitants of Africa and Europe, also supplied America with the first human beings that trod its shores.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of America three hundred and fifty years ago?—2. What of the Indians?—3. The Esquimaux? What seems probable?—4. What of the Norwegians?—5. What straits separate Asia and America? Their width?—6. What is there reason to believe?—7. Whom do the American Indians resemble? From what country was America probably first peopled?

CHAPTER CLIV. AMERICA continued.—*Discovery of America by Columbus.*



Copy of an ancient Drawing representing Columbus approaching a newly-discovered Island.

1. It has been conjectured that the ancient Carthaginians discovered South America, and made settlements there; for a stone, with an inscription in their language,

was dug up near Monte Video, but no other traces of them have been discovered; and if it were the case, the event had been forgotten for two or three thousand years. The first inhabitant of modern Europe who visited what was called the New World, was Christopher Columbus, who may therefore fairly be considered the discoverer of America.

2. This illustrious person was born at Genoa, in Italy, about 1435. As he grew up, he paid great attention to the study of geography, and from his knowledge that the earth was a globe of a certain extent, of which the lands then known occupied but a small part, he became convinced that there must be vast tracts of undiscovered country somewhere on the face of the broad ocean.

3. Columbus was poor, and had not the means of sailing in search of these unknown lands. He applied for assistance to the rulers of his native country; but they refused it. He next went to Portugal; but there he met with no better success. At last he went to the court of Spain. Ferdinand and Isabella were king and queen of that country; but the king, like almost everybody else, treated Columbus with neglect and scorn.

4. The queen, however, thought so favourably of his project, that she sold her jewels to defray the expenses of the voyage; and three small vessels were equipped with ninety men, and with provisions for one year. Columbus took the command, and sailed from Spain in August, 1492.

5. He first held his course southward, and touched at the Canary Islands, and thence steered straight towards the west. After a few weeks, his men became alarmed, and feared that they should never again behold their native country, but should perish in the trackless sea.

6. Columbus did his utmost to encourage them, and promised to turn back, if land were not discovered within three days. On the evening of the last day, late at night, he looked from the deck of his vessel, and beheld a light



gleaming over the sea ; he knew that this light must be on land. In the morning an island was seen, to which Columbus gave the name of St. Salvador. This is one of the Bahama Islands. The natives thronged to the shore, and gazed with wonder at the ships.

7. Columbus clothed himself magnificently, and landed with a drawn sword in his hand ; his first act was to kneel down and kiss the shore. He then erected a cross, as a symbol that Christianity was now to take the place of paganism, and declared the island to be the property of Queen Isabella. He then visited other islands, and returned to Spain, giving an account of the wonderful things he had seen. He made a second voyage, but it was not till his third that he discovered the continent of America.

8. No sooner had Columbus proved that there really was a new world beyond the sea, than several other navigators made voyages in search of it ; and one of them, Americus Vesputius, a native of Florence, who explored a large portion of it, contrived to have the whole continent called by his name.

9. By degrees, discoveries were made along the whole coast of North and South America, and people came from various nations of Europe, and formed settlements there. In relating the history of these settlements, I shall begin with the most northerly, although the earliest existing colonies were planted in the tropical regions.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What has been conjectured ? What of Christopher Columbus ?—2. When and where was he born ? Tell the story of Columbus till the time when he set sail.—5. Which way did he first steer his course ? What of his men ?—6. How did Columbus encourage them ? What island did he discover ? What of the people ?—7. What did Columbus now do ?—8. What of Americus Vesputius ?—9. What of other discoveries ?

---

CHAPTER CLV. AMERICA continued.—*Greenland.*  
*Settlements of the French in America.*

1. GREENLAND, which I have already mentioned as the most northern part of America, was discovered early in the tenth century by an Iclander named Gunbiorn, who was driven on the coast by a storm. Seventy years after, another Iclander, named Eric the Red, being banished for his crimes, set sail in search of the land which Gunbiorn had visited. He discovered it, and returned to Iceland with so favourable an account of the country, that many of his countrymen were induced to accompany him thither, and form a settlement. More colonists afterwards went over, and in time two large tracts of country were settled, containing, it is said, a cathedral, fifteen other churches, and four monasteries.

2. The Greenlanders carried on a trade with Iceland, Norway, and Denmark, but were exposed to the hostility of the natives, who at last, in 1379, destroyed the western settlement. About thirty years after, the troubles in Denmark prevented ships being sent annually to Greenland, as had before been the case; and as the Greenlanders had then no ships of their own, all intercourse ceased. From this time nothing certain is known regarding the eastern settlement, but it also is supposed to have been destroyed by the natives.

3. It was not until nearly one hundred and fifty years after that attempts were made to re-open the trade, but the vessels sent, owing to the ice, were unable to reach the shore. Many other expeditions were equally unsuccessful; but in 1721, Hans Egede, a Norwegian clergyman, made a settlement in the southern part of Greenland; but he discovered that the natives bore no resemblance to Europeans. The ruins of houses and churches, grave-stones, iron instruments, and other remains of the old colonists, have, however, been since abundantly found.

4. There are now ten missionary establishments, and twenty-eight colonies and factories belonging to Denmark, in Greenland, and about one hundred and fifty Europeans reside there. There are six thousand natives, who are Christians, and are very intelligent, honest, and sober, and what is more remarkable, ceremoniously polite; they maintain themselves by their fisheries, and are much attached to their country. The only European luxuries they value are coffee and snuff, for they refuse to taste brandy, which they call "maddening drink."

5. British America consists of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Newfoundland, the Island of Cape Breton, Upper and Lower Canada, and the Hudson's Bay settlements. All these provinces together compose a tract of country equal in extent to the United States, and the population is between two and three millions. They are bounded north by the Arctic Sea and Baffin's and Hudson's Bays, east by the Atlantic, south by the United States, from which they are divided by the great chain of lakes and the river St. Lawrence, and west by Russian America and the Pacific Ocean. Quebec is the seat of government; and Montreal and Halifax are places of great trade.

6. The first people who formed settlements in America, to the northward of the present limits of the United States, were the French; who, nearly three hundred years ago, used to send fishing-vessels to this coast.

7. In 1524, a Frenchman, named James Cartier, sailed up the St. Lawrence and built a fort, in which he passed the winter; and settlements were soon after formed in Canada and Nova Scotia. King Henry the Fourth of France appointed the Marquis de la Roche to be governor-general of Canada and the neighbouring territories.

8. The city of Quebec was founded in 1608; it stands on the river St. Lawrence, about five hundred miles from the sea; its foundation is on a rock of marble and slate.

9. The French settlers lived on friendly terms with

the Indians. They purchased the furs which the red men obtained in their hunting expeditions, and sent them over to Europe, where they were sold at a great profit. Some of the French married Indian wives, and the missionaries converted great numbers of them.

10. When the English began to form settlements to the south of Canada, the French incited the savages to make war upon them. Parties of French and Indians would sometimes set out from Quebec or Montreal, and burn the New England villages. The inhabitants were killed, or carried captive to Canada.

11. In 1629, the British took Quebec; but it was afterwards restored to the French. The people of New England made several attempts to retake it.

12. In 1711, the British government sent a strong fleet up the St. Lawrence, under the command of Admiral Walker, with an army of seven thousand men on board. If they had landed in safety, they would probably have succeeded in taking Quebec; but when they were entering the river a fog came on, a strong wind began to blow, and drove eight or nine of the vessels upon the rocky shore. The next morning, the French found the dead bodies of a thousand men in scarlet coats, heaped among the rocks; these were the drowned English soldiers. This sad event caused the English to give up, at that time, the design of conquering Canada.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. When and by whom was Greenland discovered? —2. What happened in 1379? What soon after? —3. What attempts were made? Hans Egede? —4. Present state of Greenland? —5. What does British America consist of? How large is it? Population? Boundaries? The capital? Montreal? Halifax? —6. What of the French? —7. What was done in 1524? Who was appointed governor of Canada? —8. When and where was Quebec founded? —9. What of the French and Indians? —10. In what way were the English treated by them? —11. When was Quebec taken? —12. What happened in 1711?

---

CHAPTER CLVI. AMERICA continued.—*Conquest of Canada.*



Canadian Log-house.

1. WHENEVER there was a war between France and Old England, there was likewise a war between New England and the French provinces in America. The French built strong fortresses, and the English colonists made great efforts to take them.

2. The French had carefully fortified the city of Louisburg, on the island of Cape Breton. In 1745, the New England people formed the project of taking it. They raised a strong army, and gave the command to a Boston merchant, named William Pepperell.

3. The army sailed under the escort of an English fleet, and landed on the island of Cape Breton. General Pepperell's men were merely farmers and mechanics; and he himself knew but little about taking fortresses.

4. But if the New Englanders had no skill, they had plenty of courage. They erected batteries, and cannonaded the city for about a fortnight, when the French commander hauled down his flag. The conquest of Louisburg was considered a very brilliant exploit.

5. Louisburg was restored to the French, at the close of the war; but it was again taken by General Wolfe, in 1758. The same general soon afterwards led an army against Quebec.

6. This city was so strongly fortified, that it appeared almost impossible to take it. It had a citadel, which was built on a rock, several hundred feet high; and there were strong walls all round the city; and besides the strong garrison within the walls, there was a large French army on the outside.

7. But General Wolfe was determined to take Quebec, or lose his life in the attempt. After trying various other methods, he led his army from the shore of the river up a steep precipice; when they reached the top, they were on a level with the walls of Quebec.

8. This bold movement was performed in the night. As soon as the Marquis de Montcalm, who commanded the French army, heard of it, he marched to meet the British, and the battle immediately began.

9. General Wolfe put himself at the head of his troops, and led them bravely onward. Though he had received two wounds, he refused to quit the field. At last, a ball struck him in the body, and stretched him on the ground.

10. A few of his soldiers carried him to the rear. But, though the hand of death was on him, General Wolfe thought only of the battle that was raging around. He heard a voice shouting, "They run! they run!" and he asked eagerly, "Who run?"

11. "The French!" said the soldier; "they are beaten! the victory is ours!" A smile appeared on the general's face: "Then I die happy!" he cried, and immediately expired.

12. The victory was complete. The Marquis de Montcalm was mortally wounded; and in a few days after the battle, Quebec was surrendered. The whole province, and all the French possessions in America, soon fell into the hands of the British.

13. They have ever since continued under the British government. When the other American territories of Great Britain became independent, these old French colonies continued attached to the crown of England.

---

QUESTIONS. 2. Where is Louisburg? What was done in 1745? Describe the capture of Louisburg.—5. When was it restored to the French? When taken by General Wolfe?—6. Describe the capture of Quebec.—8. Who commanded the French army?—9. Describe General Wolfe's death.—12. Consequences of the victory?—13. What has happened since?

---

#### CHAPTER CLVII. AMERICA continued.—*Description of the United States.*

1. THE United States are bounded on the north by the British possessions, east by the Atlantic Ocean, south by the Gulf of Mexico and the states of Mexico, and west by the Pacific Ocean. The whole country is about two-thirds as extensive as all Europe, and contains about fifteen millions of inhabitants.

2. Not more than half of this vast country is settled. The whole western portion is unoccupied, or thinly scattered over with Indian tribes. The United States are divided into twenty-six states, each having a governor, and a legislature to make laws. The whole are united under a national government, over which a president is placed as the chief ruler.

3. The United States possess many fine rivers, flowing through fertile valleys. There are many mountains, but none are so lofty as the Andes of South America, the Alps of Europe, or the Himalaya mountains of Asia. The climate of the north is temperate, and the soil yields apples, pears, peaches, and other fruits. In the south it is warm, and oranges, figs, and lemons flourish.

4. The settlement of the country which now forms the United States was begun by Sir Walter Raleigh, who in

the year 1584 established a colony in Virginia. The settlers were all swept away by sickness, and the project abandoned; but in 1607, Captain Newport built Jamestown, at the expense of Lord Delaware.

5. In the year 1620, a party of puritans from England formed a settlement, which they called Plymouth, in New England. Soon after Charlestown, Salem, and Boston, in the same state, were built, and the whole coast of New England was rapidly settled by persons of the same religious opinions.

6. In 1635 sixty persons formed a settlement on Connecticut river, and in the next year, a minister, named Roger Williams, led a party of settlers to Rhode Island, and founded the town of Providence.

7. The first settlement in New York was made in 1613, on the shores of the Hudson river, where Albany now stands. The city of New York, founded about the same time, was at first called New Amsterdam; it derived its name from the capital of Holland, for the early settlers were natives of that country. In 1664, the province of New York was surrendered by the Dutch into the hands of the English. It grew and prospered very fast, and became one of the most powerful of the colonies.

8. The state of New Jersey was also settled by the Dutch, and Delaware by the Swedes; but both states came into the hands of the English soon after.

9. Pennsylvania was settled in 1681. Its founder was William Penn, a Quaker, and all the earliest settlers likewise belonged to the sect of Quakers. When William Penn arrived in the country, he bought lands of the Indians, and made a treaty with them. This treaty was always held sacred. The Indians saw that the Quakers were men of peace, and therefore they were careful never to do them any injury.

10. The province of Maryland was granted by Charles the First to Lord Baltimore. He was a Roman Catholic,



and, in 1634, he brought over two hundred people of the same religion, and made the first settlement in Maryland.

11. Carolina first began to be permanently settled in 1680. In 1729, it was divided into North and South Carolina. The first settlement in Georgia was made in 1733. The principal founder was General James Oglethorpe, who came from England with one hundred and sixteen settlers, and began to build the city of Savannah. Kentucky, Ohio, Illinois, and the other western states, are of still more recent date.

12. The United States carry on a vast trade with Great Britain, and most other parts of the world. The northern, or New England states, export timber to Europe, and flour and salt provisions to the West Indies, and send many ships to the southern whale fishery; and the southern states produce the greater part of the cotton and tobacco which is brought to Europe.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Boundaries of the United States? Extent? Population?—2. How large a portion is settled? What of the government?—3. Climate? Soil? Productions?—4. When was Virginia settled?—5. When was New England?—6. Connecticut? Providence?—7. When and where was the first settlement in New York? What was the city of New York first called? What of the province of New York?—8. Who settled New Jersey, and Delaware?—9. When and by whom was Pennsylvania settled? How did William Penn treat the Indians? What was the consequence of his treaty with them?—10. Who granted Maryland to Lord Baltimore? When did he settle Maryland?—11. When was Carolina settled? When divided? First settlement in Georgia? The western states?—12. The commerce of the United States?

---

## CHAPTER CLVIII. AMERICA continued.—*The American War.*

1. THE reader has now learnt, how the whole of the sea-coast, between New Brunswick and Florida, became covered with colonies, which were all under the government of Great Britain.

2. At the end of the war in 1763, England being much in debt, the ministers thought that the Americans ought to contribute to the revenue; for this purpose, in 1765, the British parliament passed what was called the Stamp Act. The Americans, however, made so strong an opposition to the Stamp Act, that it was repealed; but a tax was soon afterwards laid on tea, and soldiers were sent to America to compel the people to obey the new laws.

3. In the year 1770, a quarrel took place between the soldiers and the inhabitants of Boston, when three of the latter were killed, and five wounded; but instead of being affrighted by this bloodshed, the people grew more determined in their resistance.

4. In the year 1773, some ships were sent from London to the colonies, laden with cargoes of tea, and three of the ships arrived in the harbour of Boston. One night, a number of persons went on board, in the disguise of Indians, and threw all the tea overboard.

5. When tidings of this event were carried to England, the ministry saw that they must resort to force; they therefore sent over large bodies of troops to keep the people in subjection. A war then ensued between the British and the Americans, and on the fourth of July, 1776, the American congress declared the United States a free and independent republic.

6. The Americans were immediately joined by the French and Spaniards, and afterwards by the Dutch; many battles were fought, and England withstood the attacks of all these powers for some years. At last, in 1783, a peace was concluded by which the independence of the Americans was acknowledged.

---

QUESTIONS. 2. When was it proposed to tax the Americans? —3. What happened at Boston in 1770?—4. What became of the cargoes of tea?—5. What followed?—6. How was the war terminated?

CHAPTER CLIX. AMERICA continued.—*Affairs of the United States since the Revolution.*

1. WHEN the war was over, the people of the United States found it necessary to adopt a constitutional form of government. The present Federal Constitution was prepared by some of the wisest men in the country, and came into operation in 1789.

2. The illustrious Washington was the first president. He came into office in 1789, and was re-elected at the end of four years, and died in 1799. In 1797, John Adams was chosen to succeed him, and became the second president of the United States.

3. The next president was Thomas Jefferson. He served during two terms of office, and was succeeded by James Madison, in 1809. The most remarkable event of Jefferson's administration, was the purchase of Louisiana from France, in the year 1803. This immense territory included the country between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains.

4. In the course of the war against Buonaparte disputes arose between England and the United States, who at length, in June, 1812, declared war against Great Britain, and soon after despatched a large army to invade Canada; but the Americans were speedily expelled by the Canadians.

5. In return, the English government sent General Ross, with a small army, who landed in Chesapeake Bay, in August, 1814, and having defeated a very superior force, captured Washington, the capital, where he burnt all the public buildings, and destroyed a vast quantity of warlike stores; and then re-embarked without loss.

6. The British army now proceeded to Jamaica for reinforcements, and then, in November, 1814, sailed to attack New Orleans, a very important post, being the most commercial town in the Southern States. The fleet arrived

early in December, and landed the troops. They, however, found the place strongly fortified, and defended by thirty thousand men, while their own number was barely eight thousand. General Sir Edward Pakenham made a desperate attempt to storm the fortifications, on January 8, 1815; but being killed in the action, the design was abandoned. Shortly after peace was concluded.

6. In 1817, President Madison retired from office, and was succeeded by James Munroe. During the eight years of his administration, the country was quiet and prosperous. John Quincy Adams became president in 1825. He was the son of John Adams, the second president.

7. The next president was General Andrew Jackson. He was inaugurated in 1829, and began his second term of office in 1833. He was succeeded by Martin Van Buren, in 1837.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. When was the constitution of government formed?—2. Who was the first president? When did he come into office? When was John Adams chosen?—3. What did Jefferson purchase of the French? In what year? How large a country was it? When was Madison made president?—4. War with Great Britain?—5. Capture of Washington? Attack on New Orleans?—6. What happened in 1817? In 1825?—7. When did Jackson become president? When was Martin Van Buren made president?



House of Assembly, at Washington, in the United States.

CHAPTER CLX. AMERICA continued.—*About South America. El Dorado, and the Fountain of Youth.*



Remains of an ancient Pyramid in Mexico.

1. IMMEDIATELY after the return of Columbus, both the King of Spain and the King of Portugal applied to the pope for his grant of the lands, for every country possessed by heathens was supposed to be in his gift.

2. Alexander the Sixth was pope at that time. He very generously bestowed one half of the new world on the King of Spain, and the other half on the King of Portugal. These kings then sent out ships and men, who conquered immense territories, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery.

3. The Spaniards first took possession of the West Indies; they built the city of Havannah, on the island of Cuba, and the Spanish governor had his residence there. Other nations afterwards made settlements in these islands.

4. The great object of all who went to America, at this period, was to get gold and silver. The most wonderful stories were told about the abundance of these metals in some parts of the western continent.

5. There was supposed to be a kingdom, called El Dorado, or The Gilded, which was thus described. The king was covered with powdered gold; his palace was built of brilliant marble; the pillars were porphyry and alabaster, and its entrance was guarded by two lions, fastened to a column by chains of massive gold.

6. After passing the lions, a fountain was seen, from which gushed a continual shower of liquid silver, through large pipes of gold. In the interior of the palace was an altar of solid silver, on which was an immense golden sun; lamps were continually burning, and their dazzling radiance was reflected from innumerable objects of silver and gold. Such was the splendid fiction, invented by somebody, and long believed in Europe. Numbers of adventurers went in search of El Dorado, and some pretended that they had really visited this golden kingdom; but it is hardly necessary to say that no such kingdom ever existed.

7. Another thing which the Spaniards expected to find in America, was the fountain of youth. Far away beneath the shadows of the forest, they believed that there was a fountain, the bright waters of which would wash away wrinkles, and turn gray hair dark again.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the pope of Rome?—2. What did Pope Alexander do? What of the kings of Spain and Portugal?—3. Who first took possession of the West Indies?—4. What was the great object of all who went to America? What of gold and silver?—5, 6, 7. Describe the supposed El Dorado.

---

## CHAPTER CLXI. AMERICA continued.—*History of Mexico.*

1. THOUGH there was no El Dorado in America, there was gold enough to satisfy even the Spaniards, if such rapacious people ever could be satisfied. The empire of Mexico contained immense riches.



Montezuma and Attendant, copied from an ancient Mexican Painting.

2. This country is in the southern part of North America. It extends across the continent, from the Gulf of Mexico to the Pacific Ocean. The capital, likewise called Mexico, is one of the most magnificent cities in the world.

3. When America was first discovered, the city of Mexico was even more splendid than it is now. It had stately temples and houses, which were profusely ornamented with gold, and its inhabitants were more civilized than any other natives of America.

4. In the year 1519, Fernando Cortez, a Spaniard, invaded Mexico, with only about six hundred men. But as his followers wore iron armour, and had muskets and cannon, and horses, they were able to fight whole armies of the Mexicans, although they were the most warlike of all the nations of the New World.

5. The emperor of Mexico was named Montezuma. He received Cortez and his men with great civility, for he was afraid to quarrel with them ; but, after a short time, Cortez threw Montezuma into prison, loaded with chains.

6. Finding himself in so unhappy a situation, Montezuma consented to become a vassal of the king of Spain. But the Mexicans raised an insurrection, and when Montezuma endeavoured to quiet them, they uttered shouts of scorn and anger, and discharged arrows and stones at him. One arrow struck poor Montezuma in the breast, and stretched him on the ground. He would not suffer the wound to be dressed, and, in a few days, this ill-fated emperor died.

7. The Mexicans elected Guatimozin, son-in-law of Montezuma, to succeed him. He made a vigorous attack on the Spaniards, and drove them from the city of Mexico ; but Cortez soon returned, and conquered the whole country.

8. The emperor Guatimozin was taken prisoner. He refused to confess where his treasures were concealed : and some of the Spaniards then laid him at full length on a



bed of burning coals, where Guatimozin writhed in agony, till he was delivered by Cortez, who had borne no part in this horrible cruelty ; but, about three years afterwards, Guatimozin was suspected of being engaged in a conspiracy, and Cortez sentenced him to be hanged.

9. It has been affirmed that Cortez and his soldiers killed four millions of the Mexicans, in completing the conquest of the country ; he declared that his only object was to destroy idolatry, and convert the people to the Christian religion, but he and his soldiers acted like fiends, rather than Christians.



Mexican Water Carrier.

10. From the time of its conquest by Cortez, the Mexican empire continued under the government of Spain, till

the year 1810, when a revolution took place ; in 1813 the Mexican provinces declared themselves independent ; but their independence was not established till several years afterwards. They are now called the United Mexican States.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of gold in Mexico ?—2. What of Mexico ? Capital ?—3. Describe the city of Mexico.—4. When did Cortez invade Mexico ?—5. What of Montezuma ? Cortez ?—6. What did Montezuma do ? What of the Mexicans ? Fate of Montezuma ?—7. What did Guatimozin do ? Cortez ?—8. What was done to Guatimozin ? His fate ?—9. What is said of Cortez ? What excuse did he give for his cruelty ?—10. How long was the Mexican empire under the government of Spain ? What took place in 1810 ? What in 1813 ? What are they now called ?

---

## CHAPTER CLXII. AMERICA continued.—*Account of Peru.*

1. A FEW years after the conquest of Mexico by Cortez, the Spaniards invaded the vast empire of Peru, in South America. At the present day, Peru is bounded north by the republic of Equator, east by Brazil, south by Bolivia and the Pacific Ocean, and west by the Pacific ; but when the Spaniards first invaded it, the Peruvian empire included a much larger space.

2. The sovereigns of this empire were called Incas, and the Peruvians believed that their first inca was a child of the sun. The inhabitants were worshippers of the sun. Peru contained many magnificent cities, and gold was more abundant than even in Mexico. Of course, no sooner did the Spaniards hear of it, than they determined to make themselves masters of the country.

3. The first invader was Francis Pizarro, who in 1531 marched into Peru, and took the inca prisoner in his own palace. The inca's name was Atabalipa. To regain his freedom, he offered Pizarro as much gold as would fill

a spacious hall of his palace, piled as high as he could reach.

4. But after the gold had been delivered, Pizarro refused to give Atabalipa his freedom; and shortly after, when the inca refused to become a Christian, he had him strangled, and his body burnt.

5. When he had conquered the Peruvians, Pizarro quarrelled with one of his chief officers, named Almagro. They made war with each other, and Pizarro caused Almagro to be beheaded; and soon afterwards he was himself murdered.

6. In the course of time, the Peruvian empire was divided into several provinces; all of which were under the government of Spain. The Spanish territories comprised nearly all the western part of South America.

7. But the kingdom of Spain became so weak that it lost its authority over these colonies. The first resistance to the government was made while Joseph Buonaparte was king of Spain; and the people would not return to their allegiance, when the former king was again on the throne. Long wars followed, but they are now independent.

8. The different states in America, which were once Spanish provinces, are called the United Mexican States, the republics of Central America, New Grenada, Venezuela, Equator, Peru, Bolivia, Chili, Buenos Ayres, Uruguay and Paraguay. Most of them are in a very unsettled condition.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. When was Peru conquered? What of Peru at the present time? What of it when the Spaniards first invaded it? —2. What of the native sovereigns of Peru? The people? What did Peru contain? What did the Spaniards determine to do? —3. When did Pizarro go to Peru? Who was the inca? What did he do?—4. Fate of Atabalipa?—5. What of Pizarro and Almagro? What became of Pizarro?—6. What of the Peruvian empire? What of the Spanish territories?—8. What of the states in America once Spanish provinces?

CHAPTER CLXIII. AMERICA continued.—*Account of Brazil.*



A Brazilian Village.

1. THE vast country of Brazil is bounded north by New Grenada, Venezuela, and Guiana; east by the Atlantic Ocean; south by the Atlantic, Uruguay, and Paraguay; and west by Bolivia, Peru, and the republic of Equator. It is two thousand miles long and sixteen hundred broad, and has five millions of inhabitants.

2. While the Spaniards were making conquests in other parts of America, the Portuguese discovered Brazil in the year 1501. It is said that, near the river Amazon, they found a nation of women, whose lives were spent in war.

3. We do not read that the Portuguese committed such horrible cruelties as the Spaniards; the reason probably was, that the natives of Brazil possessed but little gold; and the Portuguese hardly thought it worth their while to colonize the country.

4. During many years the government of Portugal was accustomed to send nobody but criminals thither; so that

to be sent to Brazil was considered almost as bad as being sent out of the world.

5. In 1548, a multitude of Jews were banished to Brazil; who planted the sugar-cane there, and successfully cultivated it. When the King of Portugal found that the country was rich and fruitful, he sent over a governor, in order that he might not lose his share of the wealth.

6. France, Spain, and Holland, likewise attempted to get possession of Brazil; but the Portuguese resisted them, and finally became sole masters of the country. Perhaps, if the other nations had known of the hidden riches of Brazil, they would not have given up the contest so easily.

7. It was not till long after the country was settled that the gold mines, for which it is now so famous, were discovered. Considerable quantities of this precious metal are also found in the beds of the rivers, mixed with sand and gravel. The topaz, the diamond, and other precious stones, are sometimes seen glittering among the gold.

8. The Rio Pardo, though it is a very small and shallow stream, produces a great number of diamonds; other rivers are likewise enriched with them. Negro slaves are



Negroes searching for Gold.

employed in washing the sand and gravel of these rivers, and when one of them finds a very large diamond, he receives his freedom, and a reward for smaller ones.

9. Brazil is one of the most fertile countries in the world, and furnishes in abundance all the best productions of both the East and West Indies.

10. In 1806, the King of Portugal removed to Brazil, and established his court in the city of Rio Janeiro. Ten years afterwards, he returned to Lisbon. The Brazilians soon after became independent, and proclaimed his son Pedro emperor.

11. In 1831, a revolution took place, and Pedro resigned the imperial crown to his son, who was then only five years old, who is now styled the Emperor of Brazil, but the government is carried on by a council of regency. The country is, however, in an unsettled state.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Boundaries of Brazil? Extent? Population? —2. What of the Portuguese?—3. Were the Portuguese as cruel as the Spaniards?—4. Who were sent to Brazil?—5. What happened in 1548? What of the Jews?—6. What of other countries?—7. What were discovered in Brazil?—8. What of the Rio Pardo? Negro slaves?—9. Is Brazil a fertile country? 10. When did the King of Portugal remove to Brazil? Where did he establish his court? When did he return to Lisbon? What of his son Pedro? 11. What happened in 1831? What did Pedro do? How is Brazil now governed?

---

#### CHAPTER CLXIV. AMERICA continued.—*The West Indies.*

1. I MUST not close my story about America, without giving you some little account of the West India islands, lying in the Atlantic Ocean, between North and South America. These consist of three clusters, called the Bahamas, the Antilles, and the Caribbees. The Bahamas are the most northerly of the three groups, and lie near to Florida. They are about six hundred in number, but most

of them are small, consisting of sand and rocks, and are uninhabited by man.



Sugar Plantation in the West Indies.

2. These, however, are the resort of a great variety of sea-fowl. Many of the birds which visit the lakes and shores of America in summer, retire to these lonely islands in winter, where they find a secure and pleasant abode. The Bahama Islands belong to Great Britain, and contain about seventeen thousand inhabitants. The principal are Turk's Island, Eleuthera, Providence, and San Salvador, or Cat Island; which last was that which Columbus first discovered.

3. The Antilles, occupying the middle portion of the West Indies, consist of Cuba, which is the largest, and belongs to Spain; Hayti, or St. Domingo, which is an independent negro republic; Porto Rico, which belongs to Spain; Jamaica, which belongs to Great Britain; and a few smaller islands.

4. The Caribbee Islands are very numerous, and lie

south-easterly of the others. They stretch from Porto Rico in a semicircular group to the shores of South America, and the greater number of them belong to Great Britain. The most celebrated of these islands are Martinico, Barbadoes, St. Thomas, Tobago, St. Lucia, St. Vincent, Guadaloupe, Antigua, St. Christophers, Dominica, Santa Cruz, and Trinidad.

5. The climate of the West Indies is that of perpetual summer; frost and snow are unknown; the trees are ever clothed with leaves, and many of the shrubs and plants continue at all times to be adorned with blossoms.

6. The fruits which are common with us, such as apples, pears, cherries, and plums, are unknown in these regions; but oranges, figs, lemons, pine-apples, tamarinds, and many other nice things, are abundant.

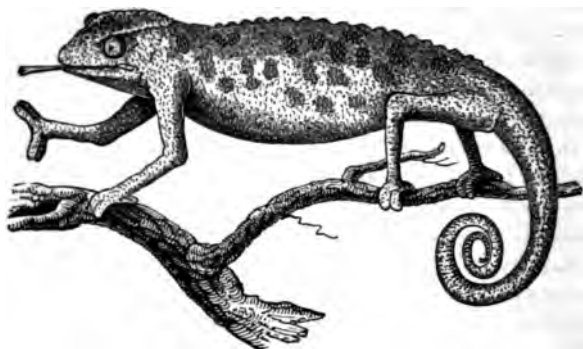
7. The people do not cultivate wheat, rye, oats, and barley, as we do, but they grow the sugar-cane, from which they extract sugar and molasses, and they cultivate coffee, cotton, indigo, cocoa, allspice, ginger, and many drugs used in medicine.

8. The forests contain mahogany, *lignum vitæ*, iron wood, and other woods useful in the arts. Among the birds are parrots of various kinds, some of which are very small indeed. A friend of mine made me a present of one of these little fellows, a few years since. Instead of sitting upon his perch, I have known him to hang by his claws to the top wires of the cage, with his head downwards, and thus remain during the whole night. The beautiful little humming-bird, the young of which is not much larger than a blue-bottle fly, is also found here.

9. Among the quadrupeds of the West Indies are some curious little monkeys, and several kinds of lizards. The chameleon is the most interesting of these; he was formerly supposed to live on air, and to have the power of changing his colour at will; but it is now ascertained that he often makes a sly meal upon insects that come in his



way, and that his colour does not vary more than that of several other animals of a similar kind.



The Chameleon.

10. Although the West Indies have nothing like an English winter, rain falls in torrents for weeks together, and they are often visited by terrible gales of wind, called hurricanes, which drive ships on shore, and root up trees, and level the strongest buildings.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. Where are the West India islands situated? Of what three groups do they consist? What of the Bahama Islands?—2. What of sea-fowl?—To whom do the Bahamas belong? Which are the principal?—3. What of the Antilles?—4. What of the Caribbee islands? The principal ones?—5. What of the climate of the West Indies?—6. Fruits?—7. Productions?—8. Forests? Birds?—9. What of monkeys? The chameleon?—10. What of rain and hurricanes.

---

## CHAPTER CLXV. AMERICA continued. *Conquest of the West Indies ; their present State.*

1. If you were to visit the West Indies at the present day, you would find them inhabited by Europeans and their descendants, together with a great many negroes. But

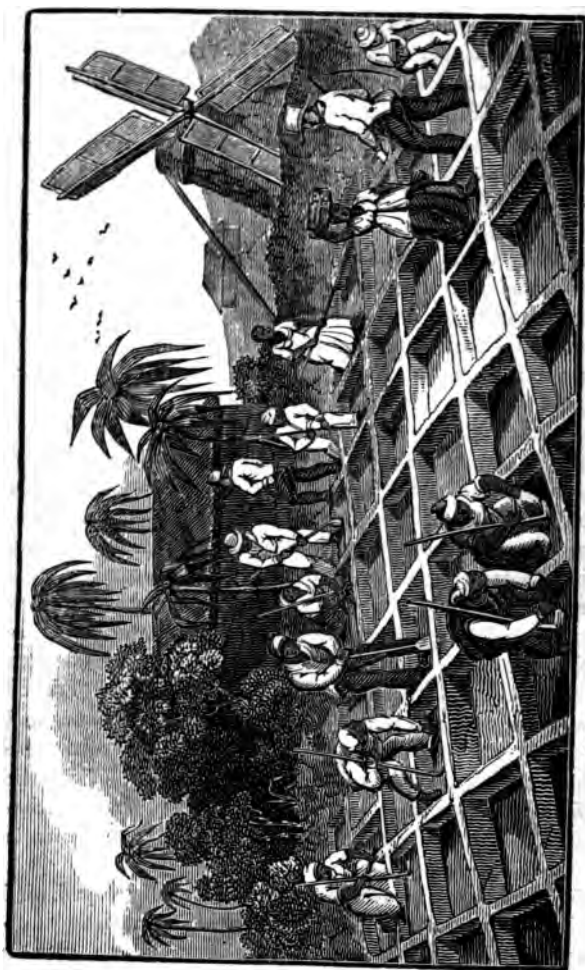
you would meet with none of the native Indians, as these have long since disappeared.

2. I have already told you that Columbus first discovered one of the Bahamas, to which he gave the name of St. Salvador, and which is now called Cat Island. He found the country very thickly peopled, and the inhabitants were very mild and gentle in their manners.

3. After leaving St. Salvador, Columbus visited Cuba and St. Domingo. Both of these were very populous; it is supposed that Cuba alone contained several millions of inhabitants, who appeared to live very happily, for the climate was mild, and the soil fruitful. They received Columbus with kindness, and rendered him every service in their power; they little thought of the cruel consequences which were soon to follow.

4. Soon after the discovery of the West India islands, all the largest and finest of them were taken possession of by the Spanish government. The Indians were a gentle race, and were easily subjugated. The Spaniards, however, did not seem to regard them as human beings, but rather as wild animals, who were to be exterminated. They shot them down by thousands, and even trained blood-hounds to pursue them. Those who survived these barbarities, were treated like slaves, and many of them were compelled to work in mines, where they soon perished from hard labour to which they were unaccustomed, and for the want of that free air which Heaven had sent them before the Europeans came to deprive them of it. So rapid indeed was the progress of destruction, that in a few years it became necessary to procure slaves from Africa to cultivate the lands.

5. Thus were the native West Indians destroyed, and their fair lands came into the possession of various European governments. Spain held Cuba and Porto Rico in her grasp; England got possession of Jamaica, the Ber-



Negroes opening the Land for planting the Sugar Cane.

mudas, and many other islands. France obtained a portion of St. Domingo, Martinico, Guadaloupe, and several others. Some of the smaller islands fell into the hands of the Dutch, Danes, Swedes, &c.

6. The first object of the Europeans after the discovery of America, was to obtain gold and silver; they seemed to imagine that all the hills and mountains of that continent were filled with the precious metals; but in the West Indies this illusion soon vanished, and the people began to cultivate the soil, instead of digging into the bosom of the earth for gold and silver.

7. They discovered that the land was peculiarly well suited to the raising of sugar-canes, coffee, cotton, and other productions of a tropical climate; to these, then, they devoted their attention, and the islands soon became very productive. In order to till them, they followed the plan the Spaniards had introduced, of purchasing slaves from Africa, who were brought by thousands and tens of thousands, and nearly all the labour, at the present day, is performed by negroes. Slavery was abolished in the British colonies in 1834, but it still prevails in all the others.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. How are the West Indies at present inhabited? —2. What of St. Salvador? What people did Columbus find there? —3. What islands did he next visit? What of the Indians? —4. What of the Spanish government? How did the Spaniards treat the Indians? —5. Of which of the islands did Spain obtain possession? England? France? What of the smaller islands? —6. What did the Europeans expect to find in every part of America? —7. What did they discover in the West Indies? What of negro slaves? When was slavery abolished in the British colonies?

---

CHAPTER CLXVI. AMERICA continued.—*Hayti. The Buccaneers.*



1. I CANNOT undertake to tell you of all the interesting events which have occurred in the West Indies. Several of these islands have often changed masters, very few of them being now possessed by the nations that discovered them; they have frequently been shaken by earthquakes, and often desolated by hurricanes. But of these events I cannot tell you now.

2. I must not, however, overlook the story of Hayti. This fine island was discovered by Columbus on his first voyage, and here he left a party of his men, and thus founded the first European settlement in the New World; the island was called Hayti by the natives, but named Hispaniola by the Spaniards. The first settlement was destroyed by the natives, but Columbus returned with a large body of troops, and the whole island speedily became subject to Spain. In after times, the French obtained possession of a portion of the country, and, until

about forty years ago, it was shared between the French and Spanish governments, and was known by the name of St. Domingo.

3. But the negro slaves had become much more numerous than the white inhabitants, and, in 1791, they rose against their masters. France, at this time, was in a state of revolution, and could afford no aid to put down the insurrection; the negroes therefore slaughtered the white people by thousands, pillaging their houses, and then setting them on fire. A few escaped, but the greater number were killed.

4. The negroes now declared themselves independent, and began to form a government of their own. After various revolutions, the whole island was formed into a republic, the officers of which were negroes or mulattoes, and so it continues to this day. The people are, on the whole, well governed, the state of society is improving, and attention is being paid to education. Nearly all the inhabitants are people of colour, but many of them are intelligent, and carry on the various concerns of agriculture and commerce with skill and success.

5. Before I leave the West Indies, I must say a few words about the Buccaneers, a famous set of sea-robbers, who infested these islands during part of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. These at first consisted of men from England and France, who settled on the western coast of St. Domingo and the neighbouring island of Tortuga, about the year 1630.

6. For a while, they lived by killing wild cattle, and selling their skins, but the Spaniards were jealous of their intrusion, and murdered them without mercy, whenever they had the opportunity; in revenge, the buccaneers procured small boats, and put to sea to intercept the Spanish treasure-ships, and other vessels. This business succeeded so well, that a great many desperate adventurers from all parts of Europe united themselves to the buccaneers. They

therefore procured larger vessels, which were equipped in the best manner for attack; these were filled with daring seamen, and commanded by bold leaders; and such was their power at one time, that they made successful attacks upon many large cities, sometimes pillaging the inhabitants, and sometimes laying them under contribution.

7. The buccaneers formed a regular society, and all their plunder was divided by settled rules. Although daily practising every atrocity, they pretended to so much regard for religion, that after a while, the French and English buccaneers separated, because they were, the one Catholics, the other Protestants.

8. But, at length, the European governments were roused, by the violence and cruelty of these robbers, to measures of retaliation. They sent large vessels to cruize in the neighbourhood of the West Indies, and, after many struggles, the confederacy of the buccaneers was broken up, about the year 1712. A few of the most desperate retired to the island of Madagascar, in Africa, but they never became powerful, and in a few years were wholly exterminated by some English men-of-war sent against them.

9. In later times, the West Indian seas were again infested by pirates, who captured many trading vessels, but they have been hunted down by the English and Americans.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of some of the West India islands?—  
 2. Who discovered Hayti? What settlement was made? Names of the island? To what country did it become subject? What of France?—3. What occurred in 1791?—4. What of the negroes? Their government? State of society?—5. What of the buccaneers? Where were they originally from? Where and in what year did they settle?—6. How did they live for a while? What did they afterwards do? By whom were they joined? What exploits did they perform?—7. How was their plunder divided? What caused the English and French buccaneers to separate?—  
 8. How were they finally subdued?—9. What of other pirates? .

CHAPTER CLXVII. *Chronology of America.*

	A. D.
Greenland colonized from Iceland	973
Intercourse with Greenland discontinued	1406
Columbus's first voyage	1492
Newfoundland discovered	1498
Cortez invaded Mexico	1519
French settlements made in Canada	1524
Pizarro goes to Peru	1531
First settlement in Virginia, at Jamestown	1607
Quebec founded	1608
First settlement in New York and New Jersey	1613
Settlement at Plymouth	1620
Delaware and Pennsylvania first settled by the Swedes	1627
Buccaneers first assemble at St. Domingo and Tortuga	1630
Maryland settled	1634
First settlement in Connecticut	1635
Rhode Island settled	1635
The English get possession of New York	1664
Carolina settled	1669
Pennsylvania settled by Penn	1682
The Carolinas divided	1728
Georgia settled	1733
Capture of Louisburg by the people of New England	1745
Capture of Louisburg by Wolfe	1758
Quebec taken by the English	1759
The American Stamp Act passed	1765
Commencement of the American war	1775
Peace with Great Britain	1783
General Washington, first president of the United States	1789
John Adams, second president	1797
Death of Washington	1799
Thomas Jefferson, president	1801
Purchase of Louisiana by the United States	1803
James Madison, president	1809
War with Great Britain	1812—1815
James Munroe, president	1817
Florida annexed to the United States	1818
John Quincy Adams, president	1825
Andrew Jackson, president	1828
Martin Van Buren, president	1837



CHAPTER CLXVIII. OCEANIA.—*About Oceania.*  
*The Malaysian Islands.*



Polynesian Hut.

1. HAVING now related the history of Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, the reader will probably think that my History ought to close here; but there is a fifth portion of the globe, on which I must now employ my pen.

2. America ought no longer to be called the New World; for there is a newer one, composed of the islands which lie in the Pacific and Indian Oceans. The name of Oceania has been given to this region, which is subdivided into Malaysia, Australasia, and Polynesia. If all the islands were put together, they would cover a space of at least four millions of square miles.

3. Those islands which lie in the Indian Ocean, near the continent of Asia, are called the Indian Archipelago, or Malaysia; the largest of them are Borneo, Sumatra, and Java. Scarcely anything has been written about the history of Malaysia, for the islands are chiefly inhabited

by the natives, who keep no record of passing events, and have no desire to know the deeds of their forefathers.

4. The history of Java is best known, but is not very important or interesting. It was first visited by the Portuguese, in the year 1510. They found it an exceedingly fertile island, producing abundance of sugar, coffee, rice, pepper, spices, and delicious fruits; there were also mines of gold, silver, diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.

5. The island is six hundred and fifty miles in length. About a hundred years after its discovery, the Dutch got possession of a large portion of it; and built the city of Batavia, on the north-western coast of the island.

6. The city is situated on a low, marshy plain, and canals of stagnant water are seen in many of the streets. But the edifices were so splendid, that Batavia was called the Queen of the East. Its beauty was much increased by the trees that overshadowed the streets and canals.

7. In the year 1780, the population amounted to a hundred and sixty thousand. People from all parts of the world were among them; but the Europeans were the fewest in number, although the government was in their hands.

8. Of late years, Batavia has been fast going to decay. The climate is so unhealthy, that strangers are very liable to be attacked by dreadful fevers. Sometimes a vessel loses her whole crew by death.

9. In the year 1811, the English took possession of the island of Java, and kept it till 1816, when they restored it to its former owners. The Dutch are said to exercise great tyranny over the natives.

10. The Philippine Islands, a very numerous group, lying south of China and east of Borneo, were discovered by Magellan; they belong to Spain; and are fertile, and well peopled. The Spanish inhabitants are numerous, and many of the natives are Christians. Manilla, the capital, is a very large and fine city.

11. The Moluccas are a number of small islands to the east of Java, belonging to the Dutch, from which spices are procured. Sumatra, Borneo, Celebes, and many other islands, are possessed by savage tribes, and have only a few European settlements along the coasts.

---

**QUESTIONS.** 2. What of Oceania? Extent? Divisions?—3. What of Malaysia? The natives?—4. What of Java? What are its productions? Mines?—5. Length of Java? Who built Batavia?—6. Describe the city.—7. Population of Batavia in 1780?—8. What of this city of late years? Its climate?—9. What happened in 1811? In 1816? What of the Dutch?—10. The Philippine Islands?—11. The Moluccas? Sumatra? Other islands?

---

## CHAPTER CLXIX. OCEANIA continued.— *Australasia.*



Natives of New Holland.

1. THE second division of Oceania is called Australasia. This comprises New Holland, Van Diemen's Land, New Guinea, New Zealand, and the islands in their vicinity.

2. New Holland is an immense island, containing two millions of square miles. The native inhabitants are in the very lowest stage of civilization, but great efforts are now making by the English colonists to better their condition.

3. The western part of New Holland was discovered by the Dutch, in 1610, but the whole of it is now a territory of Great Britain. Captain James Cook, the celebrated navigator, took possession of the eastern coast, to which he gave the name of New South Wales, in 1770.

4. In 1788, a number of convicts were sent to form a settlement in New South Wales, at a place called Botany Bay. This colony has flourished greatly, and is now in a very prosperous condition.

5. In 1829, a settlement was made on the western coast, called Swan River; and more recently another at Port Lincoln, called South Australia. The European population of all these settlements is about eighty thousand.

6. So many criminals were sent from England, that in 1804 a colony was founded on Van Diemen's Land, an island, two hundred miles long and one hundred and fifty broad, lying to the south of New Holland. This island is very fertile, and now contains several handsome towns, and carries on an extensive trade. Its population is near thirty thousand.

7. The other islands of this division, New Guinea, New Caledonia, New Hebrides, &c. are inhabited by people resembling the New Hollanders, and have not yet been settled by Europeans.

8. The islands of New Zealand, however, lying to the south-east of New South Wales, are inhabited by an active clever race, who carry on some trade with the British colonies, and have many English traders and some missionaries settled among them, who have introduced some degree of civilization.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What is called Austrasia?—2. What is the size of New Holland? What of the natives?—3. By whom and when was New Holland discovered? When was it visited by Captain Cook?—4. What of the colonies of New Holland? When was New South Wales settled? What was the first settlement called? What were the first colonists?—5. Swan River? South Australia?—6. Where is Van Diemen's Land? Its population?—7. The other islands?—8. New Zealand?



Cape Pillar, Van Diemen's Land.

## CHAPTER CLXX. OCEANIA continued.—*Polynesia.*

1. THE third division of Oceania is called *Polynesia*. It consists of many groups of small islands, which are scattered over a large extent of the Pacific Ocean; the principal of them are the Sandwich, the Society, and the Friendly Islands, and the Marquesas.

2. The Sandwich Islands are among the most important in *Polynesia*. They consist of ten islands, of which *Owhyhee*, or *Hawaii*, is the largest. These islands were discovered by Captain Cook, in 1778.



Island in Polynesia.

3. He found them inhabited by a handsome race of people, although their complexions were darker than our own; they appeared to be of a gay, friendly, and sociable disposition.

4. But they had some shocking customs among them; they were in the habit of offering human sacrifices to their idols; they were also great thieves, and had many other vices.

5. The natives at first behaved in a very friendly manner to Captain Cook; but, after some time, a part of them stole one of the boats belonging to his vessel. The captain went on shore with ten armed men, intending to take the king prisoner, and keep him till the boat should be returned.

6. But when he had landed, the natives mustered in great numbers, and he found it necessary to retreat to his boat, the natives following him, shouting, throwing stones, and brandishing their weapons.

7. Captain Cook pointed his musket at them, but it only made them more tumultuous and violent; finding his life in danger, he then took aim and shot the foremost native dead. In a moment, the natives rushed upon him; one of them beat him down with a club, and then stabbed him with a dagger; and four of the men who had landed with him were also killed.

8. The Sandwich Islands soon after became the resort of whale-ships, and of all other vessels that navigated that part of the Pacific Ocean. But the inhabitants did not derive any advantage from their intercourse with civilized people; on the contrary, they became a great deal more vicious than ever they were before. They also contracted so many diseases, that their numbers were reduced from four hundred thousand to less than a hundred and fifty thousand, and there was reason to fear that the islands would soon be totally depopulated.

9. Some missionaries at length crossed the ocean, in

hopes to save these poor islanders from destruction ; they preached the Gospel to them, and established schools, in which the natives were taught to read the Bible. After a while their efforts were successful, the people burnt their idols, and the whole population became Christians, and have now made great progress in all the arts of civilized life.

10. The Society Islands likewise belong to Polynesia. They are situated about a thousand miles south of the equator, which is nearly the same distance that the Sandwich Islands are north of it.

11. The largest of the Society Islands is called Tahiti, or Otaheite. It is a hundred miles in circumference, and is inhabited by about ten thousand people. Like the natives of the Sandwich Islands, they are generally handsome, and of agreeable manners ; and Christianity is beginning to exert its benign influence among them.

12. The Friendly Islands, the Marquesas, and most of the others, are very fertile, and thickly peopled, but their inhabitants remain at the present day much in their original state.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of Polynesia ? Its inhabitants ?—— 2. Which are the most important islands of the group ? Who discovered the Sandwich Islands ?—— 3. What people did Captain Cook find inhabiting the Sandwich Islands ?—— 4. What were some of their customs ?—— 5. What took place between the natives and Captain Cook ?—— 6. Relate what happened.—— 8. What ships soon resorted to the Sandwich Islands ? What was the consequence of the intercourse of the natives with the Europeans ?—— 9. What of the missionaries ?—— 10. The Society Islands ?—— 12. The Friendly Islands ? Marquesas ?

---

## CHAPTER CLXXI. OCEANIA continued.—*The Mutiny of the Bounty.*

1. A VERY interesting event took place among these islands, many years ago. The brig *Bounty*, belonging to



the British navy, commanded by Lieutenant Bligh, was sent to the Society Islands in order to convey bread-fruit plants from thence to the West Indies, where it was desired to introduce their cultivation.

2. The *Bounty* arrived at Otaheite in 1788; the sailors were delighted with the island; the air was mild and balmy, and fruits grew abundantly on every tree. There was no need of toiling for bread, since there were trees enough which produced it ready made, and almost as good as if it had been baked.

3. The natives of Otaheite received them with kindness, and the women behaved with great affection towards the sailors. In short, the crew spent their time so pleasantly, that they were very reluctant to depart, and wished to spend their whole lives in these sunny islands.

4. When the *Bounty* sailed, they cast many a sad glance at the pleasant shores which they were leaving, and they had not gone many days, before they formed a resolution to return.

5. A young man of the name of Christian was an officer on board the *Bounty*. He was not on good terms with Lieutenant Bligh, and he incited the crew to mutiny against their commander, and take possession of the vessel.

6. One morning, before sunrise, Christian and his associates entered Lieutenant Bligh's cabin, while he was asleep, and bound his hands behind his back, threatening him with death if he made the least resistance. He was then put into a boat, with eighteen other persons, who refused to join in the mutiny.

7. I can only say of Lieutenant Bligh and his companions, that they arrived safe in England, after severe hardships. The frigate *Pandora* was then sent to Otaheite in search of the mutineers, that they might be brought to justice.

8. The frigate arrived at Otaheite and found fourteen of

the mutineers. She took them on board and sailed for England, but was wrecked on her passage, and four of the mutineers were drowned. The other ten were carried to England, where three of them were hanged.

9. Christian, the ringleader of the mutiny, had not been taken prisoner by the Pandora; for he and several companions had sailed from Otaheite in the Bounty, taking with them a plentiful supply of hogs, dogs, cats and fowls, and also a number of Otaheitan men and women.

10. For a great many years, nobody could tell what had become of Christian and his friends, and of the brig Bounty, in which they had sailed away. As no news were heard of them, people universally believed that the vessel had gone to the bottom, with all her crew.

11. But, twenty years after, when people had long ago done talking about the Bounty, it was found out what had become of her.

11. In the year 1813, a British ship of war was sailing from the Marquesas Islands to the port of Valparaiso, in South America. The captain of the vessel was Sir Thomas Staines, and in the course of his voyage, he happened to cast anchor off Pitcairn's Island.

12. This small island lies many leagues to the south-west of Otaheite. It was first discovered by Captain Carteret, in 1767; but very few people had since visited it, for it produced no valuable commodities, and it was supposed to be uninhabited.

13. But, as Sir Thomas Staines looked from the deck of his vessel to the shore, he was amazed to perceive that the island was cultivated, and that there were small houses on it. These houses were better built than those of the savages generally are, and they looked something like the dwellings of poor people in England.

14. While Sir Thomas Staines and his sailors were wondering at these circumstances, a small boat put off



Village of Pitcairn's Island.

from the shore. The waves rolled very high, but the boat skimmed like a sea-bird over the tops of them, and soon came along side of the vessel.



Thursday October Christian, the son of the Mutineer.

15. The boat was rowed by two young men. They were handsome, though of rather a dark complexion; and when they came near the vessel, one of them called out, in good English—"Won't you throw us a rope, friends?" A rope was thrown to them, and they took hold of it and

clambered on board of the vessel. Sir Thomas Staines asked them who they were, and how they came to be living on that lonely island. The mystery was soon explained.

16. When Christian and his companions left Otaheite, they had steered for Pitcairn's Island, and had run the *Bounty* ashore on the rocks, and set her on fire. They had then built houses on the island, and had married the Otaheitan women whom they brought with them.

17. Christian and all his associates were now dead, except one old man, whose name was John Adams; but they had left children and grandchildren, so that there was now quite a flourishing colony on the island.

18. Old John Adams had taught the young people to read the Bible, to tell the truth, and to be honest and upright in their behaviour.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. Why was the *Bounty* sent to the Society Islands? Her commander?—2. When did he arrive at Otaheite? How did his men like the island?—3. How did the natives treat the sailors?—4. What of the crew of the *Bounty*? What resolution did they form?—5. What did Christian do?—6. How did he treat Lieutenant Bligh and eighteen others?—7. Did they arrive in England?—8. What became of the mutineers?—9. What had Christian and his companions done?—10. What was supposed to have become of them?—11. What happened in the year 1813?—12. Where is Pitcairn's Island? When was it discovered?—13. What was seen from the deck of the ship?—14, 15. Who came off from the shore?—16. Where had Christian and his companions steered on leaving Otaheite?—17. Who alone remained of the mutineers? How was the colony peopled?—18. What had John Adams done for the young people?

CHAPTER CLXXII. *Chronology of Oceania.*

	A. D
Java discovered by the Portuguese - - - -	1510
Philippine Islands discovered by Magellan - - -	1517
New Holland discovered by the Dutch - - -	1610
Batavia, the capital of Java, built by the Dutch - -	1619
New Zealand discovered by Tasman - - - -	1642
Captain Cook took possession of New Holland - -	1770
Sandwich Islands discovered by Captain Cook - -	1778
Death of Captain Cook - - - - -	1779
Botany Bay, in New South Wales, settled - - -	1788
Mutiny of the Bounty - - - - -	1788
Convicts first sent to Van Diemen's Land - - -	1804
The English take Java from the Dutch - - -	1811
Sir Thomas Staines reaches Pitcairn's Island - -	1813
Java restored to the Dutch - - - - -	1816
Missionaries established at the Sandwich Islands -	1820
Settlement at Swan River formed - - - - -	1829
———— of South Australia - - - - -	1835



Oceanic Negroes' hollow Tree, and notched Ladder.

CHAPTER CLXXIII. REVIEW.—*Duration of the Empires of Asia and Africa.*

1. I HAVE now told you my story of the four quarters of the globe, and that fifth division which passes under the name of Oceania. But ere we part, it may be advisable to take a backward glance at the countries through which we have travelled, and a general view of the events which have been narrated.

2. What a wonderful story does the world present! Less than six thousand years ago, there was but a single human pair on this globe; these dwelt on the banks of the Euphrates, and every other part of the earth was without inhabitants. Now the greater portion of the world is peopled, and not less than eight hundred millions of persons are in existence.

3. And since the creation of Adam and Eve, how many nations have arisen and passed away! how many empires have flourished and decayed! how many millions of individuals have lived and died! It is a matter which we need not attempt to calculate with precision, but it is probable that at least one hundred thousand millions of persons have existed and perished since the creation of the world. This wondrous subject is too vast for our comprehension; let us therefore turn our attention to the principal empires of which history gives us an account.

4. The first empire that was formed was that of Assyria. This was founded by Ashur, 2229 years before Christ, and was overthrown by Arbaces, in the year 900 before Christ; but it was afterwards revived, and continued until the time of Cyrus, 538 years before Christ. Its whole duration, therefore, from the beginning to its final overthrow, was one thousand six hundred and ninety-one years.

5. The next great empire was that of Persia, founded by Cyrus, in the year 536 before Christ. This rose to great power, and spread itself over a large portion of Asia;

but in the year 330 before Christ, it was conquered by Alexander, king of Macedon ; it afterwards became subject to the Parthians, and finally formed a portion of the Saracen empire. The present kingdom of Persia is much smaller in extent, and of modern origin.

6. The empire of the Caliphs, or Saracens, commenced 638 years after Christ, and was overthrown by the Turks, in the year 1258, having continued six hundred and twenty years.

7. China, the most populous empire on the globe, is also the oldest existing one ; it is now about four thousand years from the time of its first emperor to the present date. It has several times been conquered by its northern neighbours, and the present reigning family are Tartars, who acquired the empire in 1644.

8. The Jewish nation may be considered as having its origin in Abraham, who left Chaldea and removed to Canaan, 1921 years before Christ. From this period to the destruction of Jerusalem by Titus, and the dispersion of the Jews, in the year 70 after Christ, was a space of one thousand nine hundred and ninety-one years. From the departure of the Israelites out of Egypt, to their dispersion after the destruction of Jerusalem, was a period of one thousand five hundred and sixty-one years.

9. Such is a brief view of the great kingdoms and empires of Asia. The only African empire of great duration was that of Egypt : this was founded by Misraim, 2188 years before Christ, and continued till the time of Alexander, 332 years before Christ. During this period of one thousand eight hundred and fifty-six years, it experienced many changes, but it may be considered as one continued empire. Since its conquest by Alexander, it has had many masters. It may now be considered as an independent state.

10. Carthage was originally a Phœnician colony, and was founded 869 years before Christ. The people had many vessels, and carried on trade with various towns and



cities around the Mediterranean : they likewise established colonies in Spain, and along the northern and western coasts of Africa.

11. Their ships also made pretty long voyages ; some of them going into the Atlantic Ocean, and visiting the western coasts of Africa. It has even been conjectured that some of their adventurous seamen crossed the Atlantic Ocean, and discovered America, but this is at best a very doubtful matter.

12. It is certain, however, that Carthage was at one time a great and flourishing city, and that the whole country around it became populous. Such was its power, that it was the rival of Rome, and long maintained a conflict with its haughty competitor : it was at length overthrown, 146 years before Christ, having existed seven hundred and twenty-three years.

13. The Barbary States, Morocco, Algiers, Tripoli, and Tunis, are of modern origin. The countries where these are situated were, as I have before told you, inhabited in the time of the Romans, and appear to have been very populous. They all became subject to Rome, and experienced many changes, till they were overrun by the Saracens.

14. In after times, they became subject to the Turks, but for several hundred years they have enjoyed independence, with a nominal allegiance to the sultan of Turkey. But even this dependence has now ceased, and Algiers, at the present time, is possessed by France.

---

QUESTIONS. 2. What of the world about six thousand years ago ? At the present time ?—3. How many people have probably existed since the creation of the world ?—4. By whom and when was the empire of Assyria founded ? What of it ? Its duration ?—5. What of the empire of Persia ?—6. Empire of the Saracens ?—7. What of China ?—8. What of the Jewish nation ?—9. What of Egypt ?—10. When was Carthage founded ?—11. Their ships ? Seamen ?—12. When was Carthage overthrown ? How long had it existed ?—13. What of the Barbary States ?—14. What of Algiers ?

CHAPTER CLXXIV. REVIEW continued. *Duration of the Empires of Europe.*

1. LET us now turn our attention to Europe. It is supposed that the Celts passed from Asia into Europe at a very early period. Whether they entered the south-eastern corner between the Black Sea and the Caspian Sea, or whether they crossed the Ural Mountains to the north of the Caspian Sea, I cannot tell.

2. It has been conjectured that some few scattered tribes may have migrated, even into the central parts of Europe, as early as 2000 years before Christ : but this is hardly probable. It appears certain, however, that they were numerous in Germany, France, the northern part of Italy, and in Britain, several hundred years before the Christian era.

3. Whatever may have been the period at which the Celts first migrated into Europe, it is generally admitted that the earliest permanent settlement in this quarter of the globe was made by a Phœnician colony in Greece, 1856 years before Christ ; this colony was led by Inachus.

4. But it was not till three hundred years after, that Athens was founded by Cecrops, who came thither, bringing with him a number of settlers, from Egypt. This is considered as the foundation of the Grecian states, and the proper point at which Grecian history begins.

5. The independence of ancient Greece was terminated by the Roman conquest, 146 years before Christ ; a period of one thousand seven hundred and ten years from the first settlement by Inachus, and one thousand four hundred and ten years from the founding of Athens by Cecrops.

6. Rome was founded 753 years before Christ, and its power continued to increase, until the whole civilized world bowed beneath its yoke. Its form of government was often changed, being at first a kingdom, then a republic,

and lastly an empire. The city of Rome was taken by Odoacer, 476 years after Christ, and a period was thus put to its dominion. The whole duration of the Roman empire was one thousand two hundred and twenty-nine years.

7. The Greek empire, whose capital was Byzantium, afterwards called Constantinople, was originally a portion of the Roman empire, and was usually called the Eastern empire. Constantine removed to Constantinople in the year 329 after Christ, but the division was made by Theodosius, in 395, at which point the Greek empire began.

8. It experienced various vicissitudes, but continued till 1453, when Constantinople was taken by the Turks, and a period was put to the Greek empire, after it had existed one thousand and fifty-eight years.

9. The history of the Turks commences at the point where that of the Saracens ends. Under the name of Tartars, they overturned the Saracen empire, in the year 1258. They adopted the Mohammedan religion, and have ever since maintained it, and they extended their dominion over those countries which the Saracens had conquered, and some others.

10. Another race of Turks, called Ottomans, from Othman, their leader, entered Europe about the year 1299. Othman the First began his reign in 1268, and founded the Ottoman empire, which exists at the present day. The duration of the Ottoman empire, properly so called, from its establishment by Othman the First, to 1837, is five hundred and thirty-eight years. From the taking of Constantinople by the Turks in 1453, that city has been the capital of the Ottoman empire.

11. The French monarchy began with Childeric, who became king in 458. His son Clovis was the first Christian king: he drove the Romans out of France, and for this reason, the French kingdom is often reckoned as commencing in his reign, about the year 487, at which time he succeeded his father Childeric. The duration of the

French monarchy, therefore, from the year 487 to 1837, is one thousand three hundred and fifty years; and it is the oldest existing kingdom in Europe.

12. The English monarchy is considered as beginning with Egbert, who was the first Saxon king of all England, and came to the throne in the year 827. From this period to 1837, is a space of one thousand and ten years. Next to France, this is the oldest monarchy in Europe.

13. The other kingdoms of Europe are of more recent origin. The Moors established themselves in Spain in 712, and were finally expelled in 1492, having held dominion in that country seven hundred and eighty years. For a long time the Moorish sovereigns held possession of three-fourths of Spain; but other portions remained independent, and existed under the title of kingdoms. One of these was Asturias, which was founded by Pelagio, and his successors founded the kingdoms of Castile, Leon, Arragon, and others.

14. Ferdinand, King of Arragon, came to the throne in 1479; he married Isabella, Queen of Castile, and their two kingdoms were thus united. From this period, the several portions of Spain were gradually combined into one government: we may, therefore, consider the commencement of the reign of Ferdinand as the proper point at which the Spanish monarchy begins; and from this period to the year 1837, is three hundred and fifty-eight years.

15. The kingdom of Portugal was founded in the year 1146, but in 1580 it was seized by Philip the Second of Spain; it became independent again in 1640. From this time to 1837, is a space of one hundred and ninety-seven years.

16. Charlemagne was king of France, but he conquered the greater part of Germany, and fixed his residence there in the year 802; but in 912, Conrad, Duke of Franconia, was elected emperor; and this is the point from which the

origin of the German empire is usually dated. It continued till the year 1806; a period of eight hundred and ninety-four years.

17. Austria, as I have told you, was originally one of the German states, and was called an archduchy. In 1273, Rodolph of Hapsburgh became the archduke, and was elected Emperor of Germany. From this period, Austria has steadily increased in strength, and we may properly consider it as the point at which its power was established. From this date till 1837, is a space of five hundred and sixty-four years.

18. The kingdom of Prussia was founded in 1701, and has gradually increased in wealth and power from a very small beginning, till it is now the fifth state in Europe.

19. Poland, having been an archduchy for many years, was formed into a kingdom in 999, under Boleslaus. In 1795, it was seized by Russia, Prussia, and Austria, and was thus blotted out from the list of independent nations, after a duration of seven hundred and ninety-six years.

20. Russia, anciently called Scythia, was overrun by Scandinavian tribes in the ninth century, who obtained a permanent dominion in the country. It was for a long time the scene of bloodshed and turmoil, and at length was subjected by the Tartars, in 1237, who maintained their sway for two hundred and twenty-five years; it was delivered from this galling yoke by John Basilowitz the First, in 1462, and its independence was thus established. From this date till 1837, is a space of three hundred and seventy-five years.

21. The kingdom of Sweden is of considerable antiquity. About the year 481, the rulers, who were called judges, assumed the title of kings, and their descendants continued to reign till 1068; but Sweden at this time was of small extent, the people extremely barbarous, and the government unsettled. In the year 994, the king, Olaf, was converted to Christianity, and formed the country into a

regular monarchy. From this date to 1837, is a space of eight hundred and forty-three years.

22. Skiold is said to have been the first king of Denmark, but we know little about him or his successors, till the year 714, when Gormo the Old appears to have established the government by uniting the several Danish tribes into one kingdom. From this date till 1837, is a period of one thousand one hundred and twenty-three years.

23. Holland was originally settled by Belgic tribes. It was first formed into a state by Count Thierry, in the year 868, but afterwards came into the possession of the Duke of Burgundy, and at length into the hands of the King of Spain. The people revolted, and, in 1579, formed themselves into a republic.

24. This is the proper point at which we may date the independence of Holland, though it was not erected into a kingdom till 1806. Belgium was formerly attached to Holland, and constituted a part of what was then called the kingdom of the Netherlands; but it became an independent kingdom in 1830.

25. Switzerland, after having been subject to the Romans, the French, and the Germans, became an independent nation in 1315. From this date to 1837, is a period of five hundred and twenty-two years.

26. The first ruler of Naples who acquired the title of king, was Roger, who began to reign in the year 1127. Sardinia was taken by the Spaniards in 1303, and continued in their hands till 1708, when it was taken by the English, and given to the Duke of Savoy, who assumed the title of King of Sardinia in 1720. Piedmont and Genoa were added to the kingdom at a later date.

27. Venice was formed into a sort of republic in 697, Paolucci Anafesto being the first doge. It became a powerful state, and continued independent till it was taken by the French under Napoleon, in 1797; it was soon after transferred to Austria.

**QUESTIONS.** 1. What of the Celts?—2. What has been conjectured? What appears certain?—3. Where was the first settlement in Europe?—4. When and by whom was Athens founded? When does Grecian history begin?—5. When was the independence of Greece terminated? How long had it existed?—6. What can you say of Rome? How long did the empire endure?—7. What of the Greek empire? When did it begin?—8. How was it terminated?—9. What of the Turks? Extent of the Turkish dominion?—10. Who founded the Ottoman empire? Duration of the Ottoman empire? What of Constantinople?—11. What of Childeric? Clovis? Duration of the French monarchy?—12. What of Egbert? Duration of the English monarchy?—13. What of the Moors? Pelagio and his successors?—14. What of Ferdinand? By what means were Castile and Arragon united? When does the Spanish monarchy properly begin? Its duration?—15. What of the kingdom of Portugal?—16. What of Charlemagne? Conrad? Duration of the German empire?—17. What of Austria? Its duration?—18. Prussia?—19. Poland? Its duration?—20. What of Russia? How was it rendered independent? Its duration?—21. What of Sweden? Its duration?—22. What of Denmark? Its duration?—23. What of Holland?—24. When did it become a kingdom?—25. What of Switzerland? Its duration?—26. What of Naples? Sardinia? Genoa? Piedmont?—27. What of Venice? To whom does it belong?

---

**CHAPTER CLXXV. REVIEW continued.—*Ancient Names of Countries.***

You know that most of the countries in Europe, Asia, and Africa, have different names at the present day from what they had in ancient times. I will therefore give you a list of the principal states and kingdoms throughout these three quarters of the globe, showing their present and ancient names, together with the names of their original inhabitants.

**ASIA.**

<u>Modern Names.</u>	<u>Ancient Names.</u>	<u>Original Inhabitants.*</u>
Natolia	Asia Minor	Descendants of Japheth.
Palestine	Canaan	Descendants of Shem.
Syria	Syria	_____
Armenia	Armenia	_____

Modern Names.	Ancient Names.	Original Inhabitants.
Diarbekir	Mesopotamia	Descendants of Shem.
Curdistan	Assyria	_____
Bagdad	{ Babylonia, or	_____
	{ Chaldea	_____
Adirbeitzan	Media	_____
Irak Agemi	Parthia	_____
Khorassan	Hyrcania	_____
Persia	Persia	Descendants of Elam.
Astrachan	Asiatic Sarmatia	Descendants of Shem
Cabulistan	Bactria	_____
Siberia, Tartary, &c.	Scythia	_____

AFRICA.

Egypt	Egypt	Descendants of Ham.
Barca	Lybia	_____
Tripoli & part of Tunis	Africa Proper	Greeks, Carthaginians.
Part of Tunis and Algiers	{ Numidia	Carthaginians.
Morocco	Mauritania	Mauri, or Moors.
Biledulgerid	Gætulia	Gætuli.
Nubia and Abyssinia	Ethiopia	_____

EUROPE.

Norway, Sweden, and Denmark	{ Scandinavia	{ Gothic tribes, called Scandinavians.
Jutland	Cimbria	Cimbri
Russia	Scythia	Tartars.
South Britain	Britannia	Celts.
Scotland	Caledonia	{ Highlands, Celts; Low-lands, Picts.
Ireland	Hibernia	Celts.
Holland and Belgium	Belgica	Belgæ.
France	Gaul	Celts.
Switzerland	Helvetia	Helvetii.
Germany	Germania	{ Teutones, Alemanni, and other tribes.
Hungary	Pannonia	Celts.
Austria	Noricum	Celts.
Tyrol	Rhaetia	_____
Romania	Thrace	_____
Spain	Hispania	Carthaginians, Greeks.
Portugal	Lusitania	_____
Savoy, Piedmont, &c.	Cisalpine Gaul	Celts.
Macedonia	Macedonia	Phœnicians, Egyptians.
Greece	Greece	



CHAPTER CLXXVI. GENERAL VIEWS.—*The origin and progress of Government.*

1. BEFORE I conclude my volume, I must give a brief account of several important matters, which are very necessary to a right understanding of what has been already said. I shall first speak of government.

2. Some nations are governed by kings or emperors, who rule according to their own will: these are called despotic monarchies. Other nations are ruled by kings or emperors, whose power is restrained by legislative assemblies, who make laws for the country: these are called limited monarchies.

3. You observe that, at the present day, some nations are governed in one way, and some in another. In those countries where the people are governed by rulers of their own choice, and according to a constitution of their own formation, the nation is called a republic.

4. But you must not suppose that the world has always been governed in the same manner as now. The first kind of government sprang from that of the father of a family. In the first place, he ruled over his children, who acquired the habit of obeying him: his grandchildren followed their example, and thus the whole of the little community naturally yielded to the authority of their common parent.

5. This laid the foundation for that kind of government which is called patriarchal. It existed before the Flood, and also prevailed in many parts of Asia long after that event. But mankind were at length divided into separate tribes, and these became involved in wars with each other. In the struggles which ensued, some men displayed superior strength, courage, and skill; these naturally became the leaders, and were entrusted with extensive authority. This produced the second kind of government, the head

of which was a chief, and which was usually that of war-like tribes, who had made some advances in civilization.

6. When society had advanced so far as to build towns and cities, the rude military chieftain was not suited to the more refined and luxurious tastes of the people. They now desired a ruler surrounded with pomp and ceremony ; and thus a third kind of government was formed, which is called monarchical.

7. But in some countries the people, after a time, became dissatisfied with their monarchs or kings, and chose to elect rulers, and make laws for themselves. Thus a fourth kind of government was instituted, called republican.

8. Now you will bear in mind that the first kind of government, called patriarchal, was adopted in the earliest ages of society, while the greater part of the people were devoted to agriculture and the rearing of cattle. The second kind of government, by a military chief, was that of the wandering tribes of Arabia and Tartary.

9. The third kind of government was adopted when people had become civilized and luxurious ; it was the form of government among the ancient Assyrians, Egyptians, and Persians, and has been, since the period of these empires, in all ages of mankind, more prevalent than any other system. At the present time, nine-tenths of mankind are subject to monarchical government.

10. A kind of republican government, under the judges, was adopted by the Jews soon after their return from Egypt. But it was not till the time of the Greeks that a genuine republic was established. Several of the states of Greece formed themselves into republics at different times, but these were of short duration, and were overthrown by aspiring men, who made themselves kings. Rome was at one time a republic, but there, too, freedom soon gave place despotism.

QUESTIONS. 2. What are despotic monarchies? What are limited monarchies?—3. How are republics governed?—4. From what did the first kind of government spring?—5. What of the patriarchal form of government? What was the second kind of government?—6. What did the people desire as society advanced?—7. How did republics arise?—8. What of the first kind of government? Second?—9. What of the third kind, or monarchical government?—10. What of the republican form of government? What of the Greeks? What of Rome?

---

## CHAPTER CLXXVII. GENERAL VIEWS continued.— *Architecture. Agriculture. Gardening.*

1. THE first habitations of man were such as nature suggested, just sufficient to satisfy his wants; huts, grottoes, and tents. As civilization advanced, men began to build more durable and commodious habitations; they fitted the stones or bricks together more neatly, but at first without any cement. After they had learned how to build houses, they began to erect temples for their gods, which were much larger and finer than their own habitations.

2. Architecture appears to have been one of the earliest inventions, and its works have been regulated by hereditary imitation. Whatever rude structure the climate or materials of any country forced the first inhabitants to construct, the same form was kept up in after years by their more refined posterity.

3. Thus the Egyptian style of building derived its origin from the *cavern* and *mound*; the Chinese from the *tent*; the Grecian from the wooden *cabin*; and the Gothic from the *bower* of trees. Architecture at length became a fine art, and much pains was bestowed upon temples and palaces. Colonnades, halls, and courts, soon appeared; the rough trunk was transformed into the lofty column, and the natural vault of the cavern into the splendid pantheon.

4. The first nations who paid attention to architecture were the Babylonians, who built the temple of Belus and the hanging gardens; the Assyrians, who filled Nineveh with splendid buildings; the Phœnicians, whose cities were adorned with magnificent structures; and the Israelites, whose temple was wonderful for its magnitude and its splendour. Of the Egyptian and Persian architecture we have many remains, and they are all in a style of great grandeur and of gigantic dimensions.

5. The Greeks first introduced a more simple and dignified style of building, called the Doric order. The Ionic and Corinthian orders were soon added to the Doric. After the Peloponnesian war, this noble simplicity gave place to the excess of ornament; and after the death of Alexander, 323 years before Christ, the art declined, and was afterwards but little cultivated in Greece.

6. The Romans had paid some attention to architecture, but did not equal the Greeks till the time of Augustus, who encouraged Greek artists to erect splendid buildings in Rome; but when the seat of government was removed to Constantinople, the art declined in Rome. About this time, the Roman or Composite column originated, which was employed in temples and splendid buildings.

7. These beautiful works of art were almost entirely destroyed by the Goths and Vandals; but Theodoric, a friend of the arts, endeavoured to restore them, and even erected several new ones. This is the era of the origin of modern art, and the style of building it introduced is called Gothic architecture.

8. The first mention of agriculture is found in the writings of Moses. From them we learn that Cain was a "tiller of the ground," and that Noah "began to be a husbandman, and planted a vineyard."

9. The Chinese, Japanese, Chaldeans, and Egyptians, appear to have held husbandry in high estimation in the earliest ages. The Carthaginians of later times were

sensible of its blessings, and carried the art to a high degree of perfection. The implements of Grecian agriculture were few and simple; the Romans used many implements, but particularly venerated the plough.

10. Gardening, for the production of culinary vegetables, appears to have received attention in all ages and countries where the people had advanced to a state of civilization. Ornamental gardening, or the art of laying out grounds with walks, and fountains, and groves, and beautiful shrubs, plants and flowers, and disposing them all in such a manner as to produce a pleasing effect, can only belong to a refined people.

11. The hanging gardens of Semiramis, which consisted of terraces of earth raised upon pillars, and set out with plants, watered by artificial means, were very wonderful, but they could hardly be considered beautiful.

12. The Greeks do not appear to have carried the art of ornamental gardening to any great extent; and the style of ornamental gardening among the Romans, as you may have observed from the account I have given you of Pliny's villa, was highly artificial, but not pleasing.

13. The whole art of ornamental gardening appears to have been banished from Europe from the time that the barbarians overspread its southern regions, till Charlemagne did something towards its revival.

14. In the time of Louis the Fourteenth a new style was introduced into France. According to this, the grounds were artificially laid out in straight walks, crossing each other at right angles, bordered by trees cut into formal shapes, and interspersed with fountains.

15. This artificial, but absurd style, was afterwards introduced into Holland, England, and other countries. But, at a later period, it was ascertained that the Chinese and Japanese had followed, for ages, a more natural style of ornamental gardening. They collected the most beautiful flowers, the finest shrubs, and the fairest trees, and

planted them in irregular groups. They sought, as far as possible, to imitate the most beautiful and pleasing arrangements of nature. This system was introduced into England about a hundred years ago, and nothing can exceed the effect produced.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What of the first habitations of man? What was done as civilization advanced?—2. What of architecture?—3. Mention the different styles of building. What of architecture at length?—4. What people first paid attention to architecture? What of Egyptian and Persian architecture?—5. What of the Greeks? Their architecture?—6. What of the Roman architecture?—7. What of the Goths and Vandals? Theodoric? Gothic architecture?—8. What mention is made of agriculture in Scripture?—9. What of the agriculture of different kingdoms?—10. What of gardening? Ornamental gardening?—11. What of the gardens of Semiramis?—12. What of the Greeks? The Romans?—13. How was gardening banished from Europe? Who revived it?—14. What of the style under Louis the Fourteenth?—15. What of gardening in China and Japan? In England?

---

## CHAPTER CLXXVIII. GENERAL VIEWS continued.— *Commerce.*

1. THE first mention made of nations trading one with another appears in the book of Genesis, chapter xxxviii, verse 25, when Joseph's brethren sold him to a band of Ishmaelites, who were conveying spices, balm, and myrrh, into Egypt; the balm was from Gilead, and the myrrh was the produce of Arabia, and they were going through the land of Canaan into Egypt, which was then a highly cultivated kingdom.

2. The central situation of Egypt has always made it the emporium of commerce, and the treasures of Asia and Africa were brought thither by caravans. Trade was always held in esteem, because of the wealth it brought; but of the maritime trade of the Egyptians, we have no

regular account, for they superstitiously neglected the sea for many ages.

3. Tyre and Sidon, cities of Phœnicia, are next found rising into notice. Their country was not rich in its productions; industry alone made their rocks productive; they conveyed their merchandise from port to port, and commerce, by feeding industry, was itself enriched.

4. About eleven hundred years before Christ, in the time of David, the Phœnicians, in the true spirit of commerce, extended their voyages, and finding gold mines in Spain, they formed a settlement for the purpose of trade, called Gadir, now Cadiz.

5. Solomon saw the advantage of commerce, and caused ships to be built, which he sent to Ophir (supposed to be the East Indies), which brought back gold, silver, ivory, birds, and other things. He also carried on a great traffic with Egypt, whence he obtained horses and fine linen.

6. Tyre was famous for its commerce in the time of Solomon, about 1000 years before Christ. We read an interesting account of her commerce and splendour, four hundred years later, in the 26th, 27th, and 28th chapters of Ezekiel. But the Tyrians were subdued first by Nebuchadnezzar, and afterwards more completely by Alexander, 332 years before Christ.

7. About 870 years before Christ, Carthage was built, and became famous for her commerce throughout the civilized world. After many wars with the Romans, Carthage was destroyed, 146 years before Christ.

8. At one time, the Grecian states were conspicuous for their attention to commerce and naval affairs. Corinth, Corcyra, Athens, and Sparta, in turn became famous, and remained so till the overthrow of Grecian independence, three hundred years before Christ.

9. Alexander paid great attention to commercial affairs, and built the cities of Alexandria and Berenice, at which

places he carried on an extensive trade, with the West by means of the Mediterranean Sea, with the richer provinces of the East by the Red Sea, and with the central countries of Asia, by the isthmus of Suez.

10. The Romans were ignorant of the value of commerce, and, as if they were determined to root it out, they destroyed in the same year both Carthage and Corinth, then the two greatest commercial cities in the world. Great stagnation of commerce followed, which was felt by all the surrounding countries, till the time of Julius Cæsar, who determined to revive it, and restored in one year both Corinth and Carthage.

11. As the Romans were now masters of all the countries bordering on the Mediterranean, they began to favour commerce for their own sake. They therefore obtained supplies from all the regions round about, to minister either to their necessities or their luxuries. The return they made for these various and choice articles was in money, and therefore this interchange can hardly be called commerce. Indeed the Romans were never a commercial people; they despised the character of a merchant, and wished to rule and obtain riches only by the sword.

12. After the seat of government was removed to Constantinople, Theodoric became king of Italy, and under his wise and peaceful reign, commerce began again to flourish. In the East, silk began to be a great article of commerce, and the Persians enriched themselves very much by their trade with ships from India, which stopped at their ports.

13. In the year 732, Venice began to pay attention to commerce, and commenced an extensive traffic with the East. Many other states in Italy also carried on a large trade with different countries, and in the eleventh century, Amalfi, Pisa, and Genoa, became distinguished as commercial cities.

14. Our Saxon ancestors carried on a considerable com-



merce, and King Alfred is said to have traded to India. After the Norman conquest, our trade steadily increased with the increasing power of the country.

15. The crusades we find giving the next spur to commerce. The crusaders, finding in the East many luxuries that they could not procure at home, imbibed a taste for these foreign commodities; commerce therefore began to extend itself with rapidity.

16. In the twelfth century, the discovery of the property of the magnet, by the seamen of Amalfi, caused the extension of commerce to a degree before unknown. About this time the English and the Flemings were the most commercial people of the north of Europe.

17. In 1241, Hamburg, Lubeck, and several other German towns, began to engage in commerce, and entered into a league for mutual defence. They were called Hanse towns, and became very rich and powerful. Edward the First of England allowed them great privileges in trade, which were, however, curtailed under Edward the Sixth.

18. In the time of Elizabeth, another blow was struck at their commerce, by the establishment of an English company of Merchant Adventurers; but in spite of all, they became so formidable, that the governments of several states entered into a league against them, which resulted in their power being weakened and finally sunk, in 1662.

19. About the year 1251, we find Florence rising into notice, in a commercial point of view. Its trade was immense, and its fabrics beautiful and costly. The merchants amassed great wealth, and became the bankers of all Europe. This state of splendour continued for centuries.

20. Flanders was for some time the seat of the principal manufactories of Europe. As far back as the year 960, we find the Flemings trading to great advantage. In 1253, they were famous for their linens, and they continued

eminent for their manufactures till 1584, when Antwerp was destroyed by the Duke of Parma. This put an end to the prosperity of the country, and her fine manufactures were dispersed among other nations.

21. Hitherto, the trade with India had been carried on over-land by caravans by the Italian republics, but in 1497, a passage being found round the Cape of Good Hope, the way was now open to wealth and luxury. In the year 1500, the Portuguese began to make settlements in Africa, and soon after Portugal became the centre of commerce, till 1580, when the kingdom was seized by the King of Spain.

22. The trade between England and Flanders was very considerable, from the time of John to that of Edward the First; but, at that time, the rivalry between the English and Flemings became so fierce, that many battles were fought, and all commercial intercourse suspended. In 1331, however, it was again revived under Edward the Third, who introduced into England the manufacture of woollen cloth.

23. In the reign of Henry the Eighth, the Reformation was of great service to commerce; and in the time of Edward the Sixth, a trade was entered into with Russia. Queen Elizabeth greatly encouraged commerce. She formed several trading companies, one to Russia, and another to Turkey and the Levant. The East India company, also, began during her reign, in the year 1600.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What is the first mention made of trade?—  
 2. What of Egypt? Its commerce?—3. What of Tyre and Sidon?—4. What of the Phœnicians? Cadiz?—5. With what countries did Solomon trade?—6. What of Tyre?—7. What of Carthage?—8. What of Grecian commerce? Corinth? Corcyra? Athens? Sparta?—9. What of Alexander?—  
 10. How was commerce destroyed?—11. What did the Romans do in favour of commerce?—12. What of commerce under Theodoric? In the East? Persia?—13. What of Venice? Pisa? Genoa?—14. What of the rise of commerce in England?—

15. What of the Crusades?—16. What of the mariner's compass?—17. What of the Hanse towns?—19. What of Florence?—20. What of the commerce of Flanders? What destroyed it?—21. What of trade with India? In Portugal?—22. What of commerce in England?—23. What queen gave great encouragement to commerce?

---

CHAPTER CLXXIX. GENERAL VIEWS continued.—  
*Painting, Sculpture and Music.*

1. EGYPT was the birthplace of the arts and sciences; many of its paintings are still found in the cavern tombs and temples. The earliest account we have of the existence of painting is in the reign of Ninus, about two thousand years before Christ. The Greeks were very little advanced in the art of painting at the time of the Trojan war.

2. The first important fact in the history of painting is, that about 700 years before Christ a King of Lydia purchased a picture of a Greek artist, and paid him its weight in gold. In the year 400, Zeuxis introduced a new style of painting into Greece, and at this period much progress was made in the art. About the year 328 before Christ, Apelles commenced a new era in painting, and many distinguished painters were his contemporaries.

3. Before Greece was conquered by the Romans, the art of painting had arrived at a high degree of perfection; but the ceaseless wars which prevailed for some time before that event, prevented any further progress being made.

4. The first name worthy of record in the annals of Italian painting is Cimabue, a native of Florence, who painted in fresco, 1300 years after Christ. Leonardo da Vinci, an eminent early painter, who also wrote treatises on his art, was born at Florence, in 1445. Shortly before his time the art of oil painting was discovered by John Van Eyck, a Fleming.

5. Michael Angelo Buonaroti was born in the year

1474; he erected an academy of painting and sculpture at Florence, and is considered as the founder of the Florentine school. Raphael, born 1483, was the founder of the Roman school; Titian, born 1477, was the founder of the Venetian school. Corregio, born 1494, founded the Lombard school. The establishment of these four schools embraces the golden era of painting in Italy.

6. The French, Flemish, Germans and English have all produced excellent painters, but none equal to the great masters of Italy. Whoever wishes to see the finest productions of the pencil, must visit the galleries of Rome, Florence and Naples.

7. The antiquity of sculpture is proved by reference to the Bible, where, in the books of Genesis and Exodus, we read of Laban's images, of the golden calf made by Aaron, and of the statues of the cherubim. Herodotus tells us that the Egyptians first carved figures of animals in stone. Almost all the sculpture of Egypt was employed for idolatrous purposes; it was of stupendous magnitude. The pyramids, colossal statues, and Sphinx, are gigantic works of art, and strike those who behold them with astonishment. Egypt continued famous for sculpture, even in the time of the Romans. Hindoo sculpture strongly resembles that of Egypt, but is generally inferior. Chinese sculpture also slightly resembles the Egyptian.

8. Dædalus, who lived 1300 years before Christ, may be considered the earliest sculptor of Greece, as before his time the attempts at the art were rude and imperfect, though there were schools established at Sicyon, Ægina, Corinth, and Athens. The first statues were made of wood, and metal was also used in many cases for sculpture.

9. About 646 years before Christ statues in marble were executed, and a school, called the Chian school, was founded by Malas, in Greece. The marble was procured from the Ionian islands, where a school was established

called the Ionian school. In 517 before Christ great improvements were introduced in the art of sculpture in marble.

10. After the battle of Marathon, 490 years before Christ, sculpture flourished, and the schools produced many eminent artists, among whom was Phidias. He executed statues in bronze, marble, and ivory. His works were numerous and splendid, and he stands without a rival among the ancient masters; his Jupiter was considered the masterpiece of art.

11. From this period till the time of Alexander, many eminent sculptors appeared; but after his death, the arts began to decline, and continued in this state till Greece became a Roman province.

12. Sculpture in Rome may be divided into two distinct classes, the Etruscan and the Roman. The sculptors were mostly Greeks, as the Romans possessed only sufficient knowledge to value the genius of others. After Constantine, the annals of ancient art may be considered as closed.

13. Schools for sculpture were formed in Italy in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, and before the close of the thirteenth, a school was founded by Nicholas Pisano, a native of Pisa. Before the close of the next century, sculpture was successfully practised throughout Italy. It has made little progress in other countries, but has risen to great perfection in the schools of Rome and Florence.

14. We read in the book of Genesis, that Jubal, the son of Lamech, played on musical instruments, before the Deluge. At a later period, we find mention made of the harp, the trumpet, and the drum; the oldest song is that which Miriam sang after the passage of the Red Sea. Music reached its highest perfection among the Hebrews at the time of David and Solomon.

15. The Greeks are said to have received the art of music from Lydia and Arabia; but it was not till the sixth

century before Christ that music was cultivated as a science. Labus, a Greek who lived about 546 years before Christ, wrote on the theory of music; and in the time of Pericles, Damon is said to have been a distinguished teacher of music.

16. In the time of Plato and Aristotle, many improvements in music were made; these philosophers considering music useful as a means of education. At the time of Alexander, Aristoxemus distinguished himself as a writer on music. He composed many treatises, and made many great changes and improvements; and he introduced the chromatic scale. We know, however, but little on the subject of the music of the ancients, as the existing writings are very obscure and unintelligible.

17. The Romans seem to have received their sacred music from the Etruscans, and their warlike music from the Greeks. Stringed instruments were introduced into Rome 186 years before Christ. Under Nero, who professed to be a musician himself, music was much cultivated; and five hundred singers and musicians formed part of his household.

18. In the middle ages, the progress of music was promoted by its being consecrated to the service of religion, and education was not thought complete without some knowledge of music; in these days flourished the troubadours, who greatly cultivated both vocal and instrumental music. Guido of Arezzo, in the eleventh century, made great improvements in the manner of writing the notes in music, and in the fifteenth century still further improvement was made by Johannes de Musis.

19. At the same period, music was treated scientifically in the Netherlands, France, and Spain. The invention of the opera, in the sixteenth century, has chiefly contributed to the variety and splendour of modern vocal music, and in the eighteenth century were made vast improvements in musical instruments.

20. The merit of the advancement of vocal music is claimed by the Italians; that of instrumental music by the Germans and French. The English have been great patrons of musical talent, but have produced few celebrated composers.

---

QUESTIONS. 1. What are the earliest accounts we have of painting? Egypt? Greece?—2. What of a king of Lydia? Zeuxis? Apelles?—3. What of painting in Greece?—4. What of Cimabue? Leonardo da Vinci?—5. Michael Angelo? Raphael? Titian? Corregio?—6. Of painters in other countries?—7. Of sculpture? What do we read of in the Bible? What of Egyptian sculpture? Of Hindoo sculpture? Chinese?—8. Of Dædalus? Of the Chian school? Of the Ionian school?—10. Of Phidias?—11. When did the arts begin to decline in Greece?—12. What of Roman sculpture? Of the art after Constantine?—13. Of Nicholas Pisano? Italian sculpture?—14. Of Jubal? Song of Miriam? Music among the Hebrews?—15. What of the music of the Greeks? Labus? Damon?—16. What of Plato and Aristotle? Aristoxenus?—17. What of the Roman music?—18. Of music in the middle ages? Troubadours? Who made improvements in music?—19. What of music in other countries? Of the opera? Musical instruments?—20. What of vocal music? Instrumental music?

---

## CHAPTER CLXXX. GENERAL VIEWS continued.— *Origin and Progress of various Arts.*

1. I HAVE attempted to give you some idea of the origin and progress of government, of architecture, agriculture, gardening, painting, sculpture, and music; but there are still many things necessary to be known, in order to understand the manners, customs, feelings, and opinions, of mankind in former ages.

2. When you read of such a great man as Julius Cæsar, and know that he had immense wealth at his command, you might imagine that he rode in a beautiful coach, wore a fine beaver hat, silk stockings, leather shoes with diamond buckles, and that he carried a splendid gold watch in his pocket.

3. But you must remember that no such things as coaches, hats, stockings, shoes, buckles, or watches, were invented till long after the time of Julius Cæsar. The truth is, that by far the largest portion of the articles of furniture and of clothing, as well as the greater part of the tools and implements, now in use, have been invented within the last five hundred years. I will endeavour to give you some little idea of the origin and progress of various inventions which essentially contribute to our comfort and convenience.

4. You know that all edge-tools, such as knives, hatchets, axes, planes, &c., now used for cutting and shaping wood, are made of steel, which is a preparation of iron. Now it appears probable, although iron is mentioned as being known before the Deluge, that the use of it was afterwards lost. If the ancient nations were ignorant of the use of iron, they must have been destitute of all those convenient edge-tools now so common among us; instead of these, they used sharp stones, flints, horns, bones, and things of that kind.

5. But it is said that iron was discovered by an accidental fire on Mount Ida, in Crete, about the year 1400 before Christ. It is probable that it was in use for various instruments among the more civilized nations, not long after this period; but the swords of the Carthaginians, in the time of Hannibal, were made of copper. Among the Romans, iron was used for chains, locks, axes, hoes, spades, and other tools, three hundred years before Christ.

6. But fine cutlery, such as is now in use, was not known till hundreds of years afterwards. Knives for the table were not made in England till the year 1563. Forks were unknown to the Greeks and Romans, and are not in use even now among the Turks, Chinese, and some other eastern nations. Razors appear to have been of great antiquity, as they are mentioned by Homer; but they were probably not made of steel till long after.



7. The weaving of woollen and linen cloth was practised in very early times, and the ladies of Rome paid great attention to these arts. Silk was manufactured in Persia several hundred years before Christ, and afterwards in Tyre and Constantinople. A colony of silk weavers was brought from Greece into Sicily by King Roger, about the year 1130. In later times, the art of making silk fabrics passed into France, England, and other countries.

8. Cotton fabrics are also of great antiquity, and it appears that the inhabitants of India had the art of calico-printing at least as early as the time of our Saviour.

9. The first houses of mankind were made of wood, stone, clay, and various other substances; they were, however, low, rough, and inconvenient. As the arts advanced, improvements were made in the dwellings; but even so late as the time of Nero, almost all the house of Rome were built of wood, and when the city was set on fire by order of that cruel emperor, three-fourths of it were consequently burnt to the ground.

10. The houses of the rich had small windows of transparent stone, horn, or other substances, but most of the dwellings had no other windows than small holes in the walls to admit light and air. Glass windows were first introduced into churches in the sixth century after Christ.

11. Chimneys were not in use till the twelfth century; before this, the smoke escaped through an opening in the roof. As late as the time of Elizabeth, many of the houses in England were destitute of chimneys.

12. These remarks will show you that the world presents a very different state of things now from what it did formerly. The poorest person now enjoys a multitude of comforts, conveniences, and luxuries, which Cæsar, with all his wealth, did not possess.

13. One of the most wonderful inventions of modern times is that of the steam-engine. This contrivance is

now made to do the work which millions of men could not have done before. It is applied to the manufacture of an infinite variety of articles. Nor is this all; it is employed to drive vessels over the water, and to impel carriages upon railroads with a speed attainable by no other means.

14. A steam-boat was not long since taken to Calcutta. The Hindoos looked with astonishment at the vessel ploughing through the waves, alike regardless of wind or tide. "Man is one curious thing," said one among them; "he catch elephant, make him work; he catch camel, make him work; he catch wind, make him work the big ship; he catch water, make him work the mill; now he catch fire, make him work the steam-boat!"

---

QUESTIONS. 2. What might you imagine of Julius Cæsar? —3. What articles were unknown until after his time? What have been invented within the last five hundred years?—4. What of iron? What did the ancients use instead of iron?—5. When was iron said to be discovered? What is probable? Carthaginian swords? What of iron among the Romans?—6. Of fine cutlery? When were table-knives first made in England? What of forks? Razors?—7. Of weaving? Silk?—8. Of cotton fabrics? Calico-printing?—9. What of the first houses? Those in the time of Nero?—10. Of windows?—11. Of chimneys?—12. Of the present state of the world?—13. Of the steam-engine? Its various uses?—14. Relate the anecdote of the steam-boat at Calcutta.

---

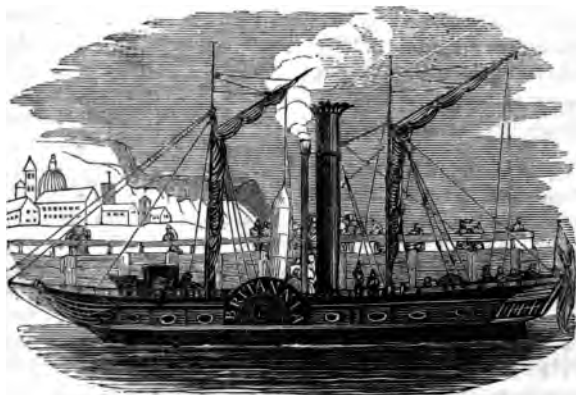
## CHAPTER CLXXXI. GENERAL VIEWS concluded.— *Dates of Discoveries and Inventions.*

I WILL now give you a list of various discoveries and inventions, with their dates. When you read this list, I should wish you to remark which of these things was known in the time of Julius Cæsar, which in the time of Constantine, which in the time of Charlemagne, and which in the time of Louis the Fourteenth.

	BEFORE CHRIST.
First pyramid begun, about	2095
Brick-making known	2000
Money first mentioned as in use	1865
Letters invented by Memnon, an Egyptian	1822
Alphabetical writing first introduced into Europe	1493
The first ship seen in Greece arrived at Rhodes from Egypt	1485
Bows of wood and metal, shields, swords, spears, battle-axes, helmets, coats of mail, chariots, sickles, ploughs, yokes, statues, temples, canals, hand-mills, gilding, and perfumery, known in Egypt about	1400
Iron discovered by the burning of Mount Ida in Crete	1400
Stamping of money invented in Greece	895
First naval battle on record, between the Corinthians and Corcyreans	650
The game of chess invented	608
Anchors for ships first forged	578
Bellows invented	554
The sundial invented	550
First private library, belonging to Aristotle	334
Wrought silk brought from Persia to Greece	325
Silver first coined at Rome	269
Clocks moved by water in use at Rome	158
Glass known to the Romans	60
The hourglass invented at Alexandria	ANNO DOMINI 204
Bells invented by Paulinus, bishop of Nola in Campania	400
Dating from the Birth of Christ introduced	516
Glass for windows first used	550
Water-mills for grinding invented by Belisarius	555
Pens for writing first made from quills	635
Horn lanterns invented by King Alfred	886
Arithmetical figures first introduced into Europe from Arabia	991
Musical notes invented in Italy	1022
First stone bridge built in England	1087
Paper first made of cotton	1100
The mariner's compass invented	1180
Magnifying-glasses invented by Roger Bacon	1252
Linen first made in England	1253
Windmills introduced into Europe by the crusaders	1299
Spectacles invented by Spina, a monk of Pisa	1299
Looking-glasses made only at Venice	1300
Gunpowder invented	1330

	A. D.
Cannon invented, about	1340
Playing-cards invented in France	1380
Hats invented at Paris, by a Swiss	1404
Muskets first used in France	1414
Painting in oil invented by John Van Eyck	1415
Paper first made from linen rags	1417
Pumps invented	1425
Printing invented by Faust	1441
Electricity discovered	1467
Almanacks first published in Germany	1470
Violins and watches invented	1477
Modern canals first made in Italy	1481
Algebra first taught in Europe	1494
Tobacco first discovered in St. Domingo	1496
Spinning introduced into England	1505
Chocolate introduced into Europe from Mexico	1520
Spinning-wheel invented at Brunswick	1530
Needles first made in England, by a native of India	1545
Stockings of silk first worn by Henry II. of France	1547
Knitting stockings first invented in Spain	1550
Table-knives first made in England	1563
Tobacco first brought to England	1565
Coaches first introduced into England	1580
Potatoes brought from America	1586
Bombs first invented at Venloo	1588
Paper first made in England	1590
Telescopes invented in Germany	1590
Tea first brought into Europe from China, by the Dutch	1610
Coining with a die first practised	1617
Thermometers first invented by Drebel, a Dutchman	1620
Coffee first brought into England	1641
The barometer invented by Torricelli	1643
The air-pump invented	1654
Clocks with pendulums first invented, about	1656
Fire-engines invented	1663
The steam-engine invented by the Marquis of Worcester	1663
Copper money first coined in England	1672
Guineas coined in England from gold brought from Guinea	1673
Buckles invented about	1680
Telegraphs invented	1687
First newspaper in America printed in Boston	1704

	A. D.
Sunday-schools first established in England - - -	1781
First ascent of a balloon in France - - -	1782
----- England - - -	1784
The steam-engine first applied to cotton spinning - -	1785
The first steam-boat tried in Scotland - - -	1788
Sir W. Herschel's great telescope erected - - -	1789
Coal-gas first used for lighting the Cornish mines - -	1792
The voltaic pile invented - - -	1800
Locomotive steam-engines invented - - -	1804
Gas-lights first used in London - - -	1807
The first newspaper printed by steam - - -	1814
The kaleidoscope invented by Dr. Brewster - - -	1814
Brighton Chain-Pier erected - - -	1823
Menai Suspension-Bridge finished - - -	1826
Liverpool and Manchester Railroad finished - - -	1830
Electricity applied to the purpose of signals - - -	1837



A Steam Boat.

# SELECT BOOKS,

## INSTRUCTIVE AND ENTERTAINING,

FOR

### *THE USE OF YOUNG PERSONS.*

---

\* **THE FAMILY HISTORY OF ENGLAND.** By the Rev. **GEORGE R. GLEIG, M. A.**; with an extensive Series of **PICTORIAL ILLUSTRATIONS** of the **COSTUMES, ARCHITECTURE, SHIPPING, &c.**, of the successive periods of British History. Three Volumes, at 6s. 6d. each.

**A HISTORY OF LONDON**; from its Foundation by the Romans to the Accession of Queen Victoria. By **CHARLES MACKAY.**

\* **SCENES and SKETCHES from ENGLISH HISTORY.** With Engravings. 3s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ANCIENT HISTORY**: containing Accounts of the **POLITICAL CONDITION, GEOGRAPHICAL SITUATION, and SOCIAL STATE** of the principal **NATIONS OF ANTIQUITY**; carefully digested from the Ancient Writers, and illustrated by the Discoveries of Modern Scholars and Travellers. By **W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D.** 10s. 6d.

The **STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MODERN HISTORY**, by the same Author, is *in the Press*.

**UNIVERSAL MYTHOLOGY**; an Account of the most important Mythological Systems, and an Inquiry into their Origin and Connexion, with Considerations on the **KORAN** and the **TALMUD**. By the Rev. **HENRY CHRISTMAS.** *In the Press.*

The **LIFE, VOYAGES, and DISCOVERIES OF CAPTAIN COOK.** With Engravings.

**CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS**; his **LIFE, VOYAGES, and DISCOVERY OF THE NEW WORLD.**

\* **THREE WEEKS IN PALESTINE and LEBANON.** With many **ENGRAVINGS.** 3s.

**TWO YEARS AT SEA**; being the Narrative of a Voyage to the **Swan River, and Van Diemen's Land**; thence, to various parts of **India.** With Notes of a Residence in the **Burman Empire**, and of the **Services and Sufferings** of the **Missionaries** in that Country. By **JANE ROBERTS.** With Engravings, 5s.

## BOOKS FROM THE PRESS

- **A FAMILIAR HISTORY OF BIRDS**; their Nature, Habits, and Instincts. By the Rt. Rev. E. STANLEY, D.D., F.L.S., Lord Bishop of Norwich. Two Volumes, with Engravings, 7s.
- **DOMESTICATED ANIMALS** considered with reference to Civilization and the Arts. By MARY ROBERTS. With Engravings. 3s. 6d.; and, by the same Author,
- **WILD ANIMALS**; their Nature, Habits, and Instincts; with Incidental Notices of the Regions they inhabit. With Engravings. 3s. 6d.
- MINERALS and METALS**; their Natural History and Uses in the Arts: with incidental Accounts of MINES and MINING. With Engravings, 2s. 6d.
- **THE ELEMENTS OF BOTANY**. A New Edition, Enlarged and Improved, and with many Cuts. 2s.

**CONVERSATIONS on GARDENING and NATURAL HISTORY**. By the Author of the *Elements of Botany*. 2s. 6d.

- The **BOOK of ANIMALS**. The **BOOK of BIRDS**. The **BOOK of FISHES**. The **BOOK of REPTILES**. The **BOOK of SHELLS**. 1s. 6d. each; all with numerous Engravings.

- The **BOOK of TREES**, uniformly with the above.

The **HOUSE I LIVE IN**; or, Popular Illustrations of the Structure and Functions of the Human Body. Edited by T. C. GIRTIN.

- **CONVERSATIONS of a FATHER with his CHILDREN**. Two Volumes, with Engravings. 5s. 6d.

- **EASY LESSONS on MONEY MATTERS**; with Cuts, 1s.

**TALES AND STORIES from HISTORY**. By AGNES STRICKLAND. Two Volumes, with many Engravings. 7s.

**FABLES and MORAL MAXIMS**, in PROSE and VERSE. Selected by ANNE PARKER. With One Hundred Wood-Cuts. 3s. 6d.

**POPULAR POEMS FOR YOUNG PERSONS**; selected by ELIZABETH PARKER. 3s. 6d.

**FIVE HUNDRED CHARADES**, from History, Geography, and Biography. New Edition, Revised and Corrected. 1s. 6d.

- **PERSIAN FABLES**, for Young and Old. By the Rev. H. G. KEENE, M.A. Price 1s., with Eighteen Engravings. Also,

- **PERSIAN STORIES**; illustrative of Eastern MANNERS and CUSTOMS. Price 1s., with Engravings.

- **SISTER MARY'S TALES in NATURAL HISTORY**. 2s. 6d.

**LE BOUQUET LITTÉRAIRE**. Recueil de Beautés Religieuses et Morales, de divers Auteurs. Par feu L. T. VENTOUILLAC. 3s. 6d.

**OF JOHN W. PARKER, LONDON.**

**The STOLEN CHILD; or, Laura's Adventures and Sufferings with the Travelling Show-man and his Family.** By CHARLOTTE ADAMS.

**The CHILD of the ATLANTIC; or the Adventures of a Foundling by Sea and Land in the New and Old World.** By CHARLOTTE ADAMS.

**THE DEAF AND DUMB BOY; a Tale; with some Account of the Modes of Educating the Deaf and Dumb.** By the Rev. W. FLETCHER, M.A. 2s. 6d.

**SANDFORD AND MERTON; Modernized and Abridged by ROSINA MARIA ZORNLIN.** With Cuts. 3s. 6d.

**COUSIN KATE; or, the Punishment of Pride; a Tale.** By CATHERINE GRACE GODWIN, Author of "THE REPROVING ANGEL," &c. With many Cuts. 2s. Also, by the same Author,

2. **BASIL HARLOW; or, Prodigality is not Generosity.** 2s.

3. **ESTHER MORE; or, Truth is Wisdom.** 2s.

4. **LOUISA SEYMOUR; or, Hasty Impressions.** 2s.

5. **ALICIA GREY; or, to be Useful is to be Happy.** 2s.

6. **JOSEPHINE; or, Early Trials.** 2s.

**THE YOUNG LADY'S FRIEND; a MANUAL of PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION and ADVICE to YOUNG FEMALES, upon their entering LIFE after quitting School.** By a LADY. 3s. 6d.

**FIRST SUNDAYS at CHURCH; or, FAMILIAR CONVERSATIONS on the MORNING and EVENING SERVICES.** By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. 3s. 6d.

**ABBOTT'S READER; a Series of Familiar Pieces, in Prose and Verse, calculated to produce a Moral Influence on the Hearts and Lives of Young Persons.** By the Authors of the YOUNG CHRISTIAN; THE CORNER-STONE; THE TEACHER, &c. 3s.

**QUESTIONS on the GOSPEL of LUKE, with LECTURES delivered on Wednesdays after Morning Prayer, in the Church of St. George, Bloomsbury, by the Rev. T. V. SHORT, B.D., Rector.** 3s. 6d.

**FAITH AND PRACTICE; or, the Application of Christian Principles to the Practical Duties of Life.** 1s.

**CONFIRMATION. An ADDRESS from a CLERGYMAN to his Parishioners.** Twopence.

**THE RITE OF CONFIRMATION EXPLAINED.** By the Rev. D. I. EYRE, M.A. Sixpence.

**A FEW WORDS on THE SIN of LYING.** By a LAYMAN. 3d.



# "THE INSTRUCTOR;

OR,  
PROGRESSIVE LESSONS IN GENERAL KNOWLEDGE.

A SERIES OF

## ELEMENTARY BOOKS,

FOR SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES.

---

Volumes I. to VI., either of which may be had separately, at 2s. each, illustrated with a great number of Engravings.

- \* I. FAMILIAR TALES and CONVERSATIONS, on subjects suited to the capacity of Children.
  - \* II. The HOUSE; popular descriptions of the MATERIALS used in BUILDING; FURNITURE; FOOD; CLOTHING.
  - \* III. The UNIVERSE described. The THREE KINGDOMS of NATURE. Popular Views of the HUMAN FORM. LESSONS on HEALTH.
  - \* IV. HISTORY of the CALENDAR. The SEASONS. APPEARANCES of NATURE, and Incidents connected with the Seasons throughout the Year.
  - \* V. DESCRIPTIVE GEOGRAPHY; Accounts of the various Countries of the Earth, their People and Productions; with a Series of Maps. POPULAR STATISTICS.
  - \* VI. OUTLINES of ANCIENT HISTORY.
- 

## BOOKS FOR CHILDREN.

---

- PRETTY LESSONS FOR GOOD CHILDREN; to which are added, EASY LESSONS in LATIN. 2s.
- EASY POETRY for CHILDREN. 1s. 6d.
- EASY GRAMMAR for CHILDREN. By A LADY.
- READING LESSONS from the BOOKS of PROVERBS and ECCLESIASTES; with Questions and Answers upon them. 6d.
- SONGS FOR CHILDREN. With ENGRAVINGS. 4d.
- SCRIPTURE HYMNS in PROSE. With Cuts. 6d.
- \* A LITTLE READING BOOK for YOUNG CHILDREN. 4d.
- \* VILLAGE ANNALS; or the Story of HETTY JONES. 9d.
- \* A COLLIERY TALE, or VILLAGE DISTRESS. 4d.
- \* LESSONS OF PRAISE IN EASY VERSE. 4d.
- \* INSECTS and their HABITATIONS. With Cuts. 1s.
- SIMPLE TALES for CHILDREN. With many Cuts. 1s.
- THE CHILD'S VERSE-BOOK of DEVOTION. 1s.
- FAMILIAR LECTURES to CHILDREN; wherein the TRUTHS of the GOSPEL are engagingly set forth. New Edition. 1s. 6d.
- 

*These Books to which \* is prefixed, are published under the Direction of the General Literature and Education Committee of the Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge.*

LONDON: JOHN W. PARKER, PUBLISHER, WEST STRAND.









.

•

.

.

